

✧ **Forward**

Thank you for selecting DX500 series closed-loop vector inverters manufactured by Simphoenix.

This manual is the user manual of DX500 series closed-loop vector inverters. It provides you with relevant details and precautions concerning installation, wiring, functional parameters, routine maintenance and troubleshooting of DX500 series inverter.

In order to use this series of inverters correctly, give full play to the excellent performance of the product and ensure the safety of users and equipment, please read this manual carefully before using the DX500 series inverters. Improper use may cause abnormal operation, failure or reduced service life of the inverter and even cause equipment damage, personal injury and other accidents.

This user manual is a random attachment. Please keep it properly for future overhauling and maintaining of the inverter.

Due to our commitment to continuous product improvement, the information provided by our company is subject to change without notice.



User Manual of DX500 Series Closed-loop Vector Inverters

Version: V1.0

Revision Date: Jun 2023

Contents

Chapter 1 Product Confirmation And Operation Precautions	1
1.1 Product confirmation	1
1.1.1 Precautions of unpacking inspection	1
1.2 Safety precautions	2
1.2.1 Installation precautions	2
1.2.2 Safety precautions for wiring	2
1.2.3 Safety precautions for running operation	3
1.2.4 Safety caution for maintenance check	3
1.3 Knowledge on operation	4
1.3.1 Application knowledge of driving general motor	4
1.3.2 Application knowledge of driving special motor	4
1.3.3 Ambient environment	4
1.3.4 Connection knowledge of peripheral equipment	4
1.3.5 Transportation and storage	5
1.4 Abandon caution	5
1.5 Other cautions	5
Chapter 2 Product Introduction	6
2.1 Model description	6
2.2 Product appearance	6
2.3 Model table	7
2.4 Product technical index and specifications	8
Chapter 3 Installation Of Frequency Inverter	11
3.1 Installation of frequency inverter	11
3.1.1 Mounting surface	11
3.1.2 Installation space	11
3.1.3 Multiple installations	12
3.2 Size and assembly of operation panel	13
3.3 Installation size of the panel	14
3.4 Removal of terminal cover	15
3.4.1 Disassembly and installation	15
3.4.2 Removal and installation of sheet metal cover plates	16
3.5 Installation of an expansion card	16
3.6 Installation and disassembly of function board	17
3.6.1 The installation of type I function card	17
3.6.2 installation of type II function card	17
3.7 Installation size of inverters	18
Chapter 4 Wiring Of Frequency Inverter	20
4.1 Wiring precautions	20
4.2 Connection of optional fittings and frequency inverter	21
4.3 Wiring of control terminals	25

4.3.1 Wiring of standard terminals of control panel	25
4.3.2 Function description of control terminal	25
4.3.3 CAUTIONS TO THE WIRING OF CONTROL TERMINAL	26
4.3.4 Description of dial switch on the control panel	26
4.4 Wiring of major loop terminal	27
4.4.1 Terminal Functions	27
4.4.2 Main loop terminal diagram	28
4.5 Wiring for basic operation of inverters	30
4.6 Grid System Requirements	30
Chapter 5 Operation And Simple Running Of Frequency Inverter	31
5.1 Basic function of the panel	31
5.1.1 Panel description	31
5.2 Basic functions and operating methods of panel	33
5.2.1 Basic functions of panel	33
5.2.2 Operating methods of panel	35
5.3 Simple running of frequency inverter	37
5.3.1 Operation process	37
5.3.2 Initial setting of frequency inverter	39
5.3.3 Simple operation	40
Chapter 6 Function Parameter Table	42
6.1 System management parameter	43
6.2 Selection of running commands	45
6.3 Frequency setting	46
6.4 Control command source	47
6.5 Start and stop	48
6.6 Acceleration and deceleration characteristics parameters	49
6.7 Carrier frequency	49
6.8 V/F parameters and overload protection (Motor 1)	50
6.9 V/F parameters and overload protection (Motor 2)	50
6.10 Steady running	51
6.11 Vector running parameters (Motor 1)	52
6.12 Vector running parameters (Motor 2)	53
6.13 Parameter measurement and pre-excitation	54
6.14 Multifunctional input terminal	54
6.15 Multifunctional output terminal	55
6.16 Pulse input	56
6.17 Pulse output	56
6.18 Analog input	56
6.19 Analog input curve correction	57
6.20 Analog output	57
6.21 Analog input power failure detection	58
6.22 Virtual analog input	59

6.23 Hopping frequency	59
6.24 Built-in auxiliary timer	60
6.25 Built-in auxiliary counter	61
6.26 Auxiliary functions	62
6.27 Motor temperature detection	63
6.28 Multi-stage frequency setting	63
6.29 Simple programmable multi-stage operation	64
6.30 Swing frequency operation	65
6.31 Process PID (4ms control cycle)	65
6.32 Process PID multi-stage setting	68
6.33 Process PID sleep function	68
6.34 Revolution setting and feedback	68
6.35 Revolution closed-loop parameter	70
6.36 Protection parameter	70
6.37 Torque control	71
6.38 Compensation PID (Running cycle: 1ms)	72
6.39 Compensation PID controller parameter selection	74
6.40 Modbus fieldbus	75
6.41 Mapping access parameter	75
6.42 Communication linkage synchronous control	76
6.43 Expansion multifunctional input terminal (EDI1~ EDI8)	77
6.44 Expansion multifunctional output terminal	77
6.45 Servo control and scale positioning	77
6.46 Virtual input and output	79
6.47 Protection function configuration parameter	80
6.48 Correction parameter	81
6.49 Special functional parameters	82
6.50 Other configuration parameters	82
6.51 Historical fault recording	83
6.52 Operation status at the last fault	83
6.53 Basic status parameter	84
6.54 Auxiliary status parameter	85
6.55 Modbus fieldbus status parameter	86
6.56 Terminal status and variable	86
6.57 Counter timer value	87
6.58 Spindle control and scale positioning status parameter	87
6.59 Equipment information	87
Chapter 7 Description of specific functions	91
7.1 System management (group F0.0)	91
7.2 Running command selection (group f0.1)	99
7.3 Frequency setup (group f0.2)	104
7.4 Control command source (group f0.3)	108

7.5 Start and stop (group f0.4)	109
7.6 Accel and decel characteristics (group f1.0)	115
7.7 Carrier frequency (group f1.1)	117
7.8 V/F parameters and overload protection (motor 1) (group f1.2)	118
7.9 V/F parameters and overload protection (motor 2) (group f1.3)	120
7.10 Steady running (group f1.4)	120
7.11 Vector running parameters (motor 1) (group f2.0)	123
7.12 Parameter measurement and pre-excitation (group f2.2)	124
7.13 Multifunctional input terminal (group f3.0)	125
7.14 Multifunctional output terminal (group f3.1)	133
7.15 Pulse input (group f3.2)	136
7.16 Pulse output (group f3.3)	137
7.17 Analog input (group f4.0)	138
7.18 Analog input curve correction (group f4.1)	139
7.19 Analog output (group f4.2)	139
7.20 Analog input wire-break detection (group f4.3)	141
7.21 HOPPING FREQUENCY (GROUP F5.0)	142
7.22 Built-in auxiliary timer (group f5.1)	142
7.22.1 Basic functions of the timer	142
7.22.2 Trigger and gate control function setting of timer	143
7.22.3 Clock concatenation function setting of timer	143
7.22.4 Concatenation trigger function setting of timer	143
7.23 Built-in auxiliary counter (group f5.2)	144
7.24 Auxiliary functions (group f5.3)	145
7.25 Motor temperature detection (group f5.4)	148
7.26 Multi-stage frequency setting (group f6.0)	150
7.27 Simple programmable multi-stage operation (group f6.1)	154
7.28 Swing frequency operation (group f6.2)	154
7.29 Process PID (4ms control cycle) (group F7.0)	157
7.30 Process pid multi-stage setting (group F7.1)	161
7.31 Process pid sleeping function (group F7.2)	161
7.32 Revolution setting and feedback (group F8.0)	162
7.33 Revolution closed-loop parameter (group F8.1)	164
7.34 Protective parameters (group F8.2)	166
7.35 Torque control (group F8.3)	167
7.36 Compensation pid (1ms control cycle) (group F9.0)	168
7.37 Parameter selection of compensation pid controller (group F9.1)	169
7.38 Modbus fieldbus (Standard expansion card configuration) (group FA.0)	170
7.39 Mapping parameter access (group FA.1)	170
7.40 Communication linkage synchronous control (group FA.2)	171
7.41 Expansion multifunctional input terminal (group FB.0 AND FB.1)	173
7.42 Servo control and scale positioning (group FB.2)	173

7.43 Virtual input and output (group FF.0).....	175
7.44 Protecting function configuration parameters (group FF.1).....	176
7.45 Correction parameters (group FF.2).....	176
7.46 SPecial functional parameters (group FF.3).....	178
7.47 Other configuration parameters (group FF.4).....	178
Chapter 8 Warning, Alarm Diagnosis And Counter Measures	180
8.1 Troubleshooting with warning or alarm display	180
8.1.1 Alarm display and troubleshooting	180
8.1.2 Warning display and troubleshooting	184
8.2 Abnormal operation without prompts and the solutions	187
8.3 Failures in setting operation of frequency inverter	189
8.4 Inquiry for failure record	190
8.5 Reset of warning or alarm failure	191
Chapter 9 Maintenance	192
9.1 Routine maintenance	192
9.2 Inspection and displacement of the vulnerable components	193
9.2.1 Filter capacitor	193
9.2.2 Cooling fan	193
9.3 Storage	194
9.4 Warranty	194
Chapter 10 Example Of Usage	195
10.1 Energy-saving transformation of escalators	195
10.1.1 Scheme description	195
10.1.2 Wiring diagram	196
10.2 Make simple tension closed-loop control with offset PID	196
10.2.1 Diagram of constant tension control	196
10.2.2 Diagram of control structure	197
10.2.3 Configuration	197
10.2.4 Wiring diagram	198
10.3 Application in mechanical factory	198
10.3.1 Configuration	198
10.3.2 External circuit wiring diagram	199
10.4 Multi-PID setup, multi-part PID setup, form a multi- step pidsetup (To reduce overstrike)	199
10.4.1 Parameter setup	199
10.4.2 Diagram of step PID value given	199
Chapter 11 Description Of Communication Protocol	200
11.1 Protocol overview	200
11.2 Interface and transmission method	200
11.3 Data structure	200
11.4 Parameter configuration for frequency inverters	200
11.5 Brief introduction of functions	201
11.6 Access address summary	201

11.7 Detailed modbus address-finding distribution	202
11.8 Examples	207
Chapter 12 EMC	209
12.1 CE	209
12.2 Definition	209
12.3 Obey standard order	209
12.3.1 Obey EMC order	209
12.3.2 Obey LVD order	209
12.4 Guidance of emc external accessories installation and selection	210
12.4.1 Notice of emi input filter installation	210
12.4.2 DC Reactor	210
12.4.3 Input reactor	211
12.4.4 AC output reactor	212
12.5 Shielded cable	213
12.6 Cable wiring requirements	213
12.7 Leakage current response requirements	214
12.8 Common EMC interference problem and solution	215
Chapter 13 Optional Components	216
13.1 Introduction to I/O Expansion Cards	216
13.2 PG expansion card introduction	221
13.3 Tension control expansion card	224
13.3.1 Basic product information	224
13.3.2 Product introduction	224
12.3.3 Product function	224
12.3.4 Technical data	224
13.4 Brief introduction to operation panel	225
13.4.1 Outside view of operation panel	225
13.4.2 Button function	225
13.5 Brake Components	226
13.5.1 Type Description of Brake Units	226
13.5.2 Guide of brake resistance selection	226
13.5.3 Appearance of brake unit	227
13.5.4 Installation dimension of brake unit	228
13.5.5 Reference Wiring Diagram of Single Brake Unit and Inverter	228
13.5.6 Wiring Precautions	229

Chapter 1 Product Confirmation And Operation Precautions

1.1 Product confirmation

Check the outer packing carefully to see if there is any damage after the arrival of the goods. If there is a label on the outer packing, please confirm the model and specification of it to see if they are in accordance with your order. If any damage or discrepancy is found, please contact the supplier promptly for solution.

1.1.1 Precautions of unpacking inspection

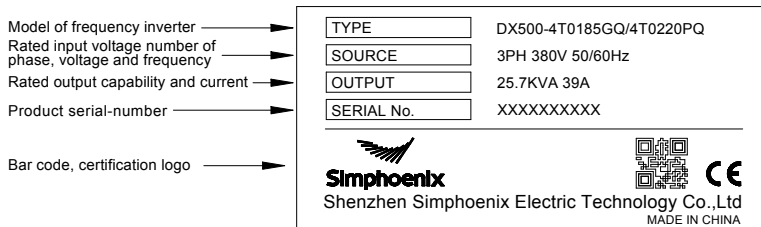
Confirm the frequency inverter body and accessories carefully when unpacking, to see if there is any damage during the transit, and if the parts and components are damaged or dropped, and if there is the frequency inverter entity and the following accessories:

- 1) Operation instruction;
- 2) Certification;
- 3) Product list;
- 4) Other ordered accessories.

If there is any omission or damage, please contract the supplier promptly for solution.

• Nameplate of Frequency Inverter

On the frequency inverter, there is a nameplate marked with model, rated parameters, product serial-number and bar code of frequency inverter. The content of nameplate is shown as below:



1.2 Safety precautions

Read this instruction carefully prior to installation, wiring, operation and maintenance, to ensure proper operation of this product. "Tip", "Attention", "Danger" and "Warning" in this operation manual are defined as follows:



"Tip" : Tips for some useful information.



"Attention" : Matter requires attention during operation.



"Warning" : Without operation according to the requirements, moderate injuries or minor injuries of personnel and material loss may be caused.



"Danger" : Without operation according to the requirements, serious damage to the equipment or personnel injuries may be caused.

1.2.1 Installation precautions

1. The frequency inverter shall not be installed on combustibles, in case of the risk of fire.
2. The frequency inverter shall not be installed at places with direct sunlight, in case of danger.
3. The frequency inverter of this series shall not be installed in the environment of explosive gases, in case of the danger of explosion.
4. Frequency inverter with damage or lack of components shall not be applied; otherwise it may cause personal injury or fire and other accidents.
5. It is not allowed to dismount or modified the frequency inverter without authorization.
6. No foreign matter is allowed to be dropped into the frequency inverter, in case of breakdown of the frequency inverter.
7. During installation, the frequency inverter shall be installed at the place able to bear its weight; otherwise, it may fall down.

1.2.2 Safety precautions for wiring

1. Please authorize the professional staff to conduct wiring. If the wiring operation is not proper, it may damage to the equipment and the individuals.
2. Please start to wire after the panel digital tube of frequency inverter is out for ten minutes, otherwise, there can be electric shock risk.
3. The grounding terminal of frequency inverter must be reliably grounded; otherwise, there can be electric shock risk.
4. It is forbidden to reversely connect the live wire and the neutral wire, otherwise there will be hidden dangers in electricity safety.

5. No alternating current power supply is allowed to be connected onto the U, V, W of frequency inverter, otherwise, the frequency inverter can be damaged.
6. Confirm that the input voltage and frequency converter are in consistent with rated voltage value; otherwise, the frequency inverter may be damaged.
7. Confirm that the motor and frequency converter are adaptive with each other, otherwise, the motor can be damaged or frequency converter protection can be caused.
8. Brake resistor can not be connected onto the (+), (-) of DC bus directly; otherwise, there can be fire risk.
9. Inverter leakage current may be greater than 3.5 mA. Make sure that the the inverter is firmly grounded and the grounding resistance is less than 0.1Ω. Improper grounding of the inverter may cause death or serious injury.
10. This inverter is suitable for circuits with short-circuit current below 100kA.

1.2.3 Safety precautions for running operation

1. Please do not operate the switch with wet hand; otherwise, there can be electric shock.
2. Please install the front cover prior to plugging in, and shall not demount the cover while power is on, otherwise, here can be electric shock.
3. During the frequency converter is with power on, even the motor is stopped, do not touch the terminals of frequency converter, otherwise, here can be electric shock.
4. If you apply the function of restart, do not approach the load equipment, for it may restart suddenly after alarm removed, otherwise, personal injuries may caused.
5. Please set the system as ensuring personal and property safety even when restarting.
6. Please set additional emergency stop switch, otherwise, personal injuries may be caused.
7. The temperature of cooling fin and direct current reactor can be very high, therefore, do not touch them, in case of the danger of burns.

1.2.4 Safety caution for maintenance check

1. Maintenance operations of overhaul and device replacement only can be done by trained professional maintenance staff. During operation, insulation protection tools shall be applied. It is strictly prohibited to leave thrum and metal in the machine. Otherwise, there can be dangers of electric shock, fire, and personal and property damage.
2. After replacement of control board, corresponding parameters must be set before operation, otherwise, there can be danger of property damage.

1.3 Knowledge on operation

1.3.1 Application knowledge of driving general motor

1. The temperature when driving general motor applied with frequency converter can be a little higher than that of industrial frequency power. With long-term operation at low speed, the operation life of motor can be affected due to the poorer heat dissipation effect. In this case, special frequency converter shall be selected or lighten the motor load.
2. If when the equipment is installed with frequency converter drive, sometimes, there can be resonance due to the natural vibration frequency of mechanical system, please consider about applying flexible coupling and insulation rubber, or applying the function of hopping frequency of the frequency converter, to avoid the resonance point for operation.
3. There can be larger noise when driving general motor applied with frequency converter than that of industrial frequency power. In order to reduce the noise, the carrier frequency can be increased properly.

1.3.2 Application knowledge of driving special motor

1. For high-speed motor, if the set frequency of frequency converter is above 120Hz, please conduct combination test with motor, to make sure it can be operated safely.
2. For synchronous motor, there must be correspondences according to the types of motor. Please contract the manufacturer for consultation.
3. Operation of single-phase motor is not applied with frequency converter. Even when input with single phase, there is three-phase output, please apply with three-phase motor.

1.3.3 Ambient environment

Application shall be applied in the indoor range with environment temperature of -10 to +45℃ (Derating is recommended when the operating ambient temperature is +45℃ - +50℃), humidity around 5~95% (without condensation of moisture), no dust, no direct sunlight, no corrosive gas, no combustible gas, no oil mist, no steam, no water or floating fiber or mental particles; if there is special requirements of clients, please contract the manufacturer for consultation.

1.3.4 Connection knowledge of peripheral equipment

1. For the protection of wirings, please configure breaker for wirings on the input side of frequency converter. Please do not apply device with larger capacity than recommendation.
2. If it needs to switch to industrial frequency power and others, when installing electromagnetic contactor on the output side of frequency converter, please switch after frequency converter and motor stop running.
3. When applying with motor thermal relay, if the wiring of motor is too long, sometimes it is affected with the high-frequency current flowing through capacitance distributed with wiring, current below the set value of thermal relay may also cause trip. In this case, please lower the carrier frequency, or apply with output filter.
4. For noise interference, connection filter, magnet ring and shielded wire can be applied as corresponding measures.

1.3.5 Transportation and storage

1. During product handling, please capture the both sides of the bottom of the entity, rather than the cover or parts only.
2. Please do not make the parts of plastic excessive forced, otherwise, there can be falling down or damage.
3. When it is for temporary storage and long-term storage, pay attention to the followings:
 - Try to be packaged in the packing case of our company as the original package for storage.
 - Long-term of storage will lead to the characteristics of electrolytic capacitor worsen, therefore, it shall be powered on every half year at least, and with conduction time more than half an hour, and the input voltage must be risen to the rated value gradually with voltage regulator.

1.4 Abandon cautions

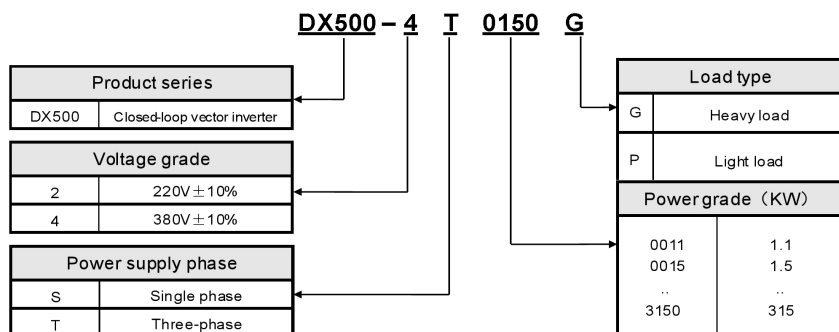
1. Explosion of the electrolytic capacitor: electrolytic capacitor in the frequency converter may cause explosion while burning.
2. Waste gas of plastic burning: harmful and toxic gas may be produces while burning the plastic and rubber product of the frequency converter.
3. Disposal methods: please deal with the frequency converter as industrial waste.

1.5 Other cautions

1. This product shall not be applied for life support device and other application concerning directly with human body safety, otherwise, there can be accident.
2. If serious accident or serious losses caused due to the failure of this product, please install safety device for this product, otherwise, there can be accident.
3. When operating the inverter, please follow the anti-static (ESD) regulations, otherwise the internal components of the inverter may be damaged due to static electricity.
4. The inverter has undergone withstanding voltage testing before leaving the factory. No withstanding voltage testing is allowed on any part of the inverter because the sophisticated components inside the inverter, EMC, lightning protection and other designs may be suffered from performance degrading or loss, and even the inverter may be damaged due to high voltage.

Chapter 2 Product Introduction

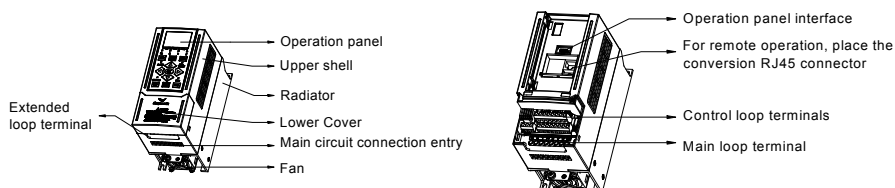
2.1 Model description



2.2 Product appearance

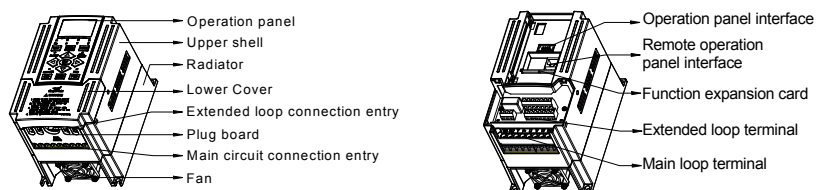
Appearance of Category I

Applicable for: DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ



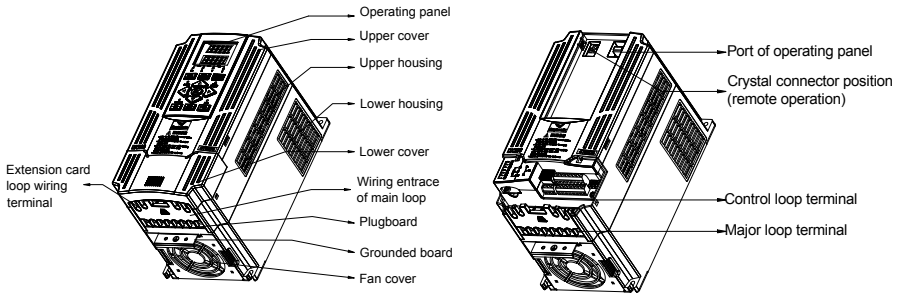
Appearance of Category II

Applicable for: DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ

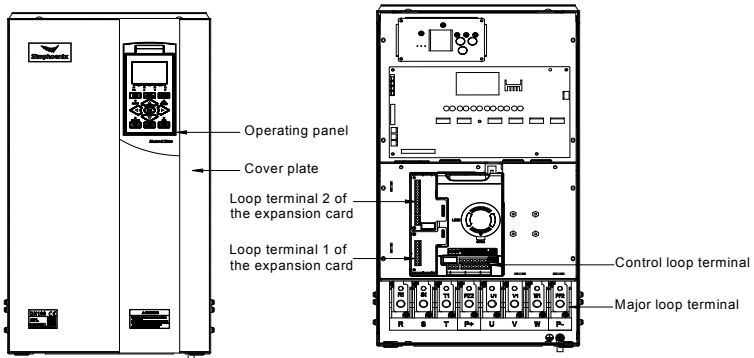


Appearance of Category III

Applicable for: DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ~DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ

**Appearance of Category IV**

Applicable for: DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0750PQ~DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ

**2.3 Model table**

Model	Variable Torque Load			Constant Torque Load		
	Rated capacity (KVA)	Rated current (A)	Motor power (KW)	Rated capacity (KVA)	Rated current (A)	Motor power (KW)
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ	2.0	3.0	1.1	2.4	3.7	1.5
DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ	2.4	3.7	1.5	3.6	5.5	2.2
DX500-4T0022GQ/4T0030PQ	3.6	5.5	2.2	4.9	7.5	3.0
DX500-4T0030GQ/4T0040PQ	4.9	7.5	3.0	6.3	9.5	4.0
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ	6.3	9.5	4.0	8.6	13.0	5.5
DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ	8.6	13.0	5.5	11.2	17.0	7.5
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0090PQ	11.2	17.0	7.5	13.8	21	9.0
DX500-4T0090GQ/4T0110PQ	13.8	21	9.0	16.5	25	11
DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ	16.5	25	11	21.7	33	15
DX500-4T0150GQ/4T0185PQ	21.7	33	15	25.7	39	18.5
DX500-4T0185GQ/4T0220PQ	25.7	39	18.5	29.6	45	22
DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ	29.6	45	22	39.5	60	30

Model	Variable Torque Load			Constant Torque Load		
	Rated capacity (KVA)	Rated current (A)	Motor power (KW)	Rated capacity (KVA)	Rated current (A)	Motor power (KW)
DX500-4T0300GQ/4T0370PQ	39.5	60	30	49.4	75	37
DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ	49.4	75	37	62.5	95	45
DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ	62.5	95	45	75.7	115	55
DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0750PQ	75.7	115	55	98.7	150	75
DX500-4T0750GQ/4T0900PQ	98.7	150	75	116	176	90
DX500-4T0900GQ/4T1100PQ	116	176	90	138	210	110
DX500-4T1100GQ/4T1320PQ	138	210	110	171	260	132
DX500-4T1320GQ/4T1600PQ	171	260	132	204	310	160
DX500-4T1600GQ/4T1850PQ	204	310	160	237	360	185
DX500-4T1850GQ/4T2000PQ	237	360	185	253	385	200
DX500-4T2000GQ/4T2200PQ	253	385	200	276	420	220
DX500-4T2200GQ/4T2500PQ	276	420	220	313	475	250
DX500-4T2500GQ/4T2800PQ	313	475	250	352	535	280
DX500-4T2800GQ/4T3150PQ	352	535	280	395	600	315
DX500-4T3150GQ/4T3500PQ	395	600	315	424	645	350
DX500-4T3500GQ/4T4000PQ	428	650	350	480	730	400
DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ	480	730	400	527	800	450

2.4 Product technical index and specifications

Input Output	Rated voltage frequency	Three phase(4T# series) 380V~415V($\pm 10\%$) 50/60Hz($\pm 5\%$)
	Output voltage	0~Input voltage
	Output frequency	Low frequency mode: 0.0~300.00Hz; High frequency mode: 0.0~400.0Hz.
	Digital input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ and power below : Standard configuration: 5-circuit digital input (DI) • DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and power above: Standard configuration: 6-circuit digital input (DI), extensible to 16-circuit (optional extension components)
	Digital output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ and power below: Standard configuration: 1-circuit digital output (DO) • DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and power above: Standard configuration: 2-circuit digital output (DO)
	Pulse in and out	0~100.0KHz pulse input, can receive OC or 0~24V level signal (optional)
	Pulse output	0 - 100.0KHz pulse output(optional), PWM output mode can be selected to extend analog output terminal.
	Analog input	Standard configuration: 0~10V voltage input (AI1); 0~20mA current input (AI2) Standard IO board: -10V~10V voltage input
	Analog output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ and power below: 1-circuit 0-10V analog output signal(can be set to 0-20VmA current output mode) • DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and power above: 2-circuit 0-10V analog output signal(can be set to 0-20VmA current output mode)
	Contact output	Standard one group of AC 250V/2A normally open and closed contacts, extensible 1-6 groups normally open and closed contacts

Control Characteristics	Control Mode	Closed-loop vector control	Open-loop vector control	V/F control
	Starting torque	0 speed 200%	0 speed 180%	0 speed 180%
	Speed adjustable range	1 : 1000	1 : 200	1 : 100
	Steady speed precision	±0.02%	±0.2%	±0.5%
	Torque control precision	±5%	±5%	--
Control Characteristics	Torque response time	≅ 5ms	≅ 25ms	--
	Frequency resolution	Low frequency mode: 0.01Hz; High frequency mode: 0.1Hz.		
	Frequency precision	Low frequency mode: digital setting--0.01 Hz, Analog setting - highest frequency ×0.1% High frequency mode: digital setting--0.1 Hz, Analog setting - highest frequency ×0.1%		
	Load capacity	Universal load mode: 110% - long-term; 150% - 60s; 180% -5s		
		Steady load mode (capacity increase mode): 105% - long-term; 120% - 60 s; 150% - 1 s		
	Carrier frequency	Two-phase vector composition: 1.5~15.0KHz; Three-phase vector composition: 1.5 ~ 12.0KHz (High frequency mode can reach 15KHz)		
	Deceleration and acceleration time	0.01 - 600.00Sec. / 0.01 - 600.0Min.		
	Magnetic flux brake	Achieve rapid retarding brake of the motor by increasing the motor's magnetic flux (30-120% allowed)		
	DC brake/ band-type rake	DC brake/band-type brake initial frequency: 0.0 - upper limiting frequency, brake/band-type brake injection current 0.0 ~ 100.0%		
	Strike frequency	0.0 ~ 50.00Hz		
Typical Function	Multi-segment running	16-segment frequency/speed running, independent setting of the running direction, time and acceleration and deceleration of each segment; 7-segment process PID setting		
	Built-in PID	Two built-in PID controller (process PID, compensation PID), can be either used independently by external equipment or be used to create complicated internal compensation control.		
	Wakening and sleeping	Process PID has simple sleeping and wakening functions.		
	MODBUS communication	Standard MODBUS communication protocol (optional) allowing for flexible parameter reading and mapping		
	Temperature detection	Able to receive detecting signals of PT100 or PTC thermo-sensitive elements, hence allows for over-temperature protection for the motor or external equipment.		
	Dynamic braking	(Standard configuration for models below DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ) Actuating voltage: 650~760V, braking ratio: 50~100%		
	General Functions	Power cut restart; Fault self-recovery, motor parameter dynamic/static self-identification. Start enabling, operation enabling, start delay, over current suppression, over voltage/under voltage suppression, V/F custom curve, analog input curve correction, line brake detection, textile machinery disturbance (frequency swing) operation.		

Function Features	Virtual IO terminal	8-circuit one-to-one virtual output and input terminals, allowing for complicated engineering onsite application in an easy way.
	Position servo and division positioning	Allows for easy servo control and precision positioning of spindle angle.
	Communication linkage synchronization	Easily allows for synchronized rotation of multiple rotation, and free selection of linkage balance of multiple machines based on current, torque and power, and the position synchronized balance function can ensure zero cumulative error of multi-machine linkage.
	Load dynamic balance	Also allows for dynamic balance of multi-machine load (not limited to communication linkage) and able to achieve torque motor characteristics.
	Strong starting torque	For load featuring high inertia and high static friction, super strong starting torque for certain period can be set.
	Setting priority	Users can freely select the priority of various frequency/revolution setting channel; Suitable for combined application for various occasions.
	Setting combinations	Up to hundreds of setting combinations of frequency, revolution and torque.
	Compensation PID	Especially built-in compensation PID, flexibly allowing for tension control, drawing machine control and other special applications.
	Dual motor parameter	With two sets of asynchronous motor parameters, allowing for motor switch even in the mode of vector control.
	Timer	3 built-in timers: 5 kinds of time, 5 kinds of trigger modes, multiple door access signals and working modes, and 7 kinds of output signals.
	Counter	2 built-in counters: Time margin selection, 4 kinds of trigger modes and 7 kinds of output signal
	Macro parameter	Application macro: Allowing for conveniently setting and partially curing multiple common group parameters and simplifying parameter setting for common applications.
		System macro: Allowing for conveniently switching equipment's working mode, and automatically redefining local parameters.
	Parameter testing	Any un-stored parameter tested on site can be stored with one key or abandoned and restored to original value.
	Parameter display	Allowing for automatically shielding parameters of unused functional modules or selectively displaying modified, stored or changed parameters.
Protection Function	Power supply	Under voltage protection and three-phase power supply unbalancing protection
	Running protection	Over current protection, over voltage protection, inverter over temperature protection, inverter overload protection, motor overload protection, output phase lack protection, and module drive protection.
	Equipment abnormality	Current detected abnormality, EEPROM memory abnormality, and abnormal control unit, motor over temperature, MC pull-in fault, and temperature acquisition loop fault.
	Motor connection	Motor not connected, motor's three-phased parameters unbalanced and parameter misidentification.
	Extension card	Detect and protect the extension card for compatibility or conflict.
Environment	Installation environment	Indoor vertical installation, not subjecting to direct sunshine, free of dust, corrosive and flammable gas, oil mist, vapor and free of drips or salt.
	Altitude	0~1000m. The output current capability drops by 10% for every rise of 1000m.
	Ambient temperature	Working ambient temperature: -10°C ~ +50°C Storage ambient temperature: -20°C ~ +60°C
	Humidity	Blow 95%, no condensed water
	Vibration	≤6m/s ²

Chapter 3 Installation Of Frequency Inverter

3.1 Installation of frequency inverter

This series of frequency inverters are wall-mounted frequency inverters, which should be installed vertically. In order to be in favor of circulation and heat dissipation, please install the frequency inverter at indoor place with good ventilation. Please refer to 1.3.3 for installation environment. If there is special installation requirement from customer, please contact the manufacturer in advance.

3.1.1 Mounting surface

The temperature of cooling fin may rise to around 90°C , so please install the mounting surface at the place which can stand for this temperature rise.



3.1.2 Installation space

Requirements for installation spacing distance of single frequency inverter are as shown in figure 3-1. Reserve enough space around the frequency inverter.

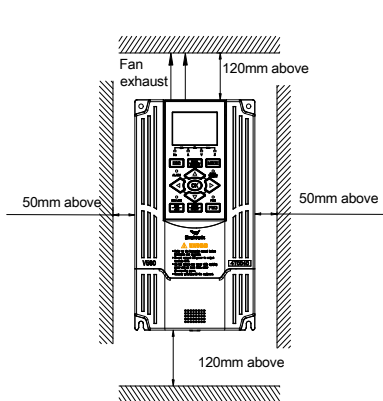


Figure 3-1-A Installation spacing distance (30KW below)

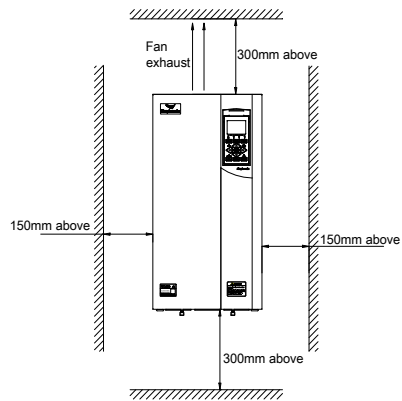


Figure 3-1-B Installation spacing distance (37KW above)

3.1.3 Multiple installations

If install more than 2 sets of frequency inverters in device or control cabinet, please conduct parallel installation in principle as shown in figure 3-2. If there is no choice but vertical installation, please consider setting partition plate as shown in figure 3-3, to ensure no influence on upper frequency inverter from lower frequency inverter.

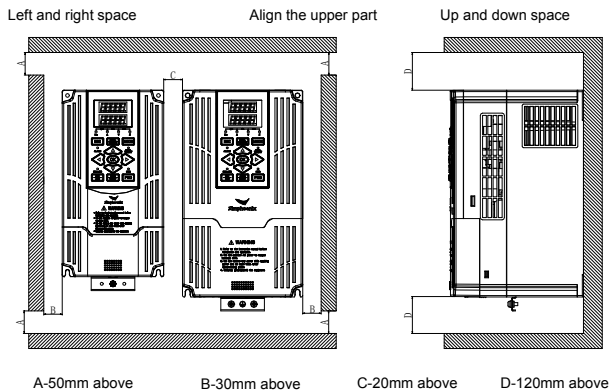


Figure 3-2 Left and right installation size of two inverters (5.5KW above)

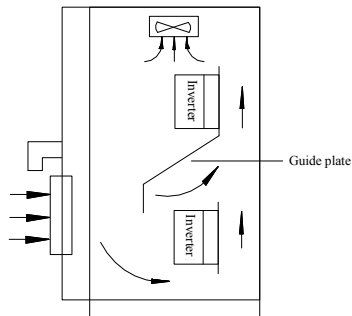


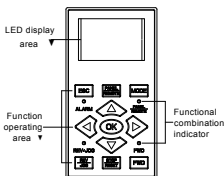
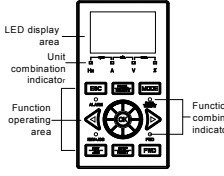
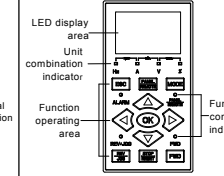
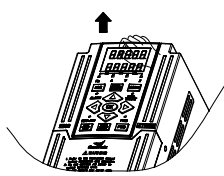

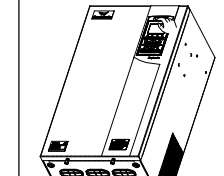
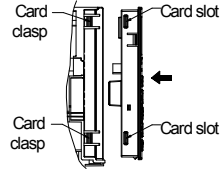
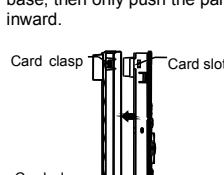
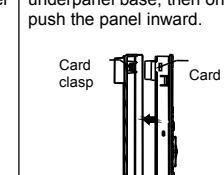
Figure 3-3 Spacing is leaved for the upper and lower two inverters

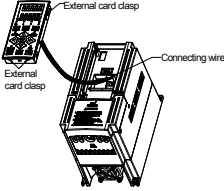
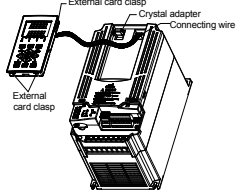
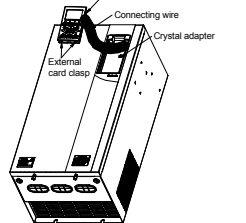



- Horizontally close installation is only for 4.0KW below, and -10°C ~ 45°C environmental temperature.
- For parallel installation of frequency inverters with different sizes, please carry out installation after aligning the upper parts of all the frequency inverters, thus to be in favor of changing cooling fan.
- Please don't install frequency inverter in the environment with tattered cotton yarn and damp dust which may cause blockage of cooling fin. If necessary to operate in such environment, please install in the control cabinet which can keep tattered cotton yarn out.
- If necessary to install at the place with more than 1000m height above sea level, please de-rate operation. See 2.4 product technical indexes and specifications for details.

3.2 Size and assembly of operation panel

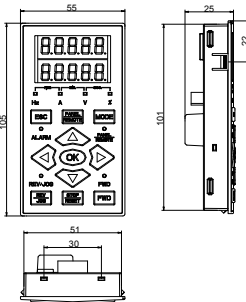
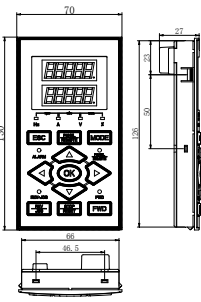
The operating panel name, mode, code and applicable device models of DX500 series inverters are shown in Table 3-1.

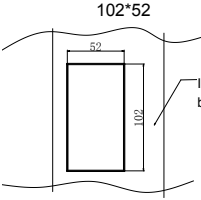
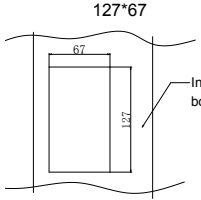
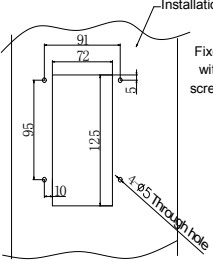
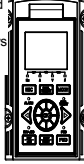
Name	LCD operating panel (button type)	LCD shuttle panel	LCD key panel
Model	DPNL350CM	DPNL360CB	DPNL360CA
Code	050M007035000	050M007360002	050M007360001
Applicable models	Apply to the inverter below DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ	Apply to DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ~ DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ	Apply to the inverter above DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ
Appearance			
disassembly	Put middle finger in the finger hole site front of the operation panel, slightly lift the panel up. 	Put middle finger in the finger hole site front of the operation panel, slightly lift the panel up. 	Put middle finger in the finger hole site front of the operation panel, slightly lift the panel up. 
installation	After the alignment of panel and its slot position, push the panel down evenly. 	Joint the fixed mouth of hook at the bottom of operation panel and spring plate under panel base, then only push the panel inward. 	Joint the fixed mouth of hook at the bottom of operation panel and spring plate underpanel base, then only push the panel inward. 

<p>Extend external connection</p>	<p>Disassemble the operation panel and make the extension cord as follows.</p> 	<p>Disassemble the operation panel, take crystal joint and put it in the designated position in case of the lost. The extension cord as follow.</p> 	<p>Disassemble the operation panel, take crystal joint and put it in the designated position in case of the lost. The extension cord as follow.</p> 
-----------------------------------	--	---	---

<div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ It is a must to use extension cable or commercial LAN cable (straight cables) in the market. ➤ Extension cable shall not exceed 15 meters; shielding layer is connected with grounding terminal of frequency inverter. Please select remote operation panel if the extension cable is more than 15 meters long. ➤ Do not carry out wiring horizontally close to the power line. ➤ Panel shall be fastened on stable fixed surface or work bench so as to avoid damage.
--

3.3 Installation size of the panel (the operating panel can be flexibly selected according to actual installation requirement)

Name	Two-line LED small panel	Two-line LED standard operating panel
<p>Installation size</p>		

External connection without tray, installation board hole diagram	 <p>102*52</p> <p>52</p> <p>102</p> <p>Installation board</p>	 <p>127*67</p> <p>67</p> <p>127</p> <p>Installation board</p>
External connection with tray, installation board hole diagram	This connection mode is not applicable	 <p>Installation board</p> <p>91</p> <p>72</p> <p>125</p> <p>10</p> <p>95</p> <p>5</p> <p>4-ϕ5 Through hole</p> <p>Fixed with screws</p> 

3.4 Removal of terminal cover

3.4.1 Disassembly and installation

Removal: put fingers on the handle slot at the bottom of cover plate (the position of clasp as figure 3-4), and forcibly lift it upward until the card clasps between cover plate and shell break away, then pull the cover plate down can disassemble the shell. See figure 3-4.

Installation: slant cover plate into about 15°, then insert the fixed stator at the top of cover plate into fixed slot on shell. Forcibly press the cover plate down until heard a click, which means the cover plate has been in place.

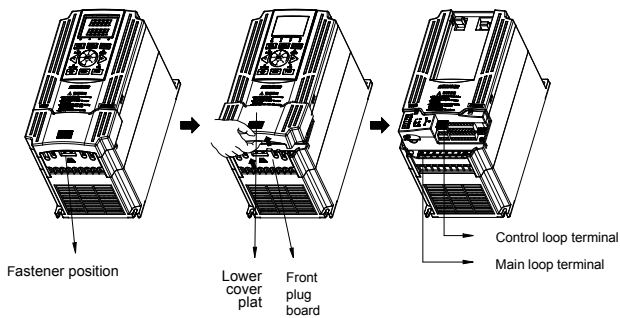


Figure 3-4 Disassembly and installation schematic diagram of plastic cover plate

3.4.2 Removal and installation of sheet metal cover plates

Figure 3-5 shows how to remove and install the sheet metal cover

Disassembly

1. Take the two hand screws at the bottom of the cover plate;
2. Remove the cover plate by lifting it up.

Install

1. Fasten the cover to the top of the chassis and lower it so that the cover is stuck on both sides of the chassis;
2. Tighten the two hand screws at the bottom of the cover surface.

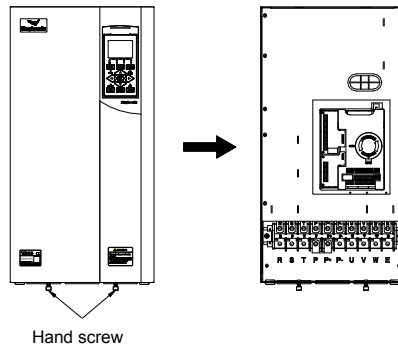


Figure 3-5 Removing and installing the sheet metal cover

3.5 Installation of an expansion card

Please refer to Figure 3-6 for disassembly and installation of expansion board.

Installation:

1. Remove the upper cover plate of the product, refer to Section 3.4 for details;
2. Place expansion board in direction as shown in figure, press down until good connection between expansion board and socket of control panel;
3. Tighten the fastening screw M3 at the left upper corner of the expansion card

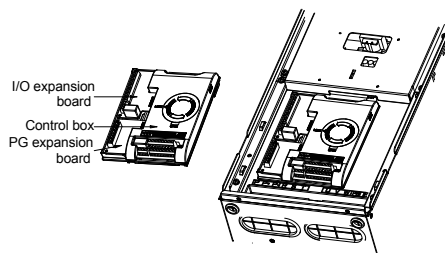


Figure 3-6 Schematic diagram of installation and disassembly of expansion board

3.6 Installation and disassembly of function board

3.6.1 The installation of type I function card

Function board is installed on control panel with utilization of extension cord. As shown in Figure 3-7-A.

Apply to the inverter model above DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ.

Installation:

1. After making the triangle mark on cylindrical cover plate direct to "open", put index finger or middle finger into the hole to push upward, then can take the circular cover plate out;
2. Make the socket of function board direct to the pin of control board, and then slightly press it down until good contact;
3. Get cylinder cover plate on and rotate clockwise to make the triangle on it direct to "lock".

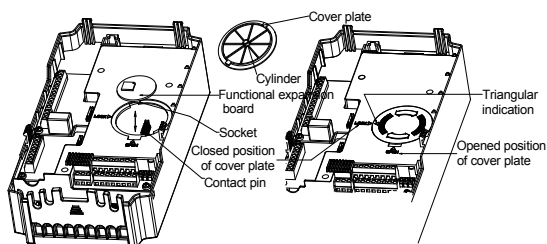


Figure 3-7-A Schematic diagram of installation and disassembly of type I function board

3.6.2 installation of type II function card

Install the function card on the control panel through the guide slot and USB plug, as 3-7-B demonstrate . apply to the inverter model below V800-4T0030G/4T0040P .

Installation:

1. Take the keyboard out.
2. Zero in the square functional expansion card at guiding slot, keep the USB plug downward and use the index finger or the middle finger to press it into the bottom.

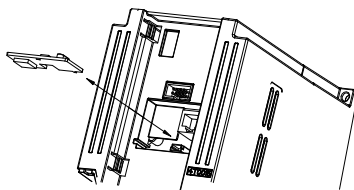
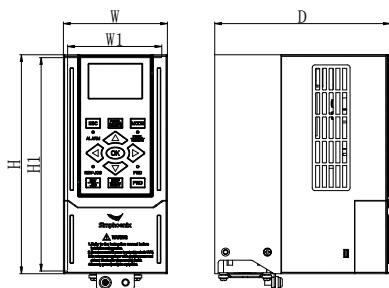


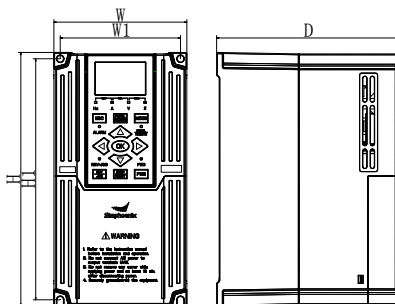
Figure 3-7-B Installation and disassembly of type II function card

3.7 Installation size of inverters



Type I suitable model:

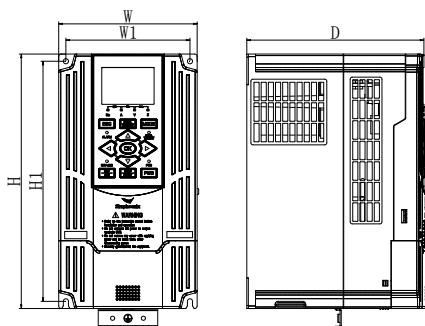
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ



Type II suitable model:

DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~

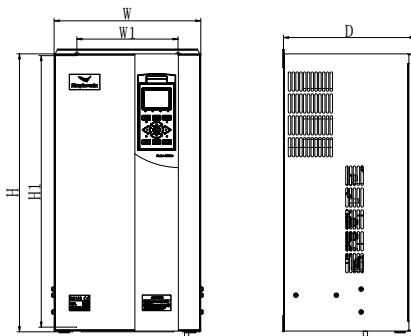
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ



Type III suitable model:

DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ~

DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ



Type IV suitable model:

DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0055PQ~

DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ

The inverter's installation size is shown as below:

Inverter Model (Three-phase 380V)	W1 mm	W mm	H1 mm	H mm	D mm	Screw specification
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ	67	77	152	162	130	M4
DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ	87	97	152	162	130	M4
DX500-4T0022GQ/4T0030PQ						
DX500-4T0030GQ/4T0040PQ	95	105	190	200	146	M4
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ						
DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ	121	135	234	248	175	M4
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0090PQ						
DX500-4T0900GQ/4T0110PQ	146	160	261	275	179	M5
DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ						
DX500-4T0150GQ/4T0185PQ	166	180	290	305	188	M5
DX500-4T0185GQ/4T0220PQ	169					
DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ	160	210	387	405	211	M6
DX500-4T0300GQ/4T0370PQ	160	250	422	445	216	M6
DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ						
DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ	200	290	525	545	260	M8
DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0750PQ						
DX500-4T0750GQ/4T0900PQ	230	330	603	625	280	M10
DX500-4T0900GQ/4T1100PQ						
DX500-4T1100GQ/4T1320PQ	280	380	760	785	300	M10
DX500-4T1320GQ/4T1600PQ						
DX500-4T1600GQ/4T1850PQ	320	450	919	945	300	M10
DX500-4T1850GQ/4T2000PQ						
DX500-4T2000GQ/4T2200PQ						
DX500-4T2200GQ/4T2500PQ	350	480	1022	1050	300	M12
DX500-4T2500GQ/4T2800PQ	480	550	1116	1145	300	M12
DX500-4T2800GQ/4T3150PQ						
DX500-4T3150GQ/4T3500PQ						
DX500-4T3500GQ/4T4000PQ	500	670	1173	1200	350	M12
DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ						

Chapter 4 Wiring Of Frequency Inverter

4.1 Wiring precautions

- Make sure intermediate circuit breaker is connected between the frequency inverter and power supply to avoid expanded accident when the frequency inverter is faulty.
- In order to reduce electromagnetic interference, please connect surge absorber on the coil of electromagnetic contactor, relay and etc. in the surrounding circuit of the frequency inverter.
- Please use shielded wire of above 0.3mm^2 for the wiring of such analog signals as frequency setting terminal and instrument loop, etc. The shielding layer shall be connected on the grounding terminal of the frequency inverter (keep the shielding layer earthed at single end) with wiring length less than 30m.
- The stranded wire or shielded wire of above 0.75mm^2 shall be selected for the wiring of input and output loop of relay.
- The control wire shall be separated from the power line of major loop; it shall be at a distance of above 10cm for parallel wiring and vertical for cross wiring.
- All the leading wires shall be completely fastened with the terminal to ensure good contact. The leading wires of major loop shall be adopted cables or copper bar. When using cables, wiring must not be carried out until they are cold pressed or welded well by lug plate with corresponding section.
- The pressurization of all the leading wires shall be in compliance with the voltage class of the frequency inverter.
- Please reliably ground the frequency inverter and motor locally.



Absorption capacitor or other RC absorbers shall not be installed at U, V and W output end of the frequency inverter, as shown in figure 4-1.

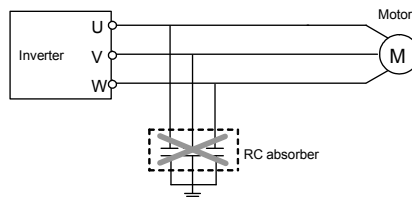


Figure 4-1 The ketch of forbidding connecting a RC absorber at the output terminal

4.2 Connection of optional fittings and frequency inverter

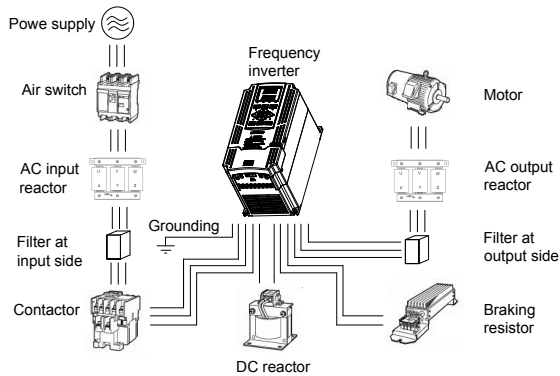


Figure 4-2 Wiring of frequency inverter

- 1) Power supply: The power supply shall be in accordance with the specification of input power supply designated by this operating manual.
- 2) Air switch:
 - When the frequency inverter is maintained or not in use for a long time, the air switch will separate the frequency inverter from the power supply;
 - When the input side of the frequency inverter has failures like short circuit, the air switch can protect.
- 3) AC input reactor: When the interaction of higher harmonic between the frequency inverter and power supply cannot meet the requirements after serious wave form distortion of power grid or the frequency inverter is equipped with DC reactor, the AC input reactor can be added. The AC input reactor can improve the power factors at input side of the inverter and reduce the influence caused by unbalanced voltage of three-phase power supply.
- 4) Filter at input side: EMI filter can be selected to restrict the high-frequency noise interference from the power cord of the frequency inverter.
- 5) Contactor: It can cut off the power supply when the system protective function acts to prevent failure expanding.
- 6) DC reactor: In order to defend the influence of power supply to frequency inverter, protect the inverter and restrict higher harmonic, DC reactor shall be equipped under the following conditions:
 - When the power supply of frequency inverter has switch LBMJ on the node or with silicon controlled phase control load, the voltage jump of the grid resulted from reactive transient caused by capacitor switching and harmonic and grid wave form gap caused by phase control load may damage the input rectifying circuit of the frequency inverter.
 - When the three-phase power supply of the frequency inverter is unbalanced;
 - When the power factors at the input end of the frequency inverter are required to improve.
- 7) Filter at output side: EMI filter can be selected to restrict the interference noise generated at the output side of the inverter and wire leakage current.
- 8) AC output reactor: When the wiring from the frequency inverter to the motor is longer (exceeding 20m), it can restrict radio interference and leakage current.
- 9) Braking resistor: Improve the braking capacity of frequency inverter to avoid overvoltage failure when slowing down.



➤ Standard built-in DC reactor for DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ model and above.

The specification of recommended electric appliances is as follows:

Model of frequency inverter	Adaptive motor (KW)		wire gauge (major loop) (mm ²)	Air circuit breaker (A)	Electromagnetic contactor (A)
	General loads	Load for fan and water pump			
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ	1.1	1.5	1.5	16	12
DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ	1.5	2.2	2.5	16	12
DX500-4T0022GQ/4T0030PQ	2.2	3.0	4	16	12
DX500-4T0030GQ/4T0040PQ	3.0	4.0	4	20	16
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ	4.0	5.5	4	25	16
DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ	5.5	7.5	6	32	22
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0090PQ	7.5	9.0	6	40	32
DX500-4T0090GQ/4T0110PQ	9.0	11	10	50	32
DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ	11	15	10	63	32
DX500-4T0150GQ/4T0185PQ	15	18.5	10	63	38
DX500-4T0185GQ/4T0220PQ	18.5	22	16	80	45
DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ	22	30	16	100	63
DX500-4T0300GQ/4T0370PQ	30	37	25	125	75
DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ	37	45	25	160	85
DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ	45	55	35	200	110
DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0750PQ	55	75	50	225	140
DX500-4T0750GQ/4T0900PQ	75	90	50	250	170
DX500-4T0900GQ/4T1100PQ	90	110	70	315	205
DX500-4T1100GQ/4T1320PQ	110	132	95	400	250
DX500-4T1320GQ/4T1600PQ	132	160	95	400	330
DX500-4T1600GQ/4T1850PQ	160	185	150	630	330
DX500-4T1850GQ/4T2000PQ	185	200	150	630	400
DX500-4T2000GQ/4T2200PQ	200	220	185	630	400
DX500-4T2200GQ/4T2500PQ	220	250	185	800	500
DX500-4T2500GQ/4T2800PQ	250	280	240	800	500
DX500-4T2800GQ/4T3150PQ	280	315	240	1000	630
DX500-4T3150GQ/4T3500PQ	315	350	2*150	1250	630
DX500-4T3500GQ/4T4000PQ	350	400	185*2	1250	780
DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ	400	450	240*2	1600	780



- The power of adaptive motor can be increased by one power grade when DX500 series frequency inverter is connected with loads for fans and water pumps compared with that for connecting with general loads.

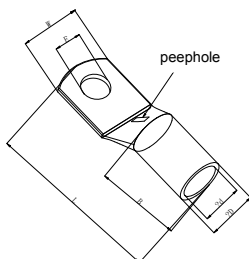
Main loop screw specification/ tightening torque, as listed below:

Main loop terminal			
Inverter model	Screw specification	Tightening torque(N*m)	Recommended lug model no.
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ	M3.5	0.7~0.9	PTV-1.25-9
DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ	M3.5	0.7~0.9	PTV2-9
DX500-4T0022GQ/4T0030PQ	M3.5	0.7~0.9	PTV2-9
DX500-4T0030GQ/4T0040PQ	M3.5	0.7~0.9	PTV2-9
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ	M3.5	0.7~0.9	PTV2-9
DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ	M4	1.2~1.5	RNY5.5-4S
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0090PQ	M4	1.2~1.5	RNY5.5-4S
DX500-4T0090GQ/4T0110PQ	M4	1.2~1.5	RNY8-5S
DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ	M4	1.2~1.5	RNY8-5S
DX500-4T0150GQ/4T0185PQ	M5	2~2.5	RNY8-5S
DX500-4T0185GQ/4T0220PQ	M5	2~2.5	RNY8-5S
DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ	M6	4~6	RNY8-5S
DX500-4T0300GQ/4T0370PQ	M6	9~10	RNY14-6
DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ	M6	9~10	RNY14-6
DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ	M8	9~10	T35-8
DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0750PQ	M8	9~10	T50-8
DX500-4T0750GQ/4T0900PQ	M8	9~10	T70-8
DX500-4T0900GQ/4T1100PQ	M10	18~23	T70-10
DX500-4T1100GQ/4T1320PQ	M10	18~23	T95-10
DX500-4T1320GQ/4T1600PQ	M10	18~23	T95-10
DX500-4T1600GQ/4T1850PQ	M10	18~23	T150-10
DX500-4T1850GQ/4T2000PQ	M12	25~30	T150-12
DX500-4T2000GQ/4T2200PQ	M12	25~30	T185-12
DX500-4T2200GQ/4T2500PQ	M12	25~30	T185-12
DX500-4T2500GQ/4T2800PQ	M12	25~30	T240-12
DX500-4T2800GQ/4T3150PQ	M12	25~30	T240-12
DX500-4T3150GQ/4T3500PQ	M12	25~30	2*T150-12
DX500-4T3500GQ/4T4000PQ	M12	25~30	2*T185-12
DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ	M12	25~30	2*T240-12
General control board/extension card connection terminal			
General control terminal	Screw specification	Tightening	Recommended lug model no.
control board/extension card terminal	M2	0.1~0.2	E0.5-6
control board/extension card terminal	M3	0.3~0.4	E0.75-6

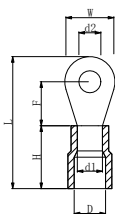
Lug model no		E(mm)	D(mm)	d(mm)	W(mm)	B(mm)	L(mm)
T series	T25-8	8.3	9.1	6.7	13	13	32
	T35-8	8.3	11	8.6	16.7	16	37
	T50-8	8.3	12.4	9.5	18	17	41
	T70-10	10.3	15	12	22.5	21.5	52.5
	T95-10	10.3	17	13.4	25	22.5	55
	T120-12	12.7	19	15	27	23	60
	T150-12	12.7	21.2	16.5	30	27	67
	T185-12	12.7	23	19	34	30	73
	T240-12	12.7	26.5	21	38	38	91.5
	T240-16	16.5	26.5	21	38	38	91.5
	T300-16	16.5	30	24.5	43	42	98

Lug model no		d2(mm)	W(mm)	F(mm)	L(mm)	H(mm)	d1(mm)	D(mm)	T(mm)
RNY series	RNY2-4S	4.3	6.6	7.9	22.2	11	2.3	4.8	0.8
	RNY5.5-4S	4.3	7.2	5.9	22.5	13	3.4	6.7	1
	RNY8-5S	5.3	8.8	9.3	29.7	16	4.5	8	1.2
	RNY14-6	6.5	16	14.5	43.5	21.5	5.4	11	1.4

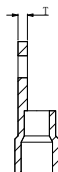
Lug model no		W(mm)	F(mm)	L(mm)	H(mm)	d1(mm)	D(mm)	T(mm)
PVT/E series	PTV1.25-9	1.9	9	19	10	1.7	4.2	0.8
	PTV2-9	1.9	9	19	10	2.3	4.7	0.8
	E0.5-6	1.1	6	12	6	1	2.6	/
	E0.75-6	1.1	6	12.3	6.3	1.2	2.8	/



T series



RNY series



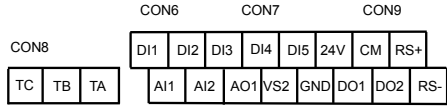
PVT/E series

4.3 Wiring of control terminals

4.3.1 Wiring of standard terminals of control panel

Category I: CON8 / CON6 / CON7 and CON9 terminals

Applicable to: DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ

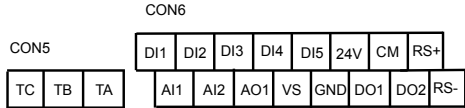


Category II: CON5 and CON6 terminals

Applicable to:

DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~

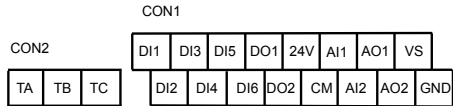
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ



Category III: CON1 and CON2 terminals

Applicable to:

DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above



4.3.2 Function description of control terminal

Type	Label of terminal	Name	Function description of terminals	Specification
Control terminal	DI1-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DI1	6 ways of programmable switching value input terminal can be selected 99 kinds of operational control commands by function code in F3.0 group by programming. See Reference Table for Input Function Selection of Multifunctional Terminal for detail.	Optical coupler isolated input : 24Vdc /5mA Doorsill voltage : <16V Input impedance:Z = 4.7KΩ Input frequency: f <1kHz
	DI2-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DI2		
	DI3-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DI3		
	DI4-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DI4		
	DI5-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DI5		
	DI6-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DI6		
Operating status output	CM	Input/output terminal common port	2 ways of programmable open collector output and 1 way of programmable relay output terminal can be selected 71 kinds of operating status output by the function code in F3.1 group by programming. See Reference Table for Monitor Unit Variables for detail.	NPN type OC output Maximum load current is 150mA; The highest withstand voltage is 24V. Input frequency: f <1kHz
	DO1-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DO1		
	DO2-CM	Multifunctional output terminal DO2		
	TA	Multifunctional relay output RO1		Contact capacity: AC250V/2A DC 30V / 0.5A Cos θ =1
	TC	TA-TB normally closed TA-TC normally open		
Power supply	CM	+24V power supply reference place	Power supply of switching value terminal	Maximum output current:100mA
	24V	+24V power supply		
Analog input	AI1-GND	Analog input AI1	Select input voltage range, polarity and other functions with function code in F4 Group.	Input voltage: 0-10V, Input impedance:100K
	AI2-GND	Analog input AI2		Input current: 0-20mA

Type	Label of terminal	Name	Function description of terminals	Specification
Analog output	AO1-GND	Multifunctional analog output AO1	The programmable voltage/current signal output terminal has 45 kinds of monitoring status to be selected by programming. See Reference Table for Monitor Variables for detail. JP1 and JP2 (see DIP Switch Jumper Selection in 4.3.6 for detail) are selected current/voltage output	Current output: 0-20mA Capacity 40Mw, Input current impedance: 0~300Ω Voltage output: 0-10V
	AO2-GND	Multifunctional analog output AO2		
Power supply	GND	Common terminal of analog signal		
	VS-GND	+10V/5V power supply	Supply +10V/10mA or +5V/50mA power outward	Selection of JP3 (see DIP Switch Jumper Selection in 4.3.6 for detail)
Communication	RS+/RS-	Positive or negative port of the 485 communication port	485 communication port	Driving current range: $\pm 60\text{mA}$

4.3.3 CAUTIONS TO THE WIRING OF CONTROL TERMINAL

Please pay attention to separate the wiring of control wire and major loop. See section 1.2 for detail.

4.3.4 Description of dial switch on the control panel

- There are 3 shifts for Type I toggle switches.

Applicable model: DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ

JP1

-10: indicates that the AI1 input signal is a -10~10V voltage signal.

0: indicates that the input signal of AI1 is 0~10V voltage signal.

JP2

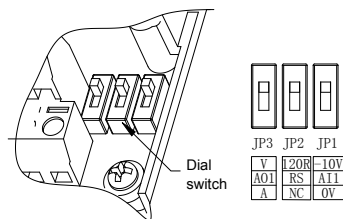
120R: Connect to the 120R terminal resistor.

NC: Do not connect the 120R terminal resistor.

JP3

V: indicates that the AO end outputs a voltage signal from 0 to 10V.

A: indicates that the AO end provides 0 to 20mA current signals.



- There are 2 shifts for Type II toggle switches.

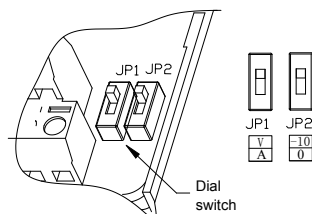
Applicable model:

DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ

JP1

V: indicates that the AO end outputs a voltage signal from 0 to 10V.

A: indicates that the AO end provides 0 to 20mA current signals.



JP2

-10: indicates that the AI1 input signal is a -10~10V voltage signal.

0: indicates that the input signal of AI1 is 0~10V voltage signal.

3. There are 3 shifts for Type II toggle switches.

Applicable model: DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and

above.

JP1

VO1: Indicates the output voltage signal of AO1 terminal.

OFF: indicates that the AO1 terminal is suspended.

CO1: Indicates the AO1 output current signal.

JP2

VO2: Indicates the AO2 terminal output voltage signal.

OFF: indicates that the AO2 terminal is suspended.

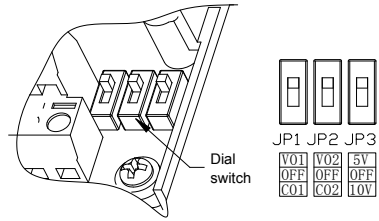
CO1: Indicates the AO2 terminal output current signal.

JP3

5V: indicates that the VS end provides a 5V voltage signal.


OFF: indicates that the VS terminal is in the suspended state.

10V: indicates that the VS end provides a 10V voltage signal.



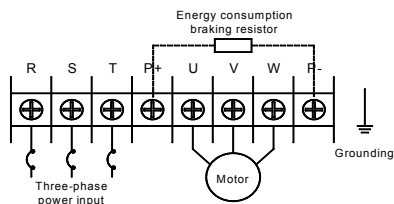
4.4 Wiring of major loop terminal

4.4.1 Terminal Functions

Symbol	Function description	Symbol	Function description
P+	DC side voltage positive terminal	PB	Power consumption braking resistor can be connected between P+ and PB
P-	DC side voltage negative terminal, Bus voltage input terminal of DC braking unit can be connected between P+ and P-.	E	Earthing terminal
R、S、T	Connect three-phase AC power supply of grid	U、V、W	Connect three-phase AC motor
L、N	The single-phase AC power supply of the grid can be connected. L indicates the live wire and N indicates the neutral wire.		Grounding

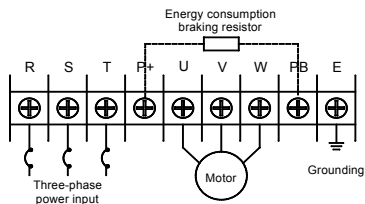
Note: It is forbidden to reversely connect the live wire and the neutral wire.

4.4.2 Main loop terminal diagram



Applicable model:

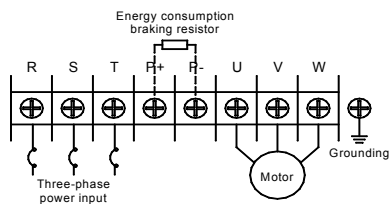
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ



Applicable model:

DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~

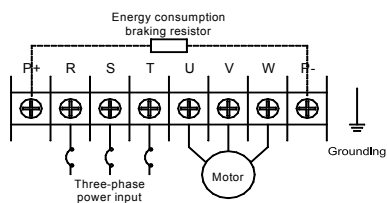
DX500-4T0022GQ/4T0030PQ



Applicable model:

DX500-4T0030GQ/4T0040PQ~

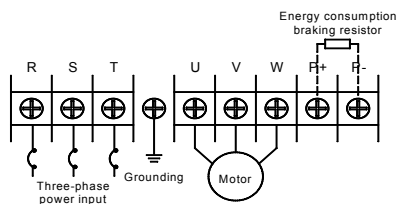
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ



Applicable model:

DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0075PQ~

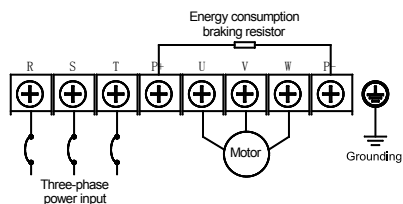
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0090PQ



Applicable model:

DX500-4T0090GQ/4T0110PQ~

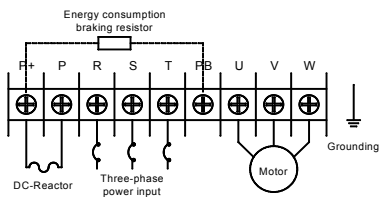
DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ



Applicable model:

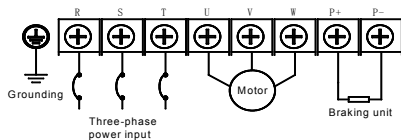
DX500-4T0150GQ/4T0220PQ~

DX500-4T0185GQ/4T0220PQ



Applicable model:

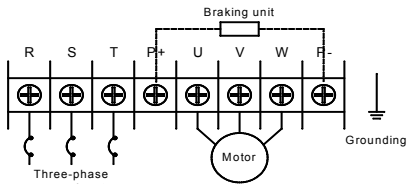
DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ



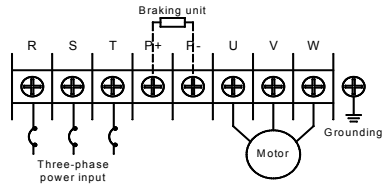
Applicable model:

DX500-4T0300GQ/4T0370PQ~

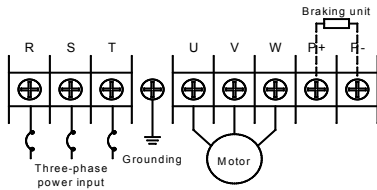
DX500-4T0370GQ/4T0450PQ



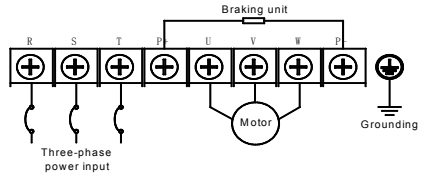
Applicable model:
DX500-4T0450GQ/4T0550PQ~
DX500-4T0550GQ/4T0750PQ



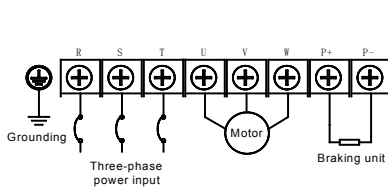
Applicable model:
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0900PQ~
DX500-4T0900GQ/4T1100PQ



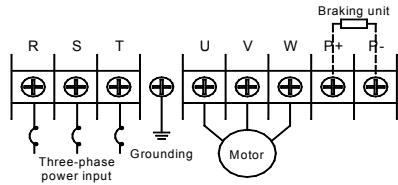
Applicable model:
DX500-4T1100GQ/4T1320PQ~
DX500-4T1320GQ/4T1600PQ



Applicable model:
DX500-4T1600GQ/4T1850PQ~
DX500-4T2200GQ/4T2500PQ



Applicable model:
DX500-4T2500GQ/4T2800PQ~
DX500-4T3150GQ/4T3500PQ



Applicable model:
DX500-4T3500GQ/4T4000PQ~
DX500-4T4000GQ/4T4500PQ

4.5 Wiring for basic operation of inverters

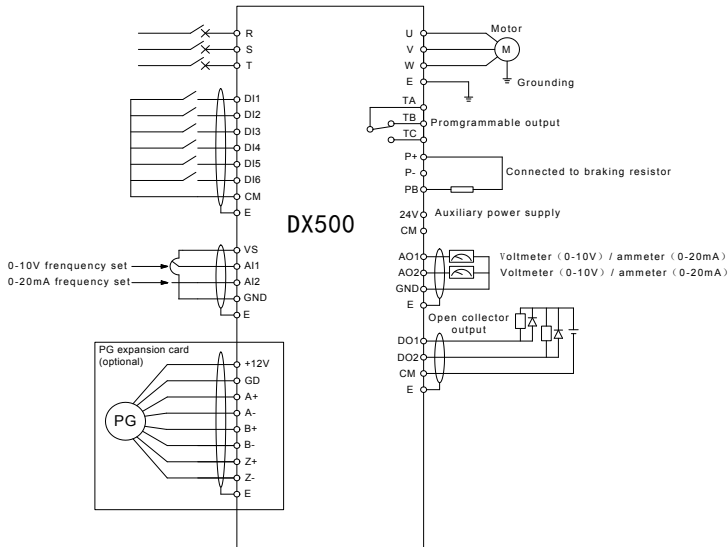
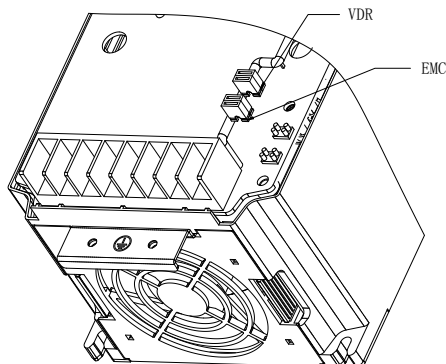


Figure 4-2 Basic Wiring Diagram of DX500 Series

4.6 Grid System Requirements

- This product is suitable for the power grid system with neutral grounding. If it is used in IT power grid system, it is required to remove all VDR and EMC grounded short-circuited caps or screws for the power grid system with ungrounded neutral point. For example, the VDR and EMC short-circuited caps as shown in the figure of DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ. In addition, filters cannot be installed, otherwise it may cause injuries or damage to the inverter.
- In the case where the residual-current circuit breaker is configured, if there is a phenomenon of tripping and leakage protection, it is applicable to remove the safety capacitor (EMC) grounded jumper cap or short-circuit screws, for example, the EMC as shown in the figure for DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ. Due to the different design of each machine, please consult the manufacturer for specific operations.



Chapter 5 Operation And Simple Running Of Frequency Inverter

5.1 Basic function of the panel

The panel of the frequency inverter mainly has two functions apart of basic starting and stopping control: monitoring of parameters for operating status and query and modification of internal parameters. Accordingly, the operation panel is divided into two operating modes: monitoring mode and parameter modification/query mode.

At the beginning of power-on, the abbreviated characters of our company's logo are moved out of the main display bar from right to left, and the display returns to normal after about 1 second. The auxiliary display column statically displays the inverter model information, such as "4.0040", with the inverter model "T, S" not displayed, and will return to normal display after 1 second. At this time, the operating parameters displayed on the operation panel are determined by the inverter's internal parameters [F0.0.12] and [F0.0.13]. If there is no key operation within 1 minute, the operating panel at any state will return to the normal monitoring mode. (See Chapter 3 for the outline drawing of the operation panel.)

5.1.1 Panel description

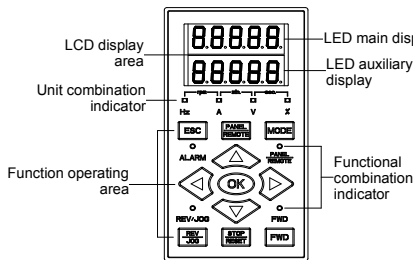


Figure 5-1-A Two-Line LED Small Panel Standard

configuration for DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ and below models

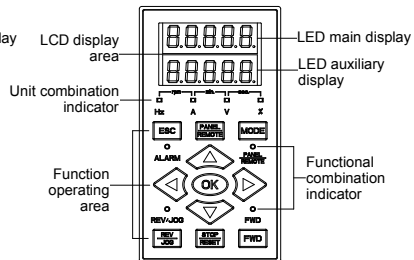













Figure 5-1-B Two-Line LED Standard Operating Panel Standard

Configuration for DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models

Table 5-1 Functions of keys

Item	Functions
Main digital display	Display the current operating status parameters and setting parameters of the frequency inverter.
Auxiliary digital display	Display the current operating status parameters and setting parameters of the frequency inverter
A, Hz, V, %	A, HZ, V displays the corresponding measurement unit of the data of the main digital display. % displays compound unit The compound unit indicator is defined as follows: Hz+A = RPM; V+% = Sec. ; A + V = Min
FWD, REV	Indicator for operating status , its flicker shows the frequency inverter is in F/R operation and has voltage output.
PANEL/REMOTE	The indicator is off: the external terminal command is valid; the indicator is on: the operation panel command is valid. The indicator is flashing: the communication interface (or expanded communication board or expanded function board) command is valid.

Item	Functions
ALARM	Alarm indicator: The indicator is on: the frequency inverter is in warning status. It shall check up and eliminate abnormalities; otherwise, the frequency inverter may be faulty and shut down.
	Forward operation command key Press this key to send forward operation command when the operation command channel of the frequency inverter is set as operation panel control ([F0.3.33] or [F0.3.34]=0)
	Reverse/inching operation command key Press this key to send reverse operation command when the reverse function ([FF.4.42=## # 0]) is selected and the operation command channel of the frequency inverter is set as operation panel control ([F0.3.33] or [F0.3.34]=0); and press this key to send inching operation command when inching function ([FF.4.42=## # 1]) is selected.
	Stop/reset key When this key is pressed in operating status, the frequency inverter will shut down as per set mode; and when pressing this key in fault conditions, the frequency inverter will reset and return to normal stopped status.  Keys can be locked or functions can be changed by users (refer to Functional Parameter F0.011).
	Return key At any status, it will return to the status of last level till normal monitoring mode by pressing this key.
	Mode key Switch display function parameter set and monitoring parameter set in parameter modification status. The corresponding "EROM stored value", "value at this time of energizing" and "panel backup value" of the current function code will be displayed at auxiliary display column in turn by pressing this key.
	Left shift key The modified data bit can be selected from right to left by pressing this key and the modified bit has flicker display.
	Right shift key The modified data bit can be selected from left to right by pressing this key and the modified bit has flicker display.
	Data modification key Used to modify function code or parameter. If digital setting mode is set currently, the digital setting value can be modified directly by using this key in normal monitoring mode.
	Local, terminal and communication control function switch key The keyboard control, external terminal control and communication control functions can be switched with each other through setting [F0.0.11]=##1## (the switch status is not stored and lost after power down).
	Ok key Confirm the current status and parameters (the parameters are stored in the internal memory) and enter into next-level function menu.


5.2 Basic functions and operating methods of panel

5.2.1 Basic functions of panel

The operation panel also has the following special functions aside from such basic functions as forward operation, reverse operation, inching operation, shut down, fault reset, parameter modification and inquiry and operating status parameter monitoring, etc.

□ Parameter copy and read/backup (parameter upload)


This operation panel allows for copying the internal parameters of the frequency inverter to the operation panel (only the internal parameters opened to users) and storing permanently. Therefore, users can backup their typical setting parameters to the operation panel for emergency. The backup parameters in the operation panel do not influence the operation of the frequency inverter and can be checked and modified separately.

When [F0.0.08]=####1, the keyboard will begin to read the internal parameters of the frequency inverter and the operation panel will display the process of reading parameters in real time. After the completion of parameter backup, the display mode will recover to normal monitoring automatically. During parameter backup, the operation can be stopped at any time by pressing  key and the display will switch to normal monitoring mode. If alarm information is occurred, please refer to Chapter 8.


□ Parameter copy/write in (parameter download)

This operation panel allows for copying the backup parameters to the internal memory of the frequency inverter (only the internal parameters opened to users) and users can write in their typical setting parameters backed up in the operation panel into the frequency inverter at one time without separate modification.



When the frequency inverter set F0.0.08 as ## 1 2 or ## 1 3 in stopped mode, the keyboard will begin to copy the backup parameters to frequency inverter and the operation panel will display the process in real time. After the completion of copying, the display mode will recover to normal monitoring automatically.

During parameter copying, the operation can be stopped at any time to abandon the copied parameters by pressing  key and the display mode will switch to normal monitoring mode. If alarm information is occurred, please refer to Chapter 8.

□ Check and modification of internal parameters



In normal monitoring mode, the internal parameters of the frequency inverter can be checked and modified as per general methods by pressing  key.

□ Check and modification of panel backup parameters

In normal monitoring mode, the backup parameters in the operation panel can be checked and modified by pressing  and  key simultaneously (double key compound use) and the high-order code "F" will display flickeringly when function code is displayed. The modification methods of backup parameters are the same as that of internal parameters.

□ Locking and unlocking of panel







1) Locking: part of or all the keying functions of the panel can be locked through setting the application parameter F0.0.11. If the parameter is set as panel locking mode, the panel will be locked immediately after the frequency inverter is energized.

2) Unlocking: the panel will be unlocked for 5 minutes temporarily by pressing  and maintaining and pressing  twice in order within 5 seconds and it will automatically recover to locking if there's no keying within 5 minutes.



To unlock the panel thoroughly, the panel locking parameter [F0.0.11] should be modified into "unlocked" status during the temporary unlock of the panel.

□ Key function

 key function is limited by the application parameter F0.0.11. In function enabling and "normal monitoring mode", press  key to switch the operation command channel in order "operation panel → local terminal → communication interface → operation panel".  indicator displays the selected command channel which will be valid by pressing  within 3 seconds. It will abandon the switch and return to original status by pressing  or without pressing  within 3 seconds.



When switching command channel, if the original setting is "operation panel" or "local terminal", the "communication interface" will be defaulted as local MODBUS field bus.

The operation command channel switched by this function is not stored permanently. It will recover to original setting after the frequency inverter is power down and restarted. Relevant application parameters of the frequency inverter should be modified to permanently change the command channel.

5.2.2 Operating methods of panel

1) Query for status parameters (e.g.)

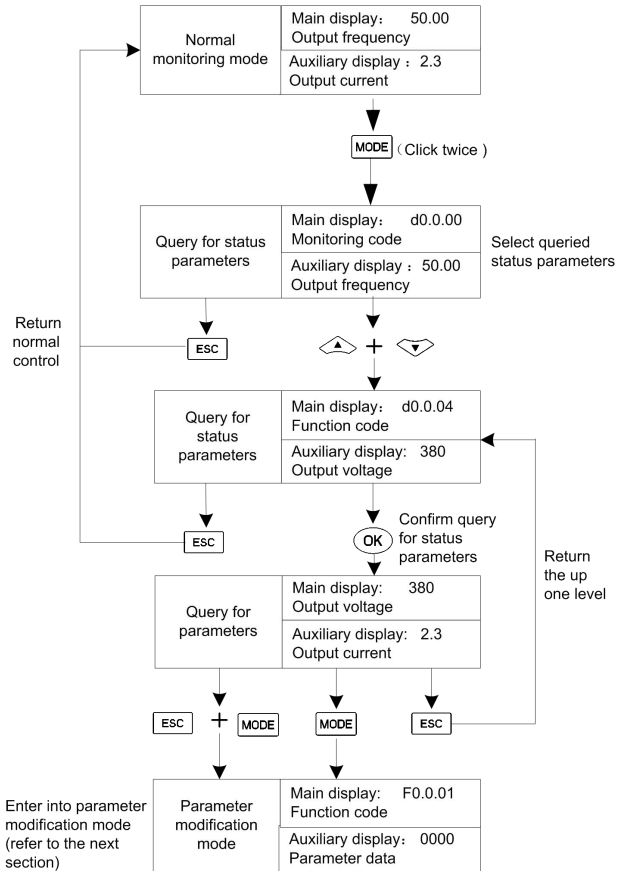


Figure 5-2 Query for status parameters

2) Parameter query and modification (e.g.)

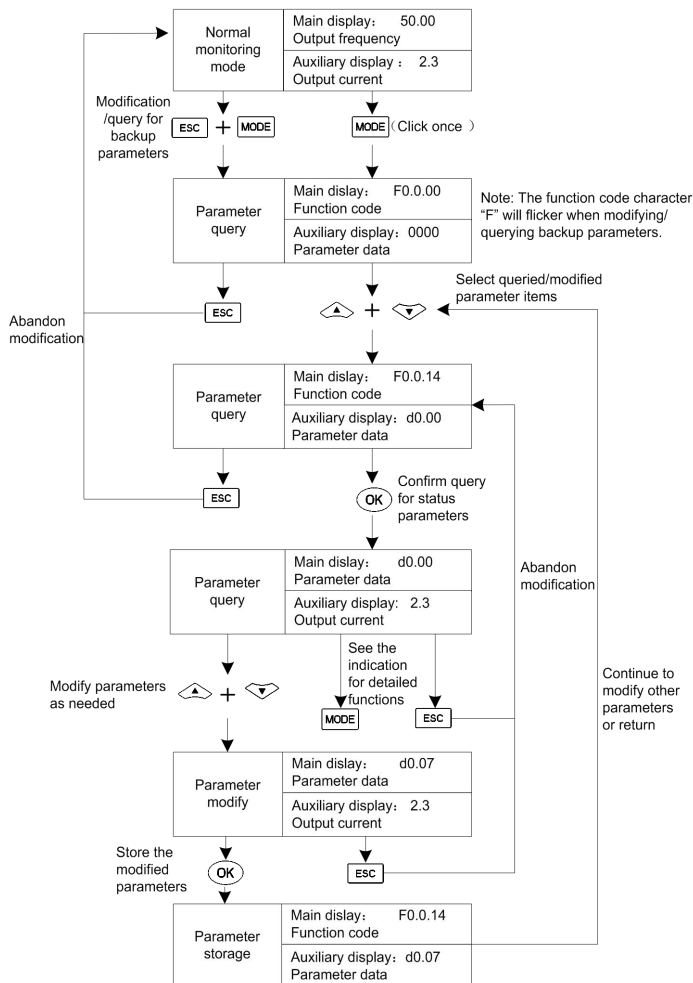


Figure 5-3 Parameter check and modification

Remark: in this status, the auxiliary display column will display the following in turn by pressing **MODE** key repeatedly. Default auxiliary monitoring parameters (original state) → EROM regional numerical value → parameter values at initial energizing → backup parameters in operation panel, the numerical value will flicker when "EROM regional numerical value", "parameter values at initial energizing" and "backup parameters in operation panel" are displayed.

5.3 Simple running of frequency inverter

5.3.1 Operation process

Process	Operations	References
Installation and operating environment	Install frequency inverter at the place which complies with the product technical specification. Mainly consider ambient conditions (temperature, humidity, etc.) and heat dissipation of frequency inverter, etc.	Refer to Chapter 1 and 3
Wiring of frequency inverter	Wiring of main circuit input and output terminal; Wiring of grounding wire; Wiring of switching value control terminal, analog terminal, encoder and communication interface	Refer to Chapter 4
Inspection before energizing	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure the voltage of input power supply is correct and the input power supply loop is connected with breaker; The frequency inverter has been correctly and reliably grounded; 2. The power cord has been correctly connected with R, S, T power input terminal of the frequency inverter; 3. The output terminal of the frequency inverter U, V, W is correctly connected with the motor; 4. The encoder is correctly connected with PG card; 5. The terminal block is correctly connected and all the external switches are correctly preset; 6. The motor is empty-load (the mechanical load is disconnected with motor). 	Refer to Chapter 4
Inspection in energizing	Whether the frequency has abnormal sound, smoking and peculiar smell, etc; And the operation panel displays normally without fault alarm information. If there are abnormalities, please cut off the power supply immediately.	Refer to chapter 3 and 5
Parameter initialization	When the frequency inverter is operated initially, changed internal control panel or controlled motor, it is recommended to conduct the next operation and setting after setting function code F0.0.07 and conducting parameter initialization.	Refer to F0.0.07 parameter function
Correctly input the name plate of the motor	Make sure the name plate parameter of the motor is input correctly and carefully checked by users; Otherwise, serious problems may be occur in operation.	Refer to F2.0.00 ~ F2.0.05 motor 1 and F2.1.26 ~ F2.1.30 motor 2 parameter set
Protection parameter setting for motor and frequency inverter	Correctly set the limit parameter, protection parameter and protection mode of the frequency inverter and the motor, mainly including: the maximum frequency, upper frequency limit, motor overload protection, external fault input, fault relay output and encoder disconnection protection, etc.	Refer to F1.1.39 ~ F1.4.52 parameter set for stable operation, F3.1.12 ~ F3.1.35 parameter set for multifunctional terminal output, F4.3.36~F4.3.50 parameter set for analog input disconnection detection
Automatic learning	The automatic learning for motor parameters should be conducted before selecting vector control mode for the first operation so as to get accurate electric parameters of the controlled motor. If the motor is rotating, please conduct after the motor is completely stopped.	Refer to F2.2.53 parameter set for parameter determination

Process		Operations	References
Set operation control parameters	General parameters	Correctly set direction of rotation, acceleration time, deceleration time, starting frequency, starting mode, acceleration and deceleration mode and stop mode, etc. As per the operating conditions of driving system	Refer to F0.0.17 parameter set, F0.1.20~F0.1.24 parameter set, F0.4.37~F0.4.52 parameter set for starting and stopping, and F1.0.00~F1.0.10 parameter set for acceleration and deceleration characteristics
Set operation control parameters	Vector control	Adjust the parameters of regulator in accordance with load conditions, if necessary, set torque control and limit parameters. For vector control with PG, make sure to correctly set the parameters of encoder.	Refer to F8.0.01 ~ F8.0.15 parameter set for rotating speed setting and feedback
Empty-load commissioning inspection		Empty-load motor; start the frequency inverter with keyboard or control terminals; inspect and confirm the operating conditions of driving system; Motor: stable operation, normal rotation, correct direction, normal acceleration and deceleration process, no abnormal vibration, noise and smell. Frequency inverter: normal display data of operation panel, normal operation of fan, normal sequence of operation of relay, no vibration and noise, etc. If there are abnormalities, please stop and inspect immediately.	Refer to Chapter 3 and 5
Commissioning inspection with load		Connect the load of driving system after normal empty-load commissioning. Start the frequency inverter with keyboard or control terminal and gradually increase load. When the load is increased to 50% and 100%, operate the system for a period of time respectively to inspect whether the operation of the system is normal or not. It shall inspect overall during operation and observe whether there are abnormalities, or it shall stop and inspect immediately.	Refer to Chapter 3 and 5
Basic operation		The frequency inverter can carry out such basic operations as general starting, running, stopping and F/R, etc	Refer to Chapter 3 and 5
Function operation	PLC operation	Frequency conversion operation can be set as single cycle execution or recycle execution. One cycle process includes 15 execution phases whose operating frequency, acceleration and deceleration time, operating time and direction, etc. And can be set separately.	Refer to F6.0.00 ~ F6.0.14 parameter set for multi-frequency setting function, F6.0.15~ F6.0.45 parameter set for simple and programmable multi-section operation function
Function operation	PID operation	Users can set the preset channel and feedback channel for PID process control as well as parameters of PID regulator to realize the control to industrial process.	Refer to F7.0.00 ~ F7.0.26 parameter set for process PID function
	Torque control	Torque control is used under vector control mode and can control the output torque of the motor as per torque command value.	Refer to F8.3.39 ~ F8.3.51 parameter set for torque control function

Process		Operations	References
	Acceleration and deceleration	In order to make acceleration and deceleration process smooth and reduce mechanical impact, users can set S curve acceleration and deceleration function to make the speed of the motor vary smoothly in the initial and end phase of acceleration and deceleration.	Refer to F1.0.00 ~ F1.0.10 function parameter set
	DC braking	Access DC current to rotating motor before starting or in the stopping process to produce braking torque to stop the motor quickly.	Refer to F0.4.44 ~ F0.4.47 parameter set for DC braking function
	Rotating speed tracking	The frequency inverter will automatically track the speed of rotating motor caused by inertia in starting and execute the set starting procedure after smoothly cutting over the current speed of the motor so as to reduce starting impact.	Refer to F0.4.38 parameter functions for starting and stopping mode
	Special terminal control	The switching value has strong control functions and can be used in combination with external control period to constitute various application solutions. Before using the control functions of special terminals, corresponding settings must be conducted in function code	Refer to F3.0.00 ~ F3.0.11 parameter set for multifunctional input terminal function
Inspection during operation		Whether the motor is steadily rotated and the direction of rotation is correct; Whether there's abnormal vibration or noise; Whether the acceleration and deceleration process is stable; whether the output state and panel display of the frequency inverter is correct; Whether the fan is normally operated and there's abnormal vibration or noise; If there are abnormalities, it shall stop and cut off the power supply for inspection immediately.	Refer to Chapter 3 and 5

5.3.2 Initial setting of frequency inverter

1) Selection of control mode

V800 frequency inverter has three control modes: vector control without PG, vector control with PG and V/F control. The operation control mode is selected by the application parameter F0.0.09.

Mode 0: vector control without PG, i.e. vector control without velocity sensor, also called open loop vector control. It is applicable to the place where encoder is not installed, has higher requirement to starting torque and speed control precision and the normal V/F control mode can not satisfied.

Mode 1: vector control with PG, i.e. vector control with velocity sensor, also called closed loop vector control. It is applicable to the place where faster response of torque and higher control precision is required.

Mode 2: V/F control mode. Except normal V/F control application, it can also be applied to the place where the frequency inverter drives more than one motor.



The control modes of frequency inverter vary from the type and control requirements of motor and set by parameter F0.0.09=####. For instance, the field where three-phase asynchronous motor is used can be selected through setting F0.0.09=###0 and the field where the control precision is highly required with velocity sensor can be set F0.0.09=##1# speed closed loop vector control mode.

Mode 3: V/F separate control mode. It is applicable to the separate control of torque motor. Under this control mode, the output voltage and output frequency of the frequency inverter are not related and set by the user itself.

2) Selection of frequency input channel (F0.1.16 and F0.2.25, F0.2.26, F0.2.29, F0.2.32)

V800 frequency inverter has two frequency channels to select parameters with 29 frequency setting modes for each of the channel (refer to parameter F0.2.25, F0.2.26). The two channels can both work independently and set in combination (refer to F0.1.16 parameter). For instance, if F0.1.16 is set as frequency setting channel 1 which is valid separately and F0.2.25 is set as 2 valid panel digital setting (maintaining after stopping and storing after power down), the frequency setting of the frequency inverter will be determined by F0.2.29.

3) Operation command input channel ([F0.1.15], [F0.3.33], [F0.3.34])

V800 frequency inverter has 2 control command channels to select parameters with 3 control command forms for each of the channel (refer to F0.3.33, F0.3.34). The two control commands can be selected through external terminal (refer to input function selection table for multifunctional terminal). For instance, when this parameter is set as [F0.1.15]=0 (control command 1 is valid) and F0.3.33 is set as 0 operation panel command is valid, the start-stop control of the frequency inverter will be completed by  and  key on the operation panel.

5.3.3 Simple operation



It is absolutely forbidden to connect the power cord to the output U, V, W of the frequency inverter.

5.3.3.1 SVC (Non-inductive vector) operation

Take 7.5KW frequency inverter which drives 7.5KW three-phase AC asynchronous motor as the example to indicate the operation process. The name plate parameters of the motor are:

Rated power: 7.5KW;	Rated voltage: 380V;	Rated current: 15.4A;
Rated frequency: 50.00Hz	Rated speed: 1440rpm;	Pulse of encoder: 1000PPR

Use operation panel to conduct digital frequency setting and start-stop control.

1. Connect as per Figure 5-4;
2. Power on after making sure the wiring is correct;
3. Set parameters as follows:

[F0.0.09]=0000 (non-inductive vector control)

[F0.0.00]=0001 (apply macro parameters, set as panel operation digital setting for shortcut)


[F2.0.00]=7.5 (rated power of motor)


[F2.0.01]=380 (rated voltage of motor)

[F2.0.02]=15.4 (rated current of motor)

[F2.0.03]=50.00 (rated frequency of motor)

[F2.0.04]=1440 (rated speed of motor)

4. Press  key to start frequency inverter. If the name plate parameters (F2.0.00 ~ F2.0.04) of the motor are modified in No.3, the primary static parameter identification will be started automatically, the frequency inverter will output 0 frequency and the auxiliary display column will display the current output current (not limited by F0.0.13 at this time). When the display current is stable as 0.0, the automatic learning is finished and operation is started;
5. During operation, press the data modification key to modify the output frequency of the inverter and adjust the motor's rotating speed.

6. Observe the operation of motor, if there are abnormalities, stop it immediately and power off and re-operate it after finding out the causes;
7. Press  key to stop operation and cut off the power supply.

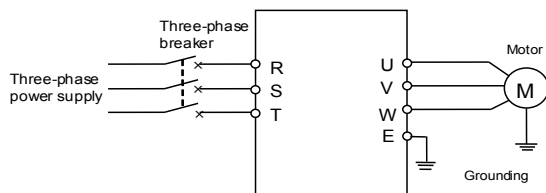


Figure 5-4 Wiring for the operation of SVC mode

5.3.3.2 VC (Inductive vector) operation

The following parameters also need to be set except the above set parameters required by SVC operation. The wiring diagram is as shown in figure 5-5.

[F0.0.09]=0010 (inductive vector control)

[F8.0.04]=0 (speed feedback channel)

[F8.0.05]=1000 (pulse of encoder per revolution)

[F8.0.06] If F/R periodic vibration is occurred in starting, this parameter shall be set as 1 (or exchange the wiring of A, B pulse); other operations are the same as that of SVC operation.

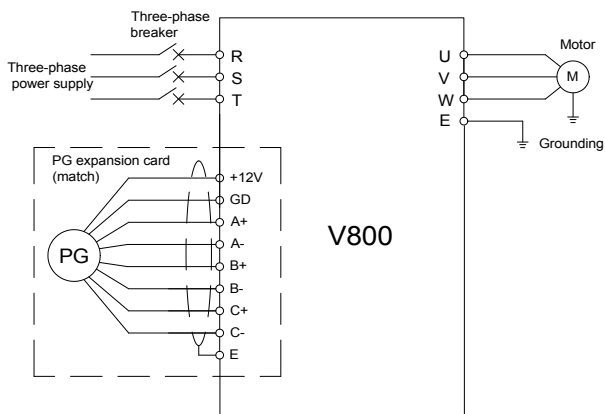


Figure 5-5 Wiring for the operation of VC mode



If the motor is completely empty-load, slight oscillation may occur sometimes in the operation under high carrier frequency. At this time, please reduce the setting value of the carrier frequency. (Parameter [F1.1.13]).

Chapter 6 Function Parameter Table

Explanations:

"×" indicates that the set value of the parameter cannot be changed when the inverter is running.

"☆" indicates the parameter is relevant with the model of the inverter.

"R" indicates the parameter is just for reading and cannot be changed;

"R/I" indicates the parameter is just for reading and cannot be changed, but can be cleared by initialization.;

"—" indicates the parameter is relevant with the type or status of connected accessories.

Variables: (H) - hexadecimal number; only bitwise data change is permitted (carry bit is not allowed), and the upper and lower limit for bitwise change.

6.1 System management parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.0.00	Macro parameter	Units: Application macro (0~F) 0: Void (customized setting) 1: Setting of panel operation digit (factory default) 2: Setting of panel operation shuttle 3: 2 wire control 1(AT1 setting) 4: 2 wire control 2(AT1 setting) 5: 3 wire control 1(AT1 setting) 6: Tool device spindle drive (AT1 setting) Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Configuration macro (reserved) Kilobit: System macro (0~F) 0: Standard operation 1: Variable torque load (e.g. load of fans and pumps) 2: Reserved	1	0000	×
F0.0.01	Parameter display and modification (H)	Units: Parameter display mode 0: Display all parameters 1: Display effective configuration parameters 2: Display parameters different from factory default 3: Display modified and stored parameters after power-on this time 4: Display modified and un-stored parameters after power-on this time Tens: Parameter modification mode 0: Effective and permanently stored after modification 1: Effective after modification but not stored, and getting lost after power-off Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Parameter batch recovery and batch storage 2: Abandon modifying all un-saved parameters (restoring to original value) 5: Batch storing all modified and un-saved parameters 9: Resume all parameters to initial values at the last power-on	1	0001	
F0.0.02	Modification key for system macro and configuration macro parameters	0~65535(1580)	1	0	×
F0.0.03	Reserve				
F0.0.04	LCD display setting(H)	Units: Contrast 0~7 Tens: Normal display mode 0: Steady mode 1: Single parameter display 2: Dual parameter display 3: Three parameter display	1	0023	-

44 Function Parameter Table

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.0.05	Parameter locking(H)	Units: Parameter modification permission 0: All parameters are permitted to be modified 1: Except for this parameter, frequency digital setting, PID digital setting, revolution digital setting, torque digital setting, locking password parameter (F0.0.06), other parameters are forbidden to be modified. 2: All parameters are forbidden to be modified except for this parameter and the locking password. Tens: Coded lock 0: Void 1: Effective – once the password is set, this parameter cannot be modified unless correct password is entered.	1	0000	
F0.0.06	Parameter locking password	0~65535	1	0	
F0.0.07	Parameter initialization	0: No action 1: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>F9 2: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>FA 3: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>FB 4: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>FC 5: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>FD 6: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>FE 7: Factory Reset parameter groups F0>FF 8: Clear away fault records	1	0	×
F0.0.08	Parameter copying(H)	Units: Upload and download 0: No action 1: Parameter upload 2: Parameter download 3: Parameter download(except for motor parameter/F2 Group) Tens: Local download permitted 0: Parameter download forbidden 1: Parameter download permitted	1	0000	×
F0.0.09	Motor type and control mode selection (H)	LED Units: Motor 1 type selection 0: Induction asynchronous motor 1: Spindle asynchronous servo motor LED Tens: Motor 1 control mode 0: SVC mode/open-loop vector control 1: VC mode/closed-loop vector control 2: V/F control 3: V/F separate control LED Hundreds: Motor 2 selection type 0: Induction asynchronous motor 1: Spindle asynchronous servo motor 2:PMSM LED Kilobit: Motor 2 control mode 0: SVC mode/open-loop vector control 1: VC mode/closed-loop vector control 2: V/F control 3: V/F separate control	1	0000	×

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.0.10	Motor selection	0: Motor 1 1: Motor 2 2: Selection of multifunctional input terminal (Function No.41)	1	0	×
F0.0.11	Selection of panel key functions (H)	Units: Keypad locking 0: No locking 1: All keys are locked except for UP/DW (Shuttle), Stop and RUN. 2: All keys are locked except for STOP and RUN 3: All keys are locked except for STOP 4: Lock all keys Tens: STOP button function 0: Non-panel control mode void 1: Press STOP key in any control mode to stop the device slowly 2: Press STOP key in any control mode to stop the device freely Hundreds: PANEL/REMOTE button function 0: Void 1: Stop effective 2: Continuously effective Kilobit: Reserved	1	0000	×
F0.0.12	Principal monitoring parameter (H)	d0.0~d0.55 / d1.0~d1.55	1	d0.00	
F0.0.13	Auxiliary monitoring parameter 1 (H)	d0.0~d0.55 / d1.0~d1.55	1	d0.02	
F0.0.14	Auxiliary monitoring parameter 2 (H)	d0.0~d0.55 / d1.0~d1.55	1	d0.04	

6.2 Selection of running commands

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.1.15	Selection of running command source	0: Control command 1 effective 1: Control command 2 effective 2: Selection of multifunctional input terminal (Function No. 11)	1	0	
F0.1.16	Selection of frequency set value (when one source of combination set is bipolar set, the final direction of the combination results shall be the direction of setting source1	0: Frequency setting source 1 is independently effective 1: Frequency setting source 2 is independently effective 2: Selection of multifunctional input terminal (Function No.12) 3: Bound with the start-stop command channel 4: Channel 1 + Channel 2 5: Channel 1 amplified by Channel 2 6: Channel 1 - Channel 2 7: Channel 1 reduced by Channel 2 8: Channel 1 reduced by Channel 2 9: Highest value Channel 1 OR Channel 2 10: Lowest value Channel 1 OR Channel 2 11: $\sqrt{(\text{Channel 1}) + (\text{Channel 2})}$ 12: $\sqrt{(\text{Channel 1} + \text{Channel 2})}$ 13: $(\text{Channel 1} \times \text{Scaling1}) + (\text{Channel 2} \times$	1	0	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
		Scaling 2) 14: (Channel1 x Scaling1) + (Channel 2 x Scaling 2)			
F0.1.17	Running direction(H)	Units: Direction switch 0: Void 1: Negate Tens: Direction locking 0: Void (determined by the direction command) 1: FWD locking 2: REV locking	1	0000	
F0.1.18	Action coefficient of frequency setting channel1	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
F0.1.19	Action coefficient of frequency setting channel2	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
F0.1.20	Maximum output frequency	10.00~300.00Hz/100.0~400.0Hz	0.01	60.00	
F0.1.21	Upper limiting frequency	[F0.1.22]~Min. (300.00Hz,[F0.1.20])	0.01	50.00	
F0.1.22	Lower limiting frequency	0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	
F0.1.23	FWD jog frequency	0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	0.01	10.00	
F0.1.24	REV jog frequency	0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	0.01	10.00	

6.3 Frequency setting

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.2.25	Frequency setting channel 1	0: Panel digital setting (maintained after stop) 1: Panel digital setting (zero clearing after stop)		2	
F0.2.26	Frequency setting channel 2	2: Panel digital setting (maintained after stop and saved after power-off) 3: Setting of panel shuttle potentiometer 4: Remote UP/DW 1 (keep value at power off) 5: Remote UP/DW 2 (go to zero when stopped) 6: Remote UP/DW 3 (keep value at power off) 7: Remote UP/DW Bipolar Setting 1 (keep bipolar when stopped) 8: Remote UP/DW Bipolar Setting 2 (keep at power off) 9: Analog input AI1 10: Analog input AI2 11: Analog input AI3 12: Given by the analog input AI1 bipolarity 13: Given by the analog input AI3 bipolarity 14: Pulse input Fin 15: Given by the pulse input bipolarity 16: MODBUS fieldbus set value 1(relative set value) 17: MODBUS fieldbus set value 2(absolute set value) 18: AI1+AI2 19: AI2+AI3 20: AI2+pulse input Fin	1	0	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
		21: AI1*AI2/rail-to-rail input (10V) 22: AI1/AI2 23: Process PID output 24: Compensation PID output 25: Disturbance running frequency 26: Automatic multi-sage running frequency 27: Terminal selection multi-stage frequency 28: Virtual analog input SAI1 29: Virtual mode input SAI2 In the case of V/F separate control, F0.2.25 changes to frequency giving channel, and F0.2.26 changes to voltage giving channel.			
F0.2.27	Minimum value of frequency setting source 1	0.0~[F0.2.28]	0.01	0.0	
F0.2.28	Maximum value of frequency setting source 1	[F0.2.27]~[F0.1.20]	0.01	50.0	
F0.2.29	Panel digital set value of frequency setting source 1	0.0~[F0.1.28]	0.01	0.0	
F0.2.30	Minimum value of frequency setting source 2	0.0~[F0.2.31]	0.01	0.0	
F0.2.31	Maximum value of frequency setting source 2	[F0.2.30]~[F0.2.20]	0.01	50.0	
F0.2.32	Panel digital set value of frequency setting source 2	0.0~[F0.2.31]	0.01	0.0	

6.4 Control command source

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.3.33	Control command 1	0: Operating panel	1	0	
F0.3.34	Control command 2	1: External control terminal 2: MODBUS fieldbus /standard expansion card configuration 3:extension communication moudle	1	0	
F0.3.35	External control terminal action mode (H)	Units: Control command 0: 2 wire mode 1 1: 2 wire mode 2 2: 3 wire mode 1 3: 3 wire mode 2 Tens: Command power-on first starting 0: Running signal level starting 1: Running signal rising edge starting (2 wire mode 1 and 2) Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Reserved	1	0000	×
F0.3.36	Reserve				

6.5 Start and stop

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.4.37	Start/Running permission(H)	LED Units: Start permission 0: Function closed 1: Permitted when the multifunctional terminal is effective (Function No. 42) 2: Command word from standard fieldbus (standard expansion card) LED Tens: Reserved LED Hundreds: Running permission 0: Function closed 1: Permitted when the multifunctional terminal is effective (Function No. 43) 2: Command word from standard fieldbus (standard expansion card) LED Kilobit: The action mode when the running permission signal is void 0: Free stop 1: Deceleration stop	1	0000	×
F0.4.38	Start/Stop Mode(H)	Units: Start mode 0: Normal start 1: Revolution tracking start Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Stop mode 0: Deceleration stop 1: Free stop	1	0000	×
F0.4.39	Start frequency	0.0~50.00Hz	0.01	0.50	
F0.4.40	Start frequency holding time	0.00~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F0.4.41	Start pre-excitation current	0.0~100.0(%)	0.1	35.0	
F0.4.42	Start pre-excitation time	0.00~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.10	
F0.4.43	Start delay	0.00~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F0.4.44	DC band-type brake control	Units: DC band-type brake function 0: Closed 1: Open Tens: Reserved	1	0	
F0.4.45	DC band type brake/brake initial frequency / speed	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	2.00	
F0.4.46	DC brake action time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F0.4.47	DC band-type brake/brake injection current	0.0~100.0(%)	0.1	50.0	
F0.4.48	Restart after power-off	0: Forbidden 1: Effective	1	0	
F0.4.49	Standby time for restart after power-off/free stop	0.1~10.0Sec.	0.1	0.5	
F0.4.50	FWD and REV transition dead time	0.00~5.00Sec.	0.01	0.00	
F0.4.51	FWD and REV switch mode	0: Switch at zero point 1: Start frequency switch	1	0	
F0.4.52	Zero speed (frequency) detection level	0.00~100.00Hz	0.01	0.10 Hz	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F0.4.53	Zero speed delay time	0.00~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.05	
F0.4.54	Emergency stop mode (EMS)	0: The inverter will stop in deceleration mode according to the emergency stop and deceleration time. 1: The inverter will immediately lock output and the motor will stop in free sliding mode.	1	0	

6.6 Acceleration and deceleration characteristics parameters

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F1.0.00	Acceleration and deceleration characteristics parameters	Units: Accel decele mode 0: Liner acceleration and deceleration 1: S curve acceleration and deceleration Tens: Unit of acceleration and deceleration time 0: Sec. (Second) 1: Min. (Minute)	1	0000	×
F1.0.01	% of S curve at the bottom	5.0~100.0-[F1.0.02]	0.1	15.0	
F1.0.02	% of S curve at mid section	20.0~100.0-[F1.0.01]	0.1	70.0	
F1.0.03	Acceleration time1	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.04	Deceleration time1	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.05	Acceleration time2	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.06	Deceleration time2	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.07	Acceleration time3	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.08	Deceleration time3	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.09	Acceleration 4/jog acceleration time	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.10	Deceleration 4/jog deceleration time	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.11	EMS emergency stop and deceleration time	0.01~ 600.00 (Sec./Min.)	0.01	☆	
F1.0.12	Reserve				

6.7 Carrier frequency

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F1.1.13	Carrier frequency	Three-phase voltage vector composition (FF.4.43=##0#) mode: 1.5~12.0KHz Two-phase voltage vector composition (FF.4.43=##1#) mode: 1.5~15.0KHz		☆	
F1.1.14	Carrier characteristics	Units: Load linkage adjustment 0: Void 1: Effective Tens: Temperature linkage adjustment 0: Void 1: Effective Hundreds: Reference frequency linkage adjustment 0: Void 1: Effective Kilobit: Modulation mode 0: Asynchronous modulation 1: Synchronous modulation 2~5: Sound smooth	1	0111	

6.8 V/F parameters and overload protection (Motor 1)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F1.2.15	Reference frequency of motor 1	5.00~300.00Hz/ 50.0~400.0Hz	0.01	50.00	×
F1.2.16	Reference voltage of motor1	50~500V	1	380/220	
F1.2.17	V/F curve selection for motor 1	0: Customized curve 1: 1.2 times squares curve 2: 1.5 times squares curve 3: Second square curve	1	0	×
F1.2.18	Torque increasing voltage for motor1	0.0~20.0%	0.1	☆	
F1.2.19	Frequency point 1 of motor 1 V/F curve	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F1.2.20	Voltage point 1 of Motor 1 V/F curve	0~500V	0.1	0.0	
F1.2.21	Frequency point2 of motor 1 V/F curve	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F1.2.22	Voltage point 2 of Motor 1 V/F curve	0~500V	0.1	0.0	
F1.2.23	Frequency point3 of motor 1 V/F curve	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F1.2.24	Voltage point 3 of Motor 1 V/F curve	0~500V	0.1	0.0	
F1.2.25	Slip frequency compensation for motor 1	0~150(%)	1	0	

6.9 V/F parameters and overload protection (Motor 2)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F1.3.27	Reference frequency of motor 2	5.00~300.00Hz/ 50.0~400.0Hz	0.01	50.00	×
F1.3.28	Reference voltage of motor 2	50~500V	1	380/220	
F1.3.29	V/F curve selection for motor 2	0: Customized curve 1: 1.2 times squares curve 2: 1.5 times squares curve 3: Second square curve	1	0	×
F1.3.30	Torque increasing voltage for motor2	0.0~20.0%	0.1	☆	
F1.3.31	Frequency point 1 of motor 2 V/F curve	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F1.3.32	Voltage point 1 of Motor 2 V/F curve	0~500V	0.1	0.0	
F1.3.33	Frequency point 2 of motor 2 V/F curve	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F1.3.34	Voltage point 2 of Motor 2 V/F curve	0~500	0.1	0.0	
F1.3.35	Frequency point 3 of motor 2 V/F curve	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F1.3.36	Voltage point 3 of Motor 2 V/F curve	0~500V	0.1	0.0	
F1.3.37	Slip frequency compensation for motor 2	0~150(%)	1	0	

6.10 Steady running

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F1.4.39	Acceleration/deceleration current limiting level	120~180(%)	1	160	
F1.4.40	Strong start current limiting level	120~200(%)	1	160	
F1.4.41	Strong start current holding time	0.0~5.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F1.4.42	Function selection for adjustors	Units: Overvoltage suppression adjustor 0: Closed 1: Effective (Frequency increasing suppression) 2: Terminal inputs Tens: Under voltage suppression adjustor 0: Closed 1: Effective Hundreds: Frequency modulation and current limiting adjustor 0: Closed 1: Effective Kilobit : Failure Auto Recovery Mode 0: Speed tracking start 1: Normal Start	1	0111	
F1.4.43	Action level of the overvoltage adjustor	660~800V	1	740	
F1.4.44	Overvoltage adjusting gain	0.10~10.00	0.01	1.00	
F1.4.45	Action level of the under voltage adjustor	[FF.2.35]~480V	1	400V	
F1.4.46	Under voltage adjusting gain	0.10~10.00	0.01	1.00	
F1.4.47	Action level of the frequency decreasing and current limiting adjustor	20~200(%)	1	190	
F1.4.48	Adjusting gain of the frequency decreasing and current limiting adjustor	0.10~10.00	0.01	1.00	
F1.4.49	Recovery times of fault self resetting	0~5 (the self-recovery function is deactivated when it is set to 0)	1	0	
F1.4.50	The recovery waiting time of fault self resetting	0.2~100.0Sec.	0.1	1.0	
F1.4.51	Time period for self resetting timing	900~36000Sec.	1	3600	
F1.4.52	Selection of self resetting fault	Units: Over current 0: Self resetting forbidden 1: Self resetting permitted Units: Overvoltage 0: Self resetting forbidden 1: Self resetting permitted Units: Output grounding 0: Self resetting forbidden 1: Self resetting permitted Kilobit: Running under voltage 0: Self resetting forbidden 1: Self resetting permitted	1	0000	
F1.4.53	Display coefficient	0.001~60.000	0.001	1.000	

6.11 Vector running parameters (Motor 1)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F2.0.00	Rated power	0.1~400.0KW	0.1KW	☆	×
F2.0.01	Rated voltage	30~480V	1V	380/220	×
F2.0.02	Rated current	0.01~650.00A	0.01A	☆	×
F2.0.03	Rated frequency	max{5.00,[F2.0.04]/60}~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	50.00	×
F2.0.04	Rated revolution	10~min.{30000,60*[F2.0.03]}rpm	1rpm	☆	×
F2.0.05	Idling current	0.15*[F2.0.02]~0.8*[F2.0.02]	0.01A	☆	×
F2.0.06	Stator resistance	0.01~65000mΩ	☆	☆	×
F2.0.07	Stator inductance	0.001~6500.0mH	☆	☆	×
F2.0.08	Total leakage inductance	0.001~6500.0mH	☆	☆	×
F2.0.09	Rotator time constant	5.0~6500.0ms	0.1ms	☆	×
F2.0.10	Slip compensation coefficient	0.25~2.00	0.01	1.00	
F2.0.11 ~ F2.0.23	Retention parameter				×
F2.0.24	Z pulse initial angle	0.0~359.9	0.1	0.0	×
F2.0.25	Motor overload protection coefficient	50.0~131.0(%) (131—closed)	0.1	110.0	
F2.0.11	Rated torque of PMSM	0.1~6553.5NM	0.1NM	☆	×
F2.0.12	Rated voltage of PMSM	30~480V	1V	380/220	×
F2.0.13	Rated current of PMSM	0.1~650.0A	0.1A	☆	×
F2.0.14	Rated frequency of PMSM	5.00~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	50.00	×
F2.0.15	Rated revolution of PMSM	10~30000rpm	1	1500	×
F2.0.16	Back EMF coefficient of PMSM	1.0~2000.0V/1000rpm	0.1	207.0	×
F2.0.17	Torque coefficient of PMSM	0.10~500.00 Nm/A	0.01	3.00	×
F2.0.18	Identification current of PMSM	1.0~80.0%	0.1	25.0	×
F2.0.19	Stator resistance of PMSM	0.01~65000mΩ		☆	×
F2.0.20	Vertical axis inductance of PMSM	0.001~6500.0mH		☆	×
F2.0.21	Quadrature axis inductance of PMSM	0.001~6500.0mH		☆	×
F2.0.22	Initial angle of PMSM	0~65535	1	0	×
F2.0.23	Z pulse original angle	0.0~359.9	0.1	0.0	×
F2.0.24	reserved	reserved	-	-	×
F2.0.25	Overload protection setting	50.0~131.0(%) (131—closed)	0.1	110.0	

6.12 Vector running parameters (Motor 2)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F2.1.26	Rated power	0.1~1000.0KW	0.1 KW	☆	×
F2.1.27	Rated voltage	30~480V	1V	380/220	×
F2.1.28	Rated current	0.01~650.00A	0.01A	☆	×
F2.1.29	Rated frequency	max(5.00,[F2.1.30]/60)~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	50.00	×
F2.1.30	Rated revolution	10~min.{30000,60*[F2.1.29]}rpm	1rpm	☆	×
F2.1.31	Idling current	0.15*[F2.1.28]~0.8*[F2.1.28]	0.01A	☆	×
F2.1.32	Stator resistance	0.01~65000mΩ	☆	☆	×
F2.1.33	Stator inductance	0.001~6500.0mH	☆	☆	×
F2.1.34	Total leakage inductance	0.001~6500.0mH	☆	☆	×
F2.1.35	Rotator time constant	5.0~6500.0ms	0.1ms	☆	×
F2.1.36	Slip compensation coefficient	0.25~2.00	0.01	1.00	
F2.1.37~F2.1.49	Retention parameter				×
F2.1.50	Z pulse initial angle	0.0~359.9	0.1	0.0	×
F2.1.51	Motor overload protection coefficient	50.0~131.0(%) (131—closed)	0.1	110.0	
F2.1.37	Rated torque of PMSM	0.1~6553.5NM	0.1NM	☆	×
F2.1.38	Rated voltage of PMSM	30~480V	1V	380/220	×
F2.1.39	Rated current of PMSM	0.1~650.0A	0.1A	☆	×
F2.1.40	Rated frequency of PMSM	5.00~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	50.00	×
F2.1.41	Rated revolution of PMSM	10~30000rpm	1	1500	×
F2.1.42	Back EMF coefficient of PMSM	1.0~2000.0V/1000rpm	0.1	207.0	×
F2.1.43	Torque coefficient of PMSM	0.10~500.00 Nm/A	0.01	3.00	×
F2.1.44	Identification current of PMSM	1.0~80.0%	0.1	25.0	×
F2.1.45	Stator resistance of PMSM	0.01~65000mΩ		☆	×
F2.1.46	Vertical axis inductance of PMSM	0.001~6500.0mH		☆	×
F2.1.47	Quadrature axis inductance of PMSM	0.001~6500.0mH		☆	×
F2.1.48	Initial angle of PMSM	0~65535	1	0	×
F2.1.49	Z pulse original angle	0.0~359.9	0.1	0.0	×
F2.1.50	reserved	reserved	-	-	×



- The stator resistance, stator inductance and the Minimum Unit of total leakage inductance of asynchronous motors is relevant with different models.

6.13 Parameter measurement and pre-excitation

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F2.2.52	Start excitation time in vector mode	0.02~2.50Sec.	0.01	☆	
F2.2.53	Motor parameter measurement	0: Closed 1: Static identification 2: Static + operating parameter identification 3: Static + operating parameter identification + revolution ratio identification	1	0	×

6.14 Multifunctional input terminal

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F3.0.00	Multifunctional input terminal DI1	0~96	1	0	×
F3.0.01	Multifunctional input terminal DI2	0~96	1	0	×
F3.0.02	Multifunctional input terminal DI3	0~96	1	7	×
F3.0.03	Multifunctional input terminal DI4	0~96	1	8	×
F3.0.04	Multifunctional input terminal DI5	0~96	1	13	×
F3.0.05	Multifunctional input terminal DI6	0~96	1	0	×
F3.0.06	Multifunctional input terminal DI7/ standard expansion card	0~96	1	0	×
F3.0.07	Multifunctional input terminal DI8 / standard expansion card	0~96	1	0	×
F3.0.08	Multifunctional input terminal DI9/Fin/ standard expansion card	0~98	1	97	×
F3.0.09	Multifunctional terminal filtering time (DI1~DI5)	1~50ms	1	5ms	
F3.0.10	Multifunctional terminal filtering time (DI6~DI9) /standard expansion card	1~50ms	1	5ms	
F3.0.11	Input terminal effective level (H)	Units: DI1~DI4 terminal 0~F: 4-bit binary, bit=0 power-on effective, 1 disconnection effective Tens: DI5~DI8 terminal The same as above Hundreds: DI9 terminal The same as above Kilobit: Reserved	1	0000	×

6.15 Multifunctional output terminal

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F3.1.12	Multifunctional output terminal DO1	0~71	1	1	
F3.1.13	Multifunctional output terminal DO2	0~71	1	2	
F3.1.14	Multifunctional output terminal DO3/ Fout/standard expansion card	0~71	1	63	
F3.1.15	DO1 terminal effective signal output delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.16	DO1 terminal void signal output delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.17	DO2 terminal effective signal output delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.18	DO2 terminal void signal output delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.19	DO3 terminal effective signal output delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.20	DO3 terminal void signal output delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.21	Multifunctional relay output (RO1A/B/C)	0~71	1	4	
F3.1.22	Multifunctional relay output (RO2A/B/C)/standard expansion card	0~71	1	5	
F3.1.23	RO1 power-on delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.24	RO1 disconnection delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.25	RO2 power-on delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.26	RO2 disconnection delay time	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.0	
F3.1.27	Input variable of monitor 1	0~44 (reverting to the monitor variable comparison table)	1	0	
F3.1.28	Input variables of monitor 2	0~44 (referring to the monitor variable comparison table)	1	1	
F3.1.29	Input variables of monitor 3	0~44 (referring to the monitor variable comparison table)	1	2	
F3.1.30	Lower limiting value of monitor 1 variables (relative to full scale value)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F3.1.31	Upper limiting value of monitor 1 variables (relative to full scale value)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F3.1.32	Lower limiting value of monitor 2 variables (relative to full scale value)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F3.1.33	Upper limiting value of monitor 2 variables (relative to full scale value)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F3.1.34	Lower limiting value of monitor 3 variables (relative to full scale value)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F3.1.35	Upper limiting value of monitor 3 variables (relative to full scale value)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	

6.16 Pulse input (Configured with standard expansion I/O board, and this group of parameters are effective when D19 selects the frequency input function)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F3.2.36	Minimum pulse input frequency DI9/Fin	0.0~100.00KHz	0.01	0.0	
F3.2.37	Maximum pulse input frequency DI9/Fin	0.01~100.00KHz	0.01	10.0	
F3.2.38	Pulse detection cycle	1ms~20ms	1	10ms	
F3.2.39	Number of single-loop pulse	1~4096	1	1024	
F3.2.40	Mechanical transmission ratio(=pulse shaft revolution: motor shaft revolution)	0.010 ~ 10.000	0.001	1.000	
F3.2.41	Driving wheel diameter (for liner speed calculation)	0.1~2000.0mm	0.1	100.0	
F3.2.42	Maximum accumulative length value	10m~50000m	1m	50000	
F3.2.43	Maximum liner speed	0.01~500.00m/Sec.	0.01	10.00	
F3.2.44	Current accumulative length value	0~50000m	1m	—	R
F3.2.45	Current liner speed	0.0~500.00m/Sec.	0.01	—	R

6.17 Pulse output(Equipped with standard expansion I/O board, and this group of parameters are effective when DO3 terminal selects the frequency output function)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F3.3.46	Type of output pulse signal DO3/Fout	0: Frequency signal (0.25~100.00KHz) 1: Frequency signal 2: Pulse width modulation (PWM) signal (reference frequency 0.25~100.00KHz)	1	0	
F3.3.47	Minimum output frequency DO3/Fout	0.25~100.00KHz	0.01	0.25	
F3.3.48	Maximum output frequency DO3/Fout	0.25~100.00KHz (PWM signal reference frequency)	0.01	10.0	
F3.3.49	Pulse output mapping variable	0~45(Monitor Variable Comparison Table)	1	0	
F3.3.50	DO3/Fout assignment lower limit	0.0~[F3.3.51]	0.1	0.0	
F3.3.51	DO3/Fout assignment upper limit	[F3.3.50]~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	

6.18 Analog input

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F4.0.00	AI1 min. value (0~10V)	0.00~[F4.0.01]	0.01	0.0	
F4.0.01	AI1 max. value (0~10V)	[F4.0.00]~10.00V	0.01	10.00	
F4.0.02	AI2 min. value (4~20mA)	0.00~[F4.0.03]	0.01	4.00	
F4.0.03	AI2 max. value (4~20mA)	[F4.0.02]~20.00mA	0.01	20.00	
F4.0.04	AI3 min. value (-10V~10V)/ standard expansion card	-10.00~[F4.0.05]	0.01	0.00	
F4.0.05	AI3 max. value (-10V~10V)/ standard expansion card	[F4.0.04]~10.00V	0.01	10.00	
F4.0.06	AI1 filtering time coefficient	1~1000ms	1	10ms	
F4.0.07	AI2 filtering time coefficient	1~1000ms	1	10ms	
F4.0.08	AI3 filtering time coefficient/ standard expansion card	1~1000ms	1	10ms	

6.19 Analog input curve correction

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F4.1.09	AI1 curve correction point 1	[F4.0.00]~[F4.0.01]	0.01	0.0	
F4.1.10	AI1 curve correction value1	[F4.0.00]~[F4.0.01]	0.01	0.0	
F4.1.11	AI1 curve correction point 2	[F4.0.00]~[F4.0.01]	0.01	10.00	
F4.1.12	AI1 curve correction value 2	[F4.0.00]~[F4.0.01]	0.01	10.00	
F4.1.13	AI2 curve correction point 1	[F4.0.02]~[F4.0.03]	0.01	4.00	
F4.1.14	AI2 curve correction value 1	[F4.0.02]~[F4.0.03]	0.01	4.00	
F4.1.15	AI2 curve correction point 2	[F4.0.02]~[F4.0.03]	0.01	20.00	
F4.1.16	AI2 curve correction value 2	[F4.0.02]~[F4.0.03]	0.01	20.00	
F4.1.17	AI3 zero hysteresis/ standard expansion card	0.0~2.00	0.01	0.10	
F4.1.18	AI3 curve correction point 1/ standard expansion card	[F4.0.04]~[F4.0.05]	0.01	0.0	
F4.1.19	AI3 curve correction value 1/ standard expansion card	[F4.0.04]~[F4.0.05]	0.01	0.0	
F4.1.20	AI3 curve correction point 2/ standard expansion card	[F4.0.04]~[F4.0.05]	0.01	10.00	
F4.1.21	AI3 curve correction value 2/ standard expansion card	[F4.0.04]~[F4.0.05]	0.01	10.00	

6.20 Analog output

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F4.2.22	AO1 mapping variable(subjecting to F5.4.44 exceeding function)	0~45(monitor variable comparison table)	1	0	
F4.2.23	AO2 mapping variable/standard expansion card	0~45 (monitor variable comparison table)	1	2	
F4.2.24	AO1 mini value	0.00~10.00V	0.01	0.0	
F4.2.25	AO1 max value	0.00~10.00V	0.01	10.00	
F4.2.26	AO1 lower limiting value	0.0~[F4.2.27]	0.1	0.0	
F4.2.27	AO1 upper limiting value	[F4.2.26]~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F4.2.28	AO1 filtering time coefficient	0.01~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.10	
F4.2.29	AO1 fixed output value (at the time of fixed output value)	0.0~20.00mA (0.0~10.00V)	0.01	0.0	
F4.2.30	AO2 min value	0.00~10.00V	0.01	0.0	
F4.2.31	AO2 max value	0.00~10.00V	0.01	10.00	
F4.2.32	AO2 lower limiting value	0.0~[F4.2.33]	0.1	0.0	
F4.2.33	AO2 upper limiting value	[F4.2.32]~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F4.2.34	AO2 filtering time coefficient	0.01~10.00Sec.	0.01	0.10	
F4.2.35	AO2 fixed output value (at the time of fixed output value)	0.0~20.00mA (0.0~10.00V)	0.01	0.0	

6.21 Analog input power failure detection

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F4.3.36	Analog input power failure detection function	Units: AI1 power failure detection 0: Void 1: Effective Tens: AI2 power failure detection 0: Void 1: Effective Hundreds: AI3 power failure detection 0: Void 1: Effective	1	0000	×
F4.3.37	AI1 power failure detection threshold	0.00~10.00V	0.01	0.25	
F4.3.38	AI1 power failure detection delay time	0.01~50.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F4.3.39	AI1 power failure detection response	0: No action (for non-stop alarm) 1: Forcedly set to the minimum 2: Forcedly set to the maximum 3: Forcedly set to the defaults value (F4.3.40) 4: Inverter forced trip stop	1	0	×
F4.3.40	AI1 power failure default value	0.00~10.00V	0.01	0.0	
F4.3.41	AI2 power failure detection threshold	0.00~20.00mA	0.01	4.00	
F4.3.42	AI2 power failure detection delay time	0.01~50.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F4.3.43	Action selection after AI2 power failure	0: No action(for non-stop alarm) 1: Forcedly set to the minimum 2: Forcedly set to the maximum 3: Forcedly set to the defaults value (F4.3.44) 4: Inverter forced trip stop	1	0	×
F4.3.44	AI2 power failure default value	0.00~20.00mA	0.01	4.00	
F4.3.45	AI3 power failure detection upper threshold	-10.00~10.00V	0.01	0.25	
F4.3.46	AI3 power failure detection lower threshold	-10.00~10.00V	0.01	-0.25	
F4.3.47	AI3 power failure detection delay time	0.01~50.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F4.3.48	AI3 power failure detection response	0: No action(for non-stop alarm) 1: Forcedly set to the minimum 2: Forcedly set to the maximum 3: Forcedly set to the defaults value (F4.3.49) 4: Inverter forced trip stop	1	0	×
F4.3.49	AI3 power failure default value	-10.00~10.00V	0.01	0.0	

6.22 Virtual analog input

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F4.4.50	Virtual analog input SAI1	0: Void (0 value) 1: SAI_COF1*AI1 2: SAI_COF1*AI2 3: SAI_COF1*AI3 4: SAI_COF1*AO1 5: SAI_COF1*AO2 6: SAI_COF1*AI1+SAI_COF2*AI2+SAI_CST 7: SAI_COF1*AI1+SAI_COF2*AI3+SAI_CST 8: SAI_COF1*AO1+SAI_COF2*AO2+SAI_CST 9: SAI_COF1*AI1+SAI_COF2*AO1+SAI_CST 10: SAI_COF1*AI2+SAI_COF2*AO2+SAI_CST 11: SAI_COF1*AI1+SAI_COF2*AO1 12: SAI_COF1*AI3+SAI_COF2*AO2 13: SAI1_COF*AI1/AI2+ SAI_CST 14: SAI2_COF*AI2/AI3+ SAI_CST 15: SAI1_COF*AI1/AI3+ SAI_CST	1	0	×
F4.4.51	Virtual analog input SAI2		1	0	×
F4.4.52	Virtual input combination coefficient 1 (SAI_COF1)	0.01~500.00	0.01	1.00	×
F4.4.53	Virtual input combination coefficient 2 (SAI_COF2)	0.01~500.00	0.01	1.00	×
F4.4.54	Virtual input combination constant (SAI_CST)	-4080~4080	1	0	×

6.23 Hopping frequency

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.0.00	Hopping frequency 1	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F5.0.01	Range of hopping frequency 1	0.0~10.00Hz	0.01	0.0	×
F5.0.02	Hopping frequency 2	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F5.0.03	Range of hopping frequency 2	0.0~10.00Hz	0.01	0.0	×
F5.0.04	Hopping frequency 3	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	×
F5.0.05	Range of hopping frequency 3	0.0~10.00Hz	0.01	0.0	×

6.24 Built-in auxiliary timer

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.1.06	Timer 1 (UT1) operating mode (H)	Units: Clock selection 0: 1ms 1: 1Sec. 2: 1min. 3: Timer 1 cycle reaching pulse (effective for UT2, UT3) 4: Timer 2 cycle reach pulse (only effective for UT3) Tens: Start and stop 0: Multifunctional terminal triggering start (Edge triggering/ Function No. 52~54) 1: Stop→Run status change triggering (edge triggering) 2: Run→Stop status change triggering (edge triggering) 3: Synchronously started with timer 1 (effective for UT2, UT3) 4: Timer 1cycle reach pulse (effective for UT2, UT3) 5: Timer 2 cycle reach pulse (effective for UT3) Hundreds: Timer status resetting (timer value and status) 0: Multifunctional terminal (Function No. 55~57) 1: Automatic resetting when the cycle is reached 2: Automatic resetting when timer is stopped Kilobit: Timing cycle 0: Single-cycle timing (resetting and retriggering required) 1: Multi-cycle timing (start again after auto clearing)	1	0000	×
F5.1.07	Timer 2 (UT2) operating mode (H)				
F5.1.08	Timer 3 (UT3) operating mode(H)				
F5.1.09	Timer 1 timing cycle	0~65535 (clock cycle)	1	30000	
F5.1.10	Timer 1 comparative threshold value	0~[F5.1.09]	1	10000	
F5.1.11	Timer 2 timing cycle	0~65535 (clock cycle)	1	30000	
F5.1.12	Timer 2 comparative threshold value	0~[F5.1.11]	1	10000	
F5.1.13	Timer 3 timing cycle	0~65535 (clock cycle)	1	30000	
F5.1.14	Timer 3 comparative threshold value	0~[F5.1.13]	1	10000	
F5.1.15	Timer door control signal selection	Units: Timer 1(UT1) gated signal 0: No gating function 1: Multifunctional terminal (Function No. 58) 2: Timer 1 comparative value reached (effective for UT2, UT3) 3: Timer 1 cycle reached (effective for UT2, UT3) 4: Timer 2 comparative value reached (effective for UT3) 5: Timer 2 cycle reached (effective for UT3) Tens: Timer 2 (UT2) gated signal selection The same as above, 1: Multifunctional terminal (Function No. 59) Hundreds: Timer 3 (UT3) gated signal selection The same as above, 1: Multifunctional terminal (Function No. 60)	1	0000	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.1.16	Timer 1 output signal (H)	Units: Output signal1 0: Comparative value reached (0.5s pulse) 1: Comparative value reached (level) 2: Comparative value reached and reversed 3: Cycle reached (0.5s pulse) 4: Cycle reached (level) 5: Cycle reached and reversed 6: Comparative value or cycle reached and reversed Tens: Output signal 2 The same as above Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Reserved	1	0041	
F5.1.17	Timer 2 output signal (H)		1	0041	
F5.1.18	Timer 3 output signal (H)		1	0041	
F5.1.19	Timer value display unit(H)	Units: Timer 1 0: Clock unit (original value) 1: Sec. 2: Min. 3: H. Tens: Timer 2 The same as above Hundreds: Timer 3 The same as above	1	0000	

6.25 Built-in auxiliary counter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.2.20	Counter 1 operating mode (H)	Units: Counter pulse selection (Function No. 44, 45) 0: Multifunctional terminal "Void→effective" 1: Multifunctional terminal "effective→void" 2: Aforesaid two conditions are both effective Tens: Starting mode 0: Start immediately after power-on (no trigger start) 1: Multifunctional terminal trigger (Function No. 46-47) 2: Stop→Run status change triggering (edge triggering) 3: Run→Stop Status change triggering (edge triggering) Hundreds: Counter resetting source 0: Multifunctional terminal (Function No.48~49) 1: Set value 1 reaches auto resetting 2: Set value 2 reaches auto resetting Kilobit: Counter save data when power off 0: Counter not save data when power off 1: Counter save data when power off	1	0000	
F5.2.21	Counter 2 operating mode (differed from timer: in case of no resetting, continue counting until overflow, and then continue to count from 0) (H)		1	0000	
F5.2.22	Set value 1 of counter 1	0~65535	1	1000	
F5.2.23	Set value 2 of counter 1	0~65535	1	2000	
F5.2.24	Set value 1 of counter 2	0~65535	1	1000	
F5.2.25	Set value 2 of counter 2	0~65535	1	2000	

62 Function Parameter Table

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.2.26	Counter 1 output signal(H)	Units: Output signal1 0: Reach set value 1 (0.5 Sec.pulse) 1: Reach set value 2 (level) 2: Set value 1 reached and reversed 3: Reach set value 2 (0.5 Sec.pulse) 4: Reach set value 5 (level) 5: Set value 1reached and reversed 6: Set value 1 or set value 2 reached and reversed	1	0000	
F5.2.27	Counter 2 output signal(H)	Tens: Output signal 2 The same as above Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Reserved	1	0000	

6.26 Auxiliary functions

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.3.28	Priority selection of frequency (revolution) command source	Units: 1st priority (highest) 0: No definition 1: Process PID output 2: Compensation PID output 3: Swing frequency running command 4: Automatic multi-stage frequency running command 5: Multi-stage operating frequency selected by external terminals 6: Revolution setting channel (F8.0.00) 7: Frequency Setting channel (F0.1.16) Tens: 2nd priority The same as above Hundreds: 3rd priority The same as above Kilobit: 4th priority The same as above	1	0000	×
F5.3.29	Lower limiting frequency action mode	0: Output 0 frequency when it is below the lower limiting frequency 1: Output the lower limiting frequency when it is below the lower limiting frequency	1	0	
F5.3.30	Automatic voltage regulation(effective in V/F mode)	0: Closed 1: Effective 2: Deceleration process void	1	0	
F5.3.31	Automatic energy -saving operation	0: Void 1: Effective (effective for asynchronous motors)	1	0	
F5.3.32	Magnetic flux brake	0: Void 1: Effective 2: Multifunctional terminal effective (Function No. 65)	1	0	
F5.3.33	Magnetic flux braking strength	0~100%	1	☆	
F5.3.34	Voltage over modulation	0: Void 1: Effective	1	1	
F5.3.35	Use ratio of dynamic braking	50~100(%)	1	100	
F5.3.36	Level of dynamic braking starting action	700~760V	1	720	
F5.3.37	Vibration suppression coefficient	0.0, 0.01~10.00 (only effective in VF control mode)	0.01	0.0	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.3.38	Load dynamic balance function	0: Void 1: Effective 2: Multifunctional terminal effective (Function No. 38)	1	0	
F5.3.39	Reference source for dynamic balance load	0: Digital setting (F5.3.40) 1: AI1 input 2: AI2 input 3: AI3 input 4: Fieldbus set value 1 5: Compensation PID output	1	0	
F5.3.40	Reference value for dynamic balance load	0.0~200.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F5.3.41	Dynamic balance adjustment gain	0.00~100.00	0.01	50.00	
F5.3.42	Dynamic balance adjustment limit	0.00~100.00 (%)	0.01	1.00	

6.27 Motor temperature detection

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F5.4.43	Motor temperature sensor	0: None 1: 1 X PT100 2: 2 X PT100 3: 3 X PT100 4: PTC sensor 5: Thermal switch (normally closed) 6: Thermal switch (normally open)	1	0	
F5.4.44	Sensor current source providing terminal (exceeding parameter)	0: None 1: AO1 2: AO2			
F5.4.45	Temperature input channel	0: None 1: AI1 input (PT100 or PTC) 2: AI3 input (PT100 or PTC) 3: DI1~DI9 (thermal switch)	1	0	
F5.4.46	Alarm action threshold value	-10.0~500.0 (0~5000 Ω/PTC)	0.1	110.0	
F5.4.47	Protection action threshold value	-10.0~500.0 (0~5000 Ω/PTC)	0.1	130.0	

6.28 Multi-stage frequency setting

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F6.0.00	1st operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	5.00	
F6.0.01	2nd operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	10.00	
F6.0.02	3rd operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	15.00	
F6.0.03	4th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	20.00	
F6.0.04	5th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	25.00	
F6.0.05	6th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	30.00	
F6.0.06	7th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	35.00	
F6.0.07	8th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	40.00	
F6.0.08	9th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	45.00	
F6.0.09	10th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	50.00	
F6.0.10	11th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	25.00	
F6.0.11	12th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	5.00	
F6.0.12	13th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	15.00	
F6.0.13	14th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	35.00	
F6.0.14	15th operating frequency	[F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	0.01	50.00	

6.29 Simple programmable multi-stage operation

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F6.1.15	Selection of programmable multi-stage speed operation mode (H)	Units: Function selection 0: Function closed 1: Multi-stage frequency/revolution operation effective 2: Multi-stage frequency/revolution operation condition effective (Function No. 23) 3: Multi-stage PID setting operation effective 4: Multi-stage PID setting operation condition effective (Function No. 23) Tens: Operation mode 0: Single cycle 1: Single cycle stop mode 2: Continuous cycle 3: Continuous cycle stop mode 4: Keeping the final value 5: Keeping the final value stop mode Hundreds: Selection of break point/stop recovery mode 0: Restore running at the first stage 1: Start running at the interruption time (effective for multi-stage frequency/revolution operation) 2: Start running at the stage of interruption Kilobit: Power-off status storage 0: Not stored 1: Stored	1	0000	×
F6.1.16	Stage 1 setting (H)	Units: Hz of each stage	1	0000	
F6.1.17	Stage 2 setting (H)	0: Multi-stage frequency setting 1~15/	1	0000	
F6.1.18	Stage 3 setting (H)	Process PID multi-stage setting 1~7	1	0000	
F6.1.19	Stage 4 setting (H)	1: Frequency command (F0.1.16)/	1	0000	
F6.1.20	Stage 5 setting (H)	Process PID setting (F7.0.01)	1	0000	
F6.1.21	Stage 6 setting (H)	Tens: Direction setting	1	0000	
F6.1.22	Stage 7 setting (H)	0: FWD 1: REV	1	0000	
F6.1.23	Stage 8 setting (H)	2: Determined by the running command channel	1	0000	
F6.1.24	Stage 9 setting (H)	Hundreds: Accelerate/decelerate of each stage	1	0000	
F6.1.25	Stage 10 setting (H)	0: Acceleration and deceleration time 1	1	0000	
F6.1.26	Stage 11 setting (H)	1: Acceleration and deceleration time 2	1	0000	
F6.1.27	Stage 12 setting (H)	2: Acceleration and deceleration time 3	1	0000	
F6.1.28	Stage 13 setting (H)	3: Acceleration and deceleration time 4	1	0000	
F6.1.29	Stage 14 setting (H)	Kilobit: Each stage time unit	1	0000	
F6.1.30	Stage 15 setting (H)	0: Sec. 1: Min.			
F6.1.31	Stage 1 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.32	Stage 2 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.33	Stage 3 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.34	Stage 4 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.35	Stage 5 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.36	Stage 6 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.37	Stage 7 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.38	Stage 8 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.39	Stage 9 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.40	Stage 10 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.41	Stage 11 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.42	Stage 12 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.43	Stage 13 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.44	Stage 14 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	
F6.1.45	Stage 15 running time	0.0~6500.0(Sec./Min.)	0.1	0.0	

6.30 Swing frequency operation

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F6.2.46	Function selection (H)	Units: Function Setting 0: Function closed 1: Function effective 2: Terminal selectivity effective (Function No.24) Tens: Stop restart mode 0: Start with the memory status before stop 1: Restart Hundreds: Swing control 0: Fixed swing (relative maximum frequency) 1: Variable swing (relative central frequency) Kilobit: Status storage 0: Not saved after power-off, and run again after restart 1: Save the status after power-off, and run again from the saved status	1	0000	×
F6.2.47	Swing frequency preset frequency	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	10.00	
F6.2.48	Preset frequency waiting time	0.0~6000.0Sec.	0.1	0.0	
F6.2.49	Swing frequency amplitude	0.0~50.0(%)	0.1	10.0	
F6.2.50	Sudden jump frequency	0.0~50.0(%)	0.1	10.0	
F6.2.51	Triangular wave rising time	0.1~1000.0Sec.	0.1	10.0	
F6.2.52	Triangular wave decreasing time	0.1~1000.0Sec.	0.1	10.0	
F6.2.53	Frequency setting in the center of the swing frequency	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	10.00	

6.31 Process PID (4ms control cycle)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F7.0.00	Process PID function selection	Units: Process PID controller selection 0: Process PID closed 1: Unconditionally effective 2: External multifunctional terminal selectivity effective (Function No. 22) Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Process PID controller output 0: Frequency/revolution set value 1: Independent PID (created by AO terminal output or as a torque) Kilobit: Superposition mode of main and auxiliary, consult the frequency benchmark 0: Upper limit of frequency channel 1: Set value of superposition channel 2: Set value of superposition channel/ upper limit frequency-superposition channel set	1	0000	×

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F7.0.01	Process PID set value selection	0: PID Reference Channel 1 1: PID Reference Channel 2 2: Select Channel Via Terminal (Function No. 31) 3: Channel 1 + Channel 2 4: Channel 1 - Channel 2 5: Channel 1 * (1+ Channel 2/100.0) 6: Channel 1 * (1- Channel 2/100.0) 7: Channel 1 * Channel 2/100.0	1	0	
F7.0.02	Process PID setting channel 1	0: PID Internal Reference (F7.0.08) (power-off save) 1: Keypad Potentiometer	1	0	×
F7.0.03	Process PID setting channel 2	2: Analog input AI1 3: Analog input AI2 4: Analog input AI3 5: Remote UP/DW 1 (clear after stop) 6: Remote UP/DW 2 (maintained after stop and saved after power-off) 7: Analog input AI3 8: Remote UP/DW 3 (clear after stop) 9: U Remote UP/DW 4 (maintained after stop and saved after power-off) 10: MODBUS value 1 11: MODBUS value 2	1	0	×
F7.0.04	Analog input quantity corresponding to 0% setting (Channel 1)	0.0V~[F7.0.05]/ AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.05]	0.01	0.0	
F7.0.05	Analog input quantity corresponding to 100% setting (Channel 1)	[F7.0.04]~10.00/AI2: [F7.0.04]~20.00mA	0.01	10.00	
F7.0.06	Analog input quantity corresponding to 0% setting (Channel 2)	0.0V~[F7.0.07]/ AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.07]	0.01	0.0	
F7.0.07	Analog input quantity corresponding to 100% setting (Channel 2)	[F7.0.06]~10.00/AI2: [F7.0.06]~20.00mA	0.01	10.00	
F7.0.08	Process PID internal digital preset	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.0.09	Process PID feedback value selection	0: PID Actual Value 1 1: PID Actual Value 2 2: Select Via Remote Input (Function No. 32) 3: Actual Value 1+ Actual Value 2 4: Actual Value 1- Actual Value 2 5: Actual Value 1* Actual Value 2/100.0 6: 100.0* Actual Value 1/ Actual Value 2 7: Min. { Actual Value 1, Actual Value 2} 8: Max. { Actual Value 1, Actual Value 2} 9: $\sqrt{(\text{Actual Value 1} - \text{Actual Value 2})}$ 10: $\sqrt{(\text{Actual Value 1})} + \sqrt{(\text{Actual Value 2})}$	1	0	
F7.0.10	Process PID feedback channel 1	0: Analog input AI1 1: Analog input AI2 2: Analog input AI3	1	0	
F7.0.11	Process PID feedback channel 2	3: Analog input AI3 dual polarity PID feedback 4: Fin pulse input	1	0	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F7.0.12	Analog feedback quantity corresponding to 0% feedback (feedback channel 1)	0.0~[F7.0.13] /AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.13]	0.01	0.0	
F7.0.13	Analog feedback quantity corresponding to 100% feedback (feedback channel 1)	[F7.0.12]~10.00V /AI2: [F7.0.12]~20.00mA	0.01	5.00	
F7.0.14	Analog feedback quantity corresponding to 0% feedback (feedback channel 2)	0.0~[F7.0.15]/AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.15]	0.01	0.0	
F7.0.15	Analog feedback quantity corresponding to 100% feedback (feedback channel 2)	[F7.0.14]~10.00V /AI2: [F7.0.14]~20.00mA	0.01	5.00	
F7.0.16	Feedback multiplication factor (e.g. differential voltage calculate flow rate with differential voltage)	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
F7.0.17	Proportional gain	0.0~100.00	0.01	2.00	
F7.0.18	Integration time	0.0~1000.0Sec.	0.1	20.0	
F7.0.19	Differential coefficient	0.0~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F7.0.20	Differential inertia filtering time	0.01~100.00Sec.	0.01	10.00	
F7.0.21	PID controller characteristics configuration	Units: Deviation polarity 0: Positive deviation 1: Negative deviation (negation) Tens: Output polarity 0: Single polarity 1: Dual polarity (the symbol can be reversed) Hundreds: Action when PID removed 0: PID control closed 1: PID output held up and current setting status is maintained.	1	0000	
F7.0.22	Permitted static deviation (relative 100% setting)	0.0~20.0%	0.1	5.0	
F7.0.23	PID output preset (at the time of output frequency as compared to the upper limiting frequency)	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.01	0.0	
F7.0.24	Preset hold time before PID starting	0.0~3600.0Sec.	0.1	0.0	
F7.0.25	Actual sensor value (range)corresponding to 100% feedback	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
F7.0.26	Actual sensor value corresponding to 0% feedback	-100.00~100.00	0.01	0.0	

6.32 Process PID multi-stage setting

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F7.1.27	Process PID multi-stage preset 1	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.1.28	Process PID multi-stage preset 2	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.1.29	Process PID multi-stage preset 3	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.1.30	Process PID multi-stage preset 4	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.1.31	Process PID multi-stage preset 5	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.1.32	Process PID multi-stage preset 6	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F7.1.33	Process PID multi-stage preset 7	-100.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	

6.33 Process PID sleep function (Effective when PID output is used as the frequency command)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F7.2.34	Sleep function	0: Closed 1: Enabled 2: Enabled when the multifunctional input selection is effective (Function No. 33)	1	0	
F7.2.35	Sleep frequency	0.0~[F0.1.21]	0.01	0.0	
F7.2.36	Sleep delay	0.1~3600.0Sec.	0.1	60.0	
F7.2.37	Awakening deviation (compared with the set value)	0.0~100.0(%)	0.1	25.0	
F7.2.38	Awakening delay	0.1~3600.0Sec.	0.1	60.0	

6.34 Revolution setting and feedback

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F8.0.00	Revolution setting channel (only applicable to VC and SVC mode)	0: Set by frequency setting parameter (F0.1.16) 1: Digital setting (F8.0.03) (maintained after stop and saved after power-off) 2: Keypad potentiometer 3: Analog input AI1 4: Analog input AI2 5: Analog input AI3 (dual polarity) 6: Frequency input (Fin) 7: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 8: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2 9: Virtual analog input SAI1 10: Virtual mode input SAI2	1	0	
F8.0.01	Minimum set signal corresponding revolution	0~60*[F0.1.21] / pairs of motor poles (rpm)	1	0	
F8.0.02	Maximum set signal corresponding revolution	0~60*[F0.1.21] / pairs of motor poles (rpm)	1	1500	
F8.0.03	Revolution Digital setting	0~60*[F0.1.21] / pairs of motor poles (rpm)	1	0	
F8.0.04	Revolution feedback channel	0: Decoder (PG card needs to be equipped) 1: Single pulse input (Fin port) 2: Analog input AI1 3: Analog input AI2 4: Analog input AI3 (dual polarity)	1	0	×

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F8.0.05	Pulse of decoder per revolution (PG)	1~8192	1	1024	×
F8.0.06	PG rotation direction (Effective for PG card)	0: Phase A leads 1: Phase B leads	1	0	×
F8.0.07	PG zero pulse (Z pulse)	0: Void 1: Effective	1	0	×
F8.0.08	Decoder type	0: ABZ incremental decoder 1: ABZUVW incremental type 2: SIN COS type 3: Rotary transformer	1	0	×
F8.0.09	PG revolution check cycle	Units: PG revolution detection period 1~5ms Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Revolution close-loop period (*0.25ms) 1~8	1	0402	
F8.0.10	Missing detection and action of speed detection signal	Units: Speed signal detection 0: Not detect 1: Detect and treat Tens: Speed signal detection action 0: Fault alarm and free stop 1: Continue running after switching to SVC control mode and then display the alarm information (reserved) 2: DC bind-type brake (reserved)	1	0001	×
F8.0.11	Judging time for speed detection signal missing	0.01~5.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F8.0.12	Wire breakage zero speed signal level (as compared to the maximum set speed)	0~20.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F8.0.13	Speed measuring loop wire breakage detection flexibility (as compared to the maximum set speed)	0.1~100.0	0.1	5.0	
F8.0.14	Detection revolution filtering time coefficient	0(Closed), 1~50ms	1	2ms	
F8.0.15	The minimum revolution corresponding to the feedback signal (not PG)	0~30000rpm	1	0	
F8.0.16	The maximum revolution corresponding to the feedback signal (not PG)	0~30000rpm	1	1500	
F8.0.17	Feedback revolution ratio (motor shaft speed: measured shaft speed)	0.010~50.000	0.001	1.000	×

6.35 Revolution closed-loop parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F8.1.18	Controller PID selection	0: Single PID parameter (the second group of parameters are effective separately) 1: Dual PID parameter (hysteresis switching) 2: Dual PID parameter (continuous switching)	1	2	
F8.1.19	PID parameter switching lower limiting revolution (ASR1 group parameter low revolution effective)	0~[F8.1.20]	1	100	
F8.1.20	PID parameter switching upper limiting revolution (ASR2 group parameter high revolution effective)	[F8.1.19]~60*[F0.1.21]/pairs of motor poles (rpm)	1	300	
F8.1.21	Proportional gain 1 (ASR-P1)	0.10~5.00	0.01	1.00	
F8.1.22	Integration time 1 (ASR-I1)	0.0~50.00 Sec.	0.01	1.00	
F8.1.23	Differential coefficient 1 (ASR-D1)	0.0~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F8.1.24	Differential output filtering constant 1 (ASR-DT1)	0.1~5.00 Sec.	0.01	1.00	
F8.1.25	Proportional gain 2 (ASR-P2)	0.5~2.00	0.01	0.80	
F8.1.26	Integration time 2 (ASR-I2)	0.0, 0.01~50.00 Sec.	0.01	2.50	
F8.1.27	Differential coefficient 2 (ASR-D2)	0.00~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F8.1.28	Differential output filtering constant 2 (ASR-DT2)	0.10~10.00 Sec.	0.01	1.00	
F8.1.29	Adjuster output upper limit amplitude	0.0~250.0%	0.1	190.0%	
F8.1.30	Adjuster output lower limit amplitude	-250.0~0.0%	0.1	-190.0%	
F8.1.31	Time span of regulator export filtering	0, 0.1~50.0ms	0.1	0	

6.36 Protection parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F8.2.32	Excessive rotation(DEV)	0: No action	1	0	×
F8.2.33	Over speed (OS) protection	1: Alarm free stop 2: Alarm deceleration stop 3: Alarm continuing running	1	1	×
F8.2.34	Over speed protection limit (DEV)	0.0~50.0% (as compared to upper limiting frequency)	0.1	20.0%	
F8.2.35	Over speed protection period (DEV)	0.0~10.00Sec.	0.01	10.00	
F8.2.36	Over speed protection value (OS)	0.0~150.0% (as compared to upper limiting frequency)	0.1	120.0%	
F8.2.37	Over speed protection time (OS)	0.0~2.00Sec.	0.01	0.10	
F8.2.38	SVC rotating speed estimate gain factor	0.10 ~ 10.00	0.01	1.00	

6.37 Torque control

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F8.3.39	Torque control activation	0: Void 1: Effective 2: Multifunctional terminal selection effective (Function No. 34)	1	0	×
F8.3.40	Torque control reference (selecting the command direction)	0: Digital setting (F8.3.41) 1: Panel shuttle potentiometer setting 2: Analog input AI1 3: Analog input AI2 4: Analog input AI3 5: Analog input AI3 (dual polarity) 6: Frequency signal input (Fin) 7: Process PID output 8: Compensation PID output 9: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 10: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2 11: Virtual analog input SAI1 12: Virtual mode input SAI2	1	0	
F8.3.41	Torque digital setting	-250.0~250.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F8.3.42	Torque digital rise time	0.0~50.000Sec.	0.001	0.010	
F8.3.43	Torque digital fall time	0.0~50.000Sec.	0.001	0.010	
F8.3.44	Revolution limiting setting	Units: FWD revolution limiting setting source 0: Setting of FWD revolution limiting value (F8.3.45) 1: Determination of frequency Setting channel 1 (F0.2.25) Tens: Reserved Hundreds: REV Revolution limiting setting source 0: Setting of REV revolution limiting value (F8.3.46) 1: Determination of frequency Setting channel 2 (F0.2.26)	1	0000	
F8.3.45	FWD revolution limiting value	0~60*[F0.1.21]/pairs of motor poles (rpm)	1	1500	
F8.3.46	REV revolution limiting value	0~60*[F0.1.21]/pairs of motor poles (rpm)	1	1500	
F8.3.47	Setting of torque set value limit	Units: Minimum torque selection source (negative torque limit) 0: Minimum torque set value 1 (F8.3.48) 1: Minimum torque set value 2 (F8.3.49) 2: Multifunctional selection terminal setting 1 or 2 3: AI1 set value 4: AI2 set value 5: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 6: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2 Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Maximum torque selection source 0: Maximum torque set value 1 (F8.3.50) 1: Maximum torque set value 2 (F8.3.51) 2: Multifunctional selection terminal setting 1 or 2	1	0000	

72 Function Parameter Table

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
		(Function No. 36) 3: AI1 set value 4: AI2 set value 5: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 6: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2			
F8.3.48	Minimum torque limit 1	-250.0~0.0%	0.1	-200.0	
F8.3.49	Minimum torque limit 2	-250.0~0.0%	0.1	-200.0	
F8.3.50	Maximum torque limit 1	0.0~250.0%	0.1	200.0	
F8.3.51	Maximum torque limit 2	0.0~250.0%	0.1	200.0	
F8.3.52	Torque zero offset	-25.0~25.0%	0.1	0.0	

6.38 Compensation PID (Running cycle: 1ms)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F9.0.00	Compensation PID function	Units: Controller input 0: Closed 1: Synchronously effective with inverter running command 2: Activated when the Multifunctional terminal is effective (Function No. 25) 3: Immediately effective after the inverter is powered on Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Controller output 0: Feed FWD compensation-added with the frequency integrator output, and the complementation ratio is set by parameter F9.0.01 1: Independent PID the output can be set by the AO terminal output/torque. 2: Set PID-output used as frequency/revolution command Kilobit: feed forward compensate frequency benchmark 0: Relative to the upper frequency 1: Relative to the frequency integrator output	1	0100	×
F9.0.01	Compensation proportion (as compared to upper limiting frequency)	0.0~100.0(%)	0.1	50.0	
F9.0.02	Compensation PID controller feature configuration	Units: Deviation polarity 0: Positive deviation 1: Negative deviation (negation) Tens: Output polarity 0: Single polarity 1: Dual polarity Hundreds: Loss of signal response 0: PID control closed 1: PID output held on (maintaining current)	1	0010	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
		running setting)			
F9.0.03	Proportional gain 1	0.0~100.00	0.01	2.00	
F9.0.04	Integration time 1	0.0~100.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F9.0.05	Differential coefficient 1	0.0~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F9.0.06	Differential inertia filtering time 1	0.01~25.00Sec.	0.01	5.00	
F9.0.07	Compensation PID output inertia filtering time coefficient1	0.0, 0.01 ~ 20.00Sec.	0.01	1.00	
F9.0.08	Selection of compensation PID set value	0: Internal digital setting (F9.0.11) (auto save after power off) 1: Panel shuttle potentiometer preset value 2: Analog input AI1 3: Analog input AI2 4: Analog input AI3 5: UP/DW terminal (clear after stop) 6: UP/DW terminal (maintaining after stop and save after power-off) 7: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 8: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2 9: Expansion communication set 1 10: Expansion communication set 1	1	0	
F9.0.09	Analog input minimum value	0.0V~[F9.0.10]/AI2: 0.0mA~[F9.0.10]	0.01	0.0	
F9.0.10	Analog input maximum value	[F9.0.09]~10.00/AI2: [F9.0.09]~20.00mA	0.01	10.00	
F9.0.11	PID internal reference	0.0~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F9.0.12	Selection of compensation PID feedback value	0: Analog input AI1 1: Analog input AI2 2: Analog input AI3 3: Output current 4: Output torque 5: Output power	1	0	
F9.0.13	Actual value analog input minimum	0.0V~[F9.0.14]/AI2: 0.0mA~[F9.0.14]	0.01	0.0	
F9.0.14	Actual value analog input maximum	[F9.0.13]~10.00/AI2: [F9.0.13]~20.00mA	0.01	10.00	
F9.0.15	Actual value multiplication factor	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
F9.0.16	Sensor value when actual value is 100%	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
F9.0.17 ~ F9.0.20	Reserved				

6.39 Compensation PID controller parameter selection

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
F9.1.21	Selection and switching of controller parameters	Units: PID parameters 0: Single PID parameter 1: Dual PID parameters 2: Three PID parameters 3: Four PID parameters Tens: PID parameter switching mode 0: As per set value 1: As per feedback value 2: As per output frequency 3: Selected by multifunctional terminal (Function No.63 and 64)	1	0020	
F9.1.22	Controller parameter switching transition coefficient	0.01 ~ 50.00	0.01	1.00	
F9.1.23	Lower limit for group 1/2 parameter switching	0.0~[F9.1.24]	0.1	0.0	
F9.1.24	Upper limit for group 1/2 parameter switching	[F9.1.23]~100.0 (%)	0.1	0.0	
F9.1.25	Lower limit for group 2/3 parameter switching	[F9.1.24]~[F9.1.26]	0.1	100.0	
F9.1.26	Upper limit for group 2/3 parameter switching	[F9.1.25]~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F9.1.27	Lower limit for group 3/4 parameter switching	[F9.1.26]~[F9.1.28]	0.1	100.0	
F9.1.28	Upper limit for group 3/4 parameter switching	[F9.1.27]~100.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
F9.1.29	Proportional gain 2	0.0~100.00	0.01	2.00	
F9.1.30	Integration time 2	0.0, 0.01~100.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F9.1.31	Differential coefficient2	0.0, 0.01~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F9.1.32	Differential output filtering constant 2	0.01~25.00Sec.	0.01	5.00	
F9.1.33	Adjuster output filtering time coefficient 2	0.0, 0.01~20.00Sec.	0.01	1.00	
F9.1.34	Proportional gain 3	0.0~100.00	0.01	2.00	
F9.1.35	Integration time 3	0.0, 0.01~100.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F9.1.36	Differential coefficient3	0.0, 0.01~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F9.1.37	Differential output filtering constant 3	0.01~25.00Sec.	0.01	5.00	
F9.1.38	Compensation PID output filtering time coefficient 3	0.0, 0.01~20.00Sec.	0.01	1.00	
F9.1.39	Proportional gain 4	0.0~100.00	0.01	2.00	
F9.1.40	Integration time 4	0.0, 0.01~100.00Sec.	0.01	2.00	
F9.1.41	Differential coefficient4	0.0, 0.01~10.00	0.01	0.0	
F9.1.42	Differential output filtering constant 4	0.01~25.00Sec.	0.01	5.00	
F9.1.43	Compensation PID output filtering time coefficient 4	0.0, 0.01~20.00Sec.	0.01	1.00	



➤ 100% PID setting corresponds to 100% rated output current of the equipment, motor rated torque and rated power, so it needs to appropriately set up the feedback factor, output torque and power to be values with symbols according to actual application.

6.40 Modbus fieldbus (Standard expansion card configuration)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FA.0.00	Communication card connection and bus status	0: The communication card not connected 1: Standard MODBUS communication card connected 2: Listen only status 3: Communication interrupted	1	—	R
FA.0.01	Configuration parameter	Units: Baud rate selection 0: 1200kbit/s 1: 2400kbit/s 2: 4800kbit/s 3: 9600kbit/s 4: 19200kbit/s 5: 38400kbit/s 6: 76800kbit/s Tens: Data format 0: 1-8-1-N, RTU 1: 1-8-1-E, RTU 2: 1-8-1-O, RTU 3: 1-8-2-N, RTU	1	0003	×
FA.0.02	The device station address	0~247(0 stands for broadcasting address)	1	1	×
FA.0.03	The device response delay	0~1000ms	1	5ms	
FA.0.04	Communication failure judging time	0.01~10.00Sec.	0.01	1.00	×
FA.0.05	Communication failure action	0: Deceleration stop 1: Run as per last received command	1	0	
FA.0.06	Selection of communication configuration files	0: SUNFAR standard configuration file 1 1: SUNFAR standard configuration file 2 (Reserved)	1	0	
FA.0.07	—	—			

6.41 Mapping access parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FA.1.08	Mapping application parameter 1 (H)	F0.00 ~ FF.55	1	F0.29	×
FA.1.09	Mapping application parameter 2 (H)	F0.00 ~ FF.55	1	F0.29	×
FA.1.10	Mapping application parameter 3 (H)	F0.00 ~ FF.55	1	F0.29	×
FA.1.11	Mapping application parameter 4 (H)	F0.00 ~ FF.55	1	F0.32	×
FA.1.12	Mapping application parameter 5 (H)	F0.00 ~ FF.55	1	F0.32	×
FA.1.13	Mapping application parameter 6 (H)	F0.00 ~ FF.55	1	F0.32	×
FA.1.14	Mapping status parameter 1 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.00	
FA.1.15	Mapping status parameter 2 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.01	
FA.1.16	Mapping status parameter 3 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.02	
FA.1.17	Mapping status parameter 4 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.03	
FA.1.18	Mapping status parameter 5 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.04	
FA.1.19	Mapping status parameter 6 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.05	
FA.1.20	Mapping status parameter 7 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.06	
FA.1.21	Mapping status parameter 8 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.07	
FA.1.22	Mapping status parameter 9 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.08	
FA.1.23	Mapping status parameter 10 (H)	d0.00 ~ d1.55	1	d0.09	
FA.1.24	—	—	—	—	

6.42 Communication linkage synchronous control

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FA.2.25	Coupling synchronous control options	Units: Selection of coupling function 0: Void 1: The device is the slave device 2: The device is the master device Tens: Linkage target value (Master device parameter) 0: Proportional linkage of frequency /revolution set value 1: Proportional linkage of frequency /revolution integrator output value Hundreds: Coupling command (slave device parameter) 0: Independent control of slave device(start and stop not linked) 1: Start and stop command linked 2: Start-stop/jog linked 3: Start-stop/jog/excitation linked 4: Start-stop/jog/excitation/DC bind-type brake/DC braking linked Kilobit: linkage set choice 0: Unit digit of the parameter confirm 1: The input of external terminal (function No.39)	1	0310	×
FA.2.26	Linkage setting proportion coefficient	0.010~10.000	0.001	1.000	
FA.2.27	Fine adjustment source for linkage proportion coefficient	0: No fine adjustment 1: Analog inputAI1 2: Analog inputAI2 3: Analog inputAI3	1	0	
FA.2.28	Slave device offset frequency/ Revolution	0: No offset 1: Determined by frequency setting source 1 2: Determined by frequency setting source 2	1	0	
FA.2.29	Linkage balancing function	0: Void 1: Current balancing 2: Torque balancing 3: Power balancing 4: Position synchronous balancing	1	0	
FA.2.30	Linkage balancing gain	0.001~10.000	0.001	1.000	
FA.2.31	Amplitude limiting of position synchronous balancing	0.10~10.00Hz	—	1.00	
FA.2.32	Reserved	—	—	—	

6.43 Expansion multifunctional input terminal (EDI1~ EDI8)/ Effective after connecting expanding accessories

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
Fb.0.00	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI1	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.01	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI2	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.02	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI3	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.03	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI4	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.04	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI5	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.05	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI6	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.06	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI7	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.07	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDI8	0~96	1	0	×
Fb.0.08	Expand multifunctional terminal filtering time	1~50ms	1	5ms	
Fb.0.09	Expand multi function input terminal active level	Units: EDI1~EDI4 terminal 0~F: 4-bit binary system, bit=0 power-on effective, 1 Disconnection Effective LED Tens: EDI5~EDI8 terminal The same as above Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Reserved	1	0000	×

6.44 Expansion multifunctional output terminal (ED01/ ERO1~ ED04/ ERO4)/ Effective after connecting expanding accessories

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
Fb.1.10	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDO1	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.11	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDO2	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.12	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDO3	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.13	Expand multifunctional input terminal EDO4	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.14	Expand multifunctional input terminal ERO1	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.15	Expand multifunctional input terminal ERO2	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.16	Expand multifunctional input terminal ERO3	0~62	1	0	
Fb.1.17	Expand multifunctional input terminal ERO4	0~62	1	0	

6.45 Servo control and scale positioning

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
Fb.2.18	Automatic shift frequency	0~5.00Hz	0.01	1.00	
Fb.2.19	Automatic shift switching cycle	0.10~2.00Sec.	0.01	0.30	
Fb.2.20	Zero frequency torque holdup (DC bind-type brake preferred)	0: Void 1: Bind-type brake torque effective 2: Position locking(PG feedback VC mode) 3: Lock in the designated shutdown angle	1	0	×

78 Function Parameter Table

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
Fb.2.21	Position lock gain1(location gain)	00.10~10.00	0.01	1.00	
Fb.2.22	PG speed shaft propulsion distance per revolution	0.001~50.000mm	0.01	0.500	
Fb.2.23	Servo control function	Units: Function selection 0: Void 1: Effective 2: External terminal selection (Function No.69) Tens: Action mode 0: Common mode 1: Spindle orientation	1	0000	×
Fb.2.24	Position setting source in common mode	0: Reserved 1: Fin input 2: Digital setting 3: Analog inputAI1 4: MODBUS bus set value 1 5: MODBUS bus set value 2	1	1	
Fb.2.25	Position digital setting (lower)	0~65535	1	0	
Fb.2.26	Position digital setting (upper)	0~500	1	0	
Fb.2.27	Electronic gear (numerator)	0~65535	1	1000	
Fb.2.28	Electronic gear (denominator)	0~65535	1	1000	
Fb.2.29	Position command filtering time coefficient	1~1000.0ms	1	10	
Fb.2.30	Position gain 2	0.01~100.00	0.01	1.00	
Fb.2.31	Position gain selection	0: Gain 1 Effective 1: Gain 2 Effective 2: External terminal selection (Function No. 75) 3: Position deviation selection	1	0	
Fb.2.32	Position gain selected threshold value (Position deviation)	0~30000	1	10	
Fb.2.33	Speed feed-FWD gain	0.0~200.0 (%)	0.1	100.0	
Fb.2.34	Rotate speed regulating in common servo mode	0: Limit by the upper frequency 1: Mini-max between the frequency set channel and position loop control	1	0	
Fb.2.35	—	—			
Fb.2.36	Spindle orientation mode	Units: Selection of reference signal for positioning zero point 0: Z pulse positioning 1: Photoelectric switch positioning(Function No. 70) Tens: Command 0: External terminal selection 1: Pulse command setting(Fin) Hundreds: Direction arrival 0: Locate according to the order 1: Locate according to the minimum corner	1	0000	×
Fb.2.37	reverse				
Fb.2.38	Spindle orientation angle 1	0~359.9	0.1	45.0	
Fb.2.39	Spindle orientation angle 2	0~359.9	0.1	90.0	
Fb.2.40	Spindle orientation angle 3	0~359.9	0.1	135.0	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
Fb.2.41	Spindle orientation angle 4	0~359.9	0.1	180.0	
Fb.2.42	Spindle orientation angle 5	0~359.9	0.1	225.0	
Fb.2.43	Spindle orientation angle 6	0~359.9	0.1	270.0	
Fb.2.44	Spindle orientation angle 7	0~359.9	0.1	315.0	
Fb.2.45	Spindle stop angle	0~359.9	0.1	0.0	
Fb.2.46	Spindle transmission ratio (detection spindle speed: Spindle Revolution)	0.010~50.000	0.001	1.000	×
Fb.2.47	Spindle orientation/Position reach error	0~500	1	5	
Fb.2.48	reverse				
Fb.2.49	reverse				

6.46 Virtual input and output

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.0.00	FF configuration parameter locking function (H)	Units: FF parameter modification forbidden 0: Modification forbidden 1: Modification permitted Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Initialization of FF parameter group 0: Forbidden 1: Permitted	1	0000	
FF.0.01	Definition of virtual output node (SDO1)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.02	Definition of virtual output node (SDO2)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.03	Definition of virtual output node (SDO3)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.04	Definition of virtual output node (SDO4)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.05	Definition of virtual output node (SDO5)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.06	Definition of virtual output node (SDO6)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.07	Definition of virtual output node (SDO7)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.08	Definition of virtual output node (SDO8)	0~71	1	0	
FF.0.09	Definition of virtual input function (SDI1)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.10	Definition of virtual input function (SDI2)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.11	Definition of virtual input function (SDI3)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.12	Definition of virtual input function (SDI4)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.13	Definition of virtual input function (SDI5)	0~96	1	0	×

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.0.14	Definition of virtual input function (SDI6)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.15	Definition of virtual input function (SDI7)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.16	Definition of virtual input function (SDI8)	0~96	1	0	×
FF.0.17	Virtual output- input connection polarity	Units: SDO1-SDI1 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection Tens: SDO2-SDI2 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection Hundreds: SDO3-SDI3 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection Kilobit: SDO4-SDI4 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection	1	0000	×
FF.0.18	Virtual output- input connection polarity	Units: SDO5-SDI5 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection Tens: SDO6-SDI6 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection Hundreds: SDO7-SDI7 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection Kilobit: SDO8-SDI8 0: Homopolar connection 1: Antipolar connection	1	0000	×

6.47 Protection function configuration parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.1.19	Protection action configuration 1 (H)	Units: Operation under voltage protection 0: No action 1: Act Tens: Output grounding protection 0: No action 1: Act Hundreds: Input Voltage lack of phase protection 0: No action 1: Trip and stop 2: Nonstop alarm Kilobit: Output current phase shortage or unbalancing protection 0: No action 1: Trip and stop 2: Nonstop alarm	1	1001	
FF.1.20	Protection action configuration 2 (H)	Units: Temperature sensor fault 0: No action 1: Trip and stop 2: Nonstop alarm Tens: Inverter overheat alarm 0: Closed 1: Act	1	0100	

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
		Hundreds: Input voltage unbalancing protection (Void for single camera) 0: No action 1: Trip and stop 2: Nonstop alarm Kilobit: Motor over temperature protection 0: No action 1: Trip and stop 2: Nonstop alarm			
FF.1.21	Protection action configuration 3 (H)	Units: Relay action fault protection 0: No action 1: Act Tens: Internal data memory abnormal protection 0: No action 1: Act Hundreds: Inverter under voltage operation alarm 0: Closed 1: Act Kilobit: Reserved	1	0111	
FF.1.22	Protection action configuration 4 (H)	Units: Drive protection action 0: Closed 1: Act Tens: Reserved Hundreds: A. B impulse anti-receive protection 0: Closed 1: Act	1	0001	
FF.1.23	Protective action configuration 5 (H)	Units: warning the message shielded 0: Closed 1: Act (no warning) Tens: Output supply power protection of phase sequence (reversed)LED 0: Closed 1: Trip out when phase sequence goes wrong 2: The warning of no shutdown when phase sequence goes wrong	1	0000	
FF.1.24	Reserved	—	—	—	

6.48 Correction parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.2.25	AI1 zero offset adjustment	-0.500~0.500V	0.001	0.0	
FF.2.26	AI1 gain correction	0.950~1.050	0.001	1.000	
FF.2.27	4mA offset adjustment for AI2	-0.500~0.500mA	0.001	0.0	
FF.2.28	AI2 gain correction	0.950~1.050	0.001	1.000	
FF.2.29	AI3 zero offset adjustment	-0.500~0.500V	0.001	0.0	
FF.2.30	AI3 gain correction	0.950~1.050	0.001	1.000	
FF.2.31	AO1 zero offset correction	-0.500~0.500V	0.001	0.0	
FF.2.32	AO1 gain correction	0.950~1.050	0.001	1.000	
FF.2.33	AO2 zero offset correction	-0.500~0.500V	0.001	0.0	
FF.2.34	AO2 gain correction	0.950~1.050	0.001	1.000	
FF.2.35	under voltage action level	320~450V	1	350	×
FF.2.36	Correction coefficient of DC side voltage detection value	0.950~1.050	0.001	1.000	

6.49 Special functional parameters

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.3.37	Torque limit configuration (H)	Units: Constant torque area torque limitation 0: Only limited by torque limiting parameter (including Revolution PID output limit) 1: Also limited by acceleration and deceleration current level and maximum permitted current Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Constant power area torque limitation 0: Treated the same as the constant torque area 1: Simultaneously adjusted as per constant power algorithm	1	0101	
FF.3.38	Current closed-loop proportional gain	0.10 ~ 10.00	0.01	1.00	
FF.3.39	Current closed-loop integration time constant	0.10 ~ 10.00 (Sec.)	0.01	1.00	
FF.3.40	Total leakage inductance compensation constant	0.10 ~ 10.00	0.01	1.00	

6.50 Other configuration parameters

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.4.41	Cooling fan control	Units: Soft start function (effective for model 4T0370 and below) 0: No action 1: Act Tens: Air volume auto adjustment (effective for model 4T0370 and below) 0: No action 1: Act Hundreds: Start time 0: Start immediately after power-on 1: Start after running Kilobit: Reserved	1	0101	
FF.4.42	Operating panel control options	Units: Panel REV/JOG key function selection 0: REV (REV running key) 1: JOG (FWD jog key) Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Panel control selection (except STOP key) 0: Standard panel interface control (can be connected to monitoring panel via RS485) 1: RS485 port external panel control (standard panel, only for monitoring) 2: Multifunctional terminal switching (Function No. 40)	1	0000	×

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
FF.4.43	Special function configuration	Units: Motor parameter identification auto-start 0: Forbidden 1: Permitted Tens: Voltage vector composition mode 0: Three-phase composition 1: Two-phase composition Hundreds: Voltage small pulse shielding 0: Void 1: Effective Kilobit: SVC Revolution identification mode 0: Current open-loop mode 1: Current closed-loop mode (Reserved)	1	0001	
FF.4.44	Asynchronous motor parameter adaptive correction	LED Units: Stator resistance 0: Forbidden 1: Permitted LED Tens: Total leakage inductance 0: Forbidden 1: Permitted LED Hundreds: Rotor time constant 0: Forbidden 1: Permitted LED Kilobit: Torque increasing function 0: Void 1~5: Effective	1	0011	
FF.4.45	Random reference value	0~65535	1		R

6.51 Historical fault recording

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
dE.0.00	Last time fault recording	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.01	Historical fault 1	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.02	Historical fault 2	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.03	Historical fault 3	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.04	Historical fault 4	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.05	Historical fault 5	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.06	Historical fault 6	-	-	-	R/I
dE.0.07	Historical fault 7	-	-	-	R/I

6.52 Operation status at the last fault

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
dE.0.08	Operating frequency (rotor synchronous frequency)	-300.00~300.00Hz	0.01	0	R/I
dE.0.09	Output current	0.0~3000.0A	0.1	0	R/I
dE.0.10	Output voltage	0~1000V	1	0	R/I
dE.0.11	Detection motor revolution	0~30000rpm	1	0	R/I
dE.0.12	Voltage at the DC side	0~1000V	1	0	R/I
dE.0.13	Output torque	-300.0~ 300.0%	0.1%	0	R/I
dE.0.14	Target frequency	0.0~300.00Hz	0.01	0	R/I
dE.0.15	Equipment maximum temperature	0.0~150.0	0.1°C	0	R/I
dE.0.16	Command status	Units: 0: Stop command 1: Running command Tens: Reserved Hundreds: Reserved Kilobit: Reserved	1	0000	R/I

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
dE.0.17	Inverter operation status	Units: Operation mode 0: V/F mode 1: Open-loop vector speed 2: Closed-loop vector speed 3: Open-loop torque control 4: Closed-loop torque control Tens: Operation status 0: Stop 1: Start acceleration 2: Stop deceleration 3: Decreasing frequency and deceleration 4: Steady operation Hundreds: Electric/braking status 0: Electric operation 1: Power generation operation Kilobit: Limit suppression 0: No action 1: Over current suppression action 2: Over voltage suppressor action 3: under voltage suppression action	1	0000	R/I
dE.0.18	Accumulative startup running time at the last fault	0~65535	1h	65535	R/I
dE.0.19	Startup running interval between the last two faults	0~65535	1h	65535	R/I
dE.0.20	Actual output frequency	-300.00~300.00Hz	0.01	0	R/I

6.53 Basic status parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d0.0.00	Output frequency and direction (rotor synchronous frequency)	-300.0Hz ~ 300.00Hz	0.01Hz		R
d0.0.01	Motor revolution and direction	-30000~30000rpm	1rpm		R
d0.0.02	Output current	0.0~ 6000.0A	0.1A		R
d0.0.03	Output torque	-300.0~300.0%	0.1%		R
d0.0.04	Output voltage	0~500V	1V		R
d0.0.05	Output power	-1000.0~1000.0KW	0.1KW		R
d0.0.06	Device body maximum temperature	0~150.0°C	0.1°C		R
d0.0.07	Voltage at DC side	0~1000V	1V		R
d0.0.08	Inverter running status	Units: Operation mode 0: V/F mode 1: Open-loop vector speed 2: Closed-loop vector speed 3: Open-loop torque control 4: Closed-loop torque control 5: V/F separated control Tens: Operation status 0: Stop 1: Start acceleration 2: Stop deceleration 3: Decreasing frequency and deceleration 4: Steady operation	1		R

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
		Hundreds: Electric/ braking status 0: Electric operation 1: Power generation operation Kilobit: Limit suppression 0: No action 1: Over current suppression action 2: Over voltage suppressor action 3: under voltage suppression action			
d0.0.09	Frequency setting channel command (frequency)	-300.00Hz ~ 300.00Hz	0.01Hz		R
d0.0.10	Revolution Setting channel command (Revolution)	-30000~30000rpm	1rpm		R
d0.0.11	Torque command value (set input)	-300.0~300.0%	0.1%		R
d0.0.12	Target operating frequency (integrator input)	-300.0Hz ~ 300.00Hz	0.01Hz		R
d0.0.13	Target running revolution (integrator input)	-30000~30000rpm	1rpm		
d0.0.14	Speed adjuster deviation	-3200~3200rpm	1rpm		
d0.0.15	Speed adjuster output	-300.0~300.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.16	Process PID setting	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.17	Process PID feedback	-200.0~200.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.18	Process PID deviation	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.19	Process PID output	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.20	Compensation PID setting	-200.0~200.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.21	Compensation PID feedback	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.22	Compensation PID deviation	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.23	Compensation PID output	-100.0~100.0(%)	0.1%		
d0.0.24	Accumulative running time (H)	0~65535h	1h		
d0.0.25	Accumulative power-on time (H)	0~65535h	1h		
d0.0.26	Power-on (hh.mm.s) cycling timing	00.00.0~23.59.9	1		
d0.0.27	Kilowatt-hour counter (low)	0~1000.0KWh	0.1KWh		
d0.0.28	Kilowatt-hour counter (high)	0~60000KKWh	1KKWh		
d0.0.29	Megawatt hour counter	0~60000MW	1 MW		

6.54 Auxiliary status parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d0.1.30	Frequency setting source 1 set value	0.0~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	-	R
d0.1.31	Frequency setting source 2 set value	0.0~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	-	R
d0.1.32	Frequency/revolution integrator output	-300.0Hz~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	-	R
d0.1.33	Stator synchronous frequency	-300.0Hz~300.00Hz	0.01Hz	-	R
d0.1.34	Actually measured revolution value	-30000~30000rpm	1rpm	-	R
d0.1.35	Inverter overload integrator value	0 ~ 1020	1	-	
d0.1.36	Process PID set variable (physical quantity)	0.01~60000	0.01	-	R
d0.1.37	Process PID feedback variable (physical quantity)	0.01~60000	0.01	-	R

d0.1.38	Compensation PID set variable (physical quantity)	0.01~60000	0.01	-	R
d0.1.39	Compensation PID feedback variable (physical quantity)	0.01~60000	0.01	-	R
d0.1.40	Torque current	-3000.0~3000.0A	0.1A	-	R
d0.1.41	Excitation current	0.0~3000.0A	0.1A	-	R
d0.1.42	Device body temperature detection 1	0~150.0°C	0.1°C	-	R
d0.1.43	Device body temperature detection 2	0~150.0°C	0.1°C	-	R
d0.1.44	Device body temperature detection 3	0~150.0°C	0.1°C	-	R
d0.1.45	Motor temperature	0~250.0°C	0.1°C	-	R

6.55 Modbus fieldbus status parameter (Standard expansion card)

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d0.2.46	Bus communication set value 1	-10000~10000	1		R
d0.2.47	Bus communication set value 2	-30000~30000	1		R
d0.2.48	Bus command word 1 (HEX)	0~0FFFFH	1		R
d0.2.49	Bus command word 2 (HEX)	0~0FFFFH	1		R
d0.2.50	Bus status word 1 (HEX)	0~0FFFFH	1		R
d0.2.51	Bus status word 2 (HEX)	0~0FFFFH	1		R
d0.2.52	Total quantity of bus information	0~65535	1		R
d0.2.53	Number of bus CRC check errors	0~65535	1		R
d0.2.54	Number of error data accepted by bus	0~65535	1		R
d0.2.55	Number of effective data of bus	0~65535	1		R

6.56 Terminal status and variable

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d1.0.00	Terminal input (DI1~DI10)	Segment marker	-	-	R
d1.0.01	Terminal input (EDI1~EDI10)	Segment marker	-	-	R
d1.0.02	Pulse input (Fin)	0.0~100.00KHz	0.01		R
d1.0.03	Analog input AI1	0.00~10.00V	0.01		R
d1.0.04	Analog input AI2	0.00~20.00mA	0.01		R
d1.0.05	Analog input AI3	-10.00~10.00V	0.01		R
d1.0.06	Digital signal output (DO1~DO4, EDO1~EDO6)	Segment marker	-	-	R
d1.0.07	Relay contact output (RO1~RO4, ERO1~ERO6)	Segment marker	-	-	R
d1.0.08	Frequency output Fout (indicating the duty ratio in the case of PWM signal output)	0.0~100.0KHz	0.01		R
d1.0.09	Analog output AO1	0.00~10.00V	0.01		R
d1.0.10	Analog output AO2	0.00~10.00V	0.01		R



Figure 6-1 Terminal effective sketch



- As shown in Figure 6-1, DI2, DI3, DI7, DI9 terminal input is in effective status, and other terminals are at void status.

6.57 Counter timer value

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d1.1.11	Counter 1 current value	0~65535	1		R
d1.1.12	Counter 2 current value	0~65535	1		R
d1.1.13	Timer 1 current value	0~65535	1		R
d1.1.14	Timer 2 current value	0~65535	1		R
d1.1.15	Timer 3 current value	0~65535	1		R

6.58 Spindle control and scale positioning status parameter

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d1.2.16	Spindle (PG installation shaft) position angle	0~359.9			R
d1.2.17	Spindle (PG installation shaft) traveling circle number	0~65535			R
d1.2.18	Accumulative number of position pulse (low)	0~65535			R
d1.2.19	Accumulative number of position pulse (middle)	0~65535			R
d1.2.20	Progressive distance	0.0~5000.0mm			R
d1.2.21	Set position pulse(low)	0~65535			R
d1.2.22	Set position pulse(middle)	0~65535			R
d1.2.23	Set position pulse(high)	0~65535			R

6.59 Equipment information

Function Code	Name	Setting Range and Description	Minimum Unit	Factory Default	Change Limit
d1.4.40	Expansion module connection information	Units: Reserved Tens: Standard expansion board 0: Not connected 1: Connected Hundreds: Functional expansion board 1 0: Not connected 1~F: Connected (the value stands for the type of expansion board) Kilobit: Functional expansion board 2 0: Not connected 1~F: Connected (the value stands for the type of expansion board)	1	—	R
d1.4.41	Total quantity of panel communication information	0~65535	1	—	R
d1.4.42	Number of panel communication CRC check errors + number of errors accepted	0~65535	1	—	R
d1.4.43	Number of effective data of panel communication	0~65535	1	—	R
d1.4.44	Equipment model	Reserved	1	—	R
d1.4.45	Equipment capacity	0.1~1000.0KW	0.1KW	—	R
d1.4.46	Motherboard program version (H)	6000~6999	1	—	R
d1.4.47	Reserved		1	—	R
d1.4.48	Motherboard check date(H)	2009~2100	1	—	R
d1.4.49	Motherboard check date(H)	0101~1231	1	—	R
d1.4.50	Motherboard check serial number	0 ~ 50000	1	—	R

Table 1: Comparison table of multifunctional input terminal (DI/EDI/SDI) functions

S/N	Function	S/N	Function
0	No function	1	Multi-speed control 1
2	Multi-speed control 2	3	Multi-speed control 3
4	Multi-speed control 4	5	FWD jog
6	REV jog	7	Forward (FWD) running command terminal
8	Reverse (REV)running command terminal	9	Acceleration and deceleration time selection 1
10	Acceleration and deceleration time selection 2	11	Running command switching
12	Frequency command switching	13	Fault resetting input (RESET)
14	Emergency stop (EMS)	15	Frequency or Process PID set value ascending (UP)
16	Frequency or Process PID set value descending (DW)	17	UP/DW set frequency clear
18	External equipment fault	19	Three-line running control
20	Stop DC braking command	21	Acceleration and deceleration forbidden
22	Process PID effective	23	Simple PLC multi-stage running effective
24	Swing frequency running effective	25	Compensation PID effective
26	Simple PLC multi-stage running status (when stopping) resetting	27	Swing frequency status resetting (effective when stopping)
28	Multi-stage process PID giving terminal 1	29	Multi-stage Process PID giving terminal 2
30	Multi-stage process PID giving terminal 3	31	Process PID setting selection (switching)
32	Process PID feedback selection (switching)	33	Process PID sleep activation
34	Torque/speed control mode switching	35	Minimum torque limiting set value selection
36	Maximum torque limiting set value selection	37	Overvoltage suppression input
38	Load dynamic balancing effective	39	Reserved
40	RS485 external/Standard operation panel control switching	41	Load motor switching
42	Start permission	43	Running permitted
44	Counter 1 clock terminal	45	Counter 2 clock terminal
46	Counter 1 trigger signal	47	Counter 2 trigger signal
48	Counter 1 resetting terminal	49	Counter 2 resetting terminal
50	Counter 1 gated signal	51	Counter 2 gated signal
52	Timer 1 trigger signal	53	Timer 2 trigger signal
54	Timer 3 trigger signal	55	Timer 1 resetting
56	Timer 2 resetting	57	Timer 3 resetting
58	Timer 1 gated signal	59	Timer 2 gated signal
60	Timer 3 gated signal	61	Single pulse accumulative length value resetting
62	Motor temperature detection contact input	63	Compensation PID parameter selection1
64	Compensation PID parameter selection 2	65	Magnetic flux brake
66	Position pulse counting (PG pulse counting accumulation) resetting	67	Automatic shifting (Spindle shifting jog running)
68	Servo pulse command direction (Fin)	69	Servo control effective
70	Spindle positioning origin photoelectric signal input	71	Spindle origin homing
72	Spindle positioning selection 1	73	Spindle positioning selection 2
74	Spindle positioning selection 3	75	Position gain selection
76	Reserved	77	Servo command pulse value clear
78	Tapping input	79~96	Reserved
97	0.1Hz~100.00KHz pulse input(DI9/Fin Effective)	98	Pulse input(DI9/Fin Effective)

Table 2: Comparison table of multifunctional output terminal (DO/EDO/SDO) variables

S/N	Function	S/N	Function
0	No definition	1	Inverter running ready (normal voltage, no emergency stop input)
2	Inverter is running	3	Equipment normal (fault-free running)
4	Equipment fault (trip)	5	Equipment alarm
6	Equipment fault or alarm	7	REV running
8	Running command input (irrelevant with start or running signal)	9	Running at zero speed
10	Speed not at zero	11	Inverter under voltage stop
12	Terminal control effective	13	In the process of acceleration running
14	In the process of deceleration running	15	Braking power generation running status
16	Determined by standard MODBUS Fieldbus	17	Determined by Extended communication module
18	Frequency arrival	19	Completion of current stage of multi-stage running (0.5s pulse)
20	Multi-stage running completed (0.5s pulse)	21	Multi-stage running completed (continuous level output)
22	Multi-stage running cycle completed (0.5s pulse)	23	Swing frequency upper and lower limit
24	Encoder direction positive (A pulse surpassing B pulse)	25	Encoder direction negative (A behind B)
26	Monitor 1 input variable below the lower limit (Void when above the upper limit)	27	Monitor 1 input variable above the upper limit(void when below the lower limit)
28	Monitor 1 input variable between the upper limit and the lower limit	29	Monitor 2 variable below the lower limit (void when above the upper limit)
30	Monitor 2 input variable above the upper limit(void when below the lower limit)	31	Monitor 2 input variable between the upper limit and the lower limit
32	Monitor 3 input variable below the lower limit(void when above the upper limit)	33	Monitor 3 input variable above the upper limit (void when below the lower limit)
34	Monitor 3 input variable between the upper limit and the lower limit	35	Position reached (Servo or spindle control)
36	Analog input AI1 wire breakage detection effective	37	Analog input AI2 wire breakage detection effective
38	Analog input AI3 wire breakage detection effective	39	Reserved
40	Counter 1 output signal 1	41	Counter 1 output signal 2
42	Counter 2 output model 1	43	Counter 2 output signal 2
44	Timer 1 output signal 1	45	Timer 1 output signal 2
46	Timer 2 output signal 1	47	Timer 2 output signal 2
48	Timer 3 output signal 1	49	Timer 3 output signal 2
50	Extension modules retained	51	Extension modules retained
52	Extension modules retained	53	Extension modules retained
54	Extension modules retained	55	DI1 terminal status effective
56	DI2 terminal status effective	57	DI3 terminal status effective
58	DI4 terminal status effective	59	DI5 terminal status effective
60	DI6 terminal status effective	61	DI7 terminal status effective
62	DI8 terminal status effective	63	Terminal as frequency output (only applicable to DO3/FO terminal)
64	SDO1 LDI	65	SDO2 LDI
66	SDO1⊙SDO2 AND	67	SDO3⊙SDO4 AND
68	SDO5⊙SDO6 AND	69	SDO3⊕SDO4 OR
70	SDO5⊕SDO6 OR	71	SDO7⊕SDO8 OR



➤ Direction will not be considered for comparison of monitor variables

Table 3: Comparison table of monitor variables

S/N	Monitoring Parameter Variable	100% full-scale output
0	Output frequency (rotor synchronous frequency)	Upper limiting frequency
1	Motor Revolution	Upper limiting frequency*60/pairs of motor poles
2	Output current	250%*Inverter rated current
3	Output torque	300% rated torque
4	Output voltage	Motor rated voltage (reference voltage in V/F mode)
5	Output power	2* motor rated power
6	Maximum temperature of the equipment	150.0°C
7	Voltage at the DC side	1000V (single phase 500V)
8	Motor temperature/ PTC resistance	500.0°C / 5000Ω
9	Frequency setting channel set value	Upper limiting frequency
10	Speed command	Upper limiting frequency*60/pairs of motor poles
11	Torque command	300% rated torque
12	Target operating frequency	Upper limiting frequency
13	Reserved	——
14	Speed adjuster deviation	Upper limiting frequency*60/pairs of motor poles
15	Speed adjuster output	300.0%
16	Process PID setting	100.0%
17	Process PID feedback	100.0%
18	Process PID deviation value	200.0%
19	Process PID output	100.0%
20	Compensation PID setting	100.0%
21	Compensation PID feedback	100.0%
22	Compensation PID deviation	200.0%
23	Compensation PID output	100.0%
24	AI1 input (0.00~10.00)	10.00 V
25	AI2 input (0.00~20.00)	20.00mA
26	AI3 input (-10.00~10.00)	10.00V
27	Fin input	Maximum input frequency
28	Current liner speed (Fin calculation)	Maximum permitted liner speed
29	Accumulative counted length (liner speed accumulation)	Maximum counted length
30	Counter 1 value	Counter 1 set value 2
31	Counter 2 value	Counter 2 set value 2
32	Timer 1 value	Timer 1 timing cycle
33	Timer 2 value	Timer 2 timing cycle
34	Timer 3 value	Timer 3 timing cycle
35	Built-in Fieldbus set value 1	10000
36	Extended communication module set value 1	10000
37	Built-in Fieldbus set value 2	30000
38	Extended communication module set value 2	30000
39~44	Reserve	
45	Fixed output (current or voltage)	20.00mA (10.00V)

Chapter 7 Description of specific functions

Remark: Unless otherwise especially instructed, the status of terminals will be defined under positive logic conditions ("ON" terminals effective, and "OFF" terminals void).

7.1 System management (group F0.0)

Group **F0.0** parameters are especially used to define system control parameters, e.g. locking, initializing, motor type and control mode as well as display of monitoring parameters, etc.

F0.0.00 Macro parameters	Setting range: 0000~2006	Factory default: 0000
---------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

Macro parameters include application macro, system macro and special macro; The application macro allows for conveniently setting and curing multiple common parameters and simplifying parameter setting for general applications; the system macro allows for conveniently switching equipment's work mode and automatically defining partial parameters; The special macro allows for internal integration and settings for special functions or parameters with one key according to typical industrial applications.

Macro parameters are not influenced by the initializing parameter **F0.0.07** and partial macro-related parameters are locked at specific value or within specific range.

__ _ X : Application macro

0: Void

Customized settings, all parameters can be customized without being influenced by the application macro parameters.

1: Digital setting of keypad control

Refer to Figure 7-1 for the application wiring diagram, and refer to Table 7-1 for macro- related parameters.

2: Shuttle setting keypad control

Refer to Figure 7-1 for the application wiring diagram, and refer to Table 7-1 for macro- related parameters.

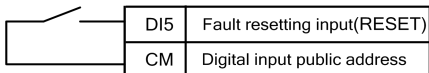


Figure 7-1 Wiring diagram for panel operation digital/shuttle setting

3: 2 wire Control 1/A11 setting

Refer to Figure 7-2-A for the application wiring diagram, and refer to Table 7-1 for macro- related parameters.

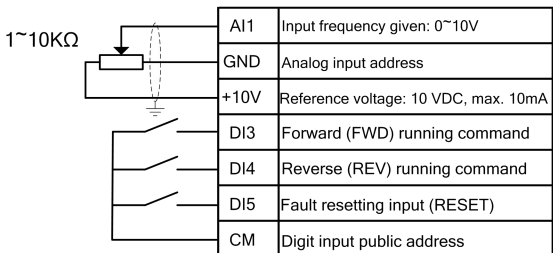


Figure 7-2-A 2 wire control 1/A11 setting wiring diagram

4: 2 wire Control 2/AI1 setting

Refer to Figure 7-2-B for the application wiring diagram, and refer to Table 7-1 for macro- related parameters.

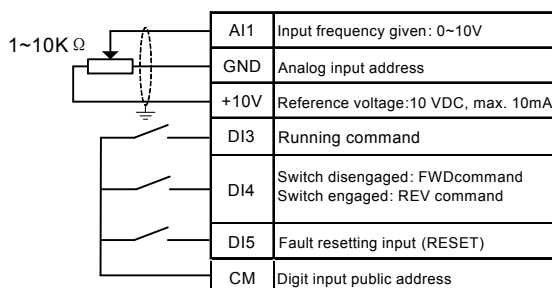


Figure 7-2-B 2 wire control 2/AI1 setting wiring diagram

5: 3 wire control 1/AI1 setting

Refer to Figure 7-3 for the application wiring diagram, and refer to Table 7-1 for macro- related parameters.

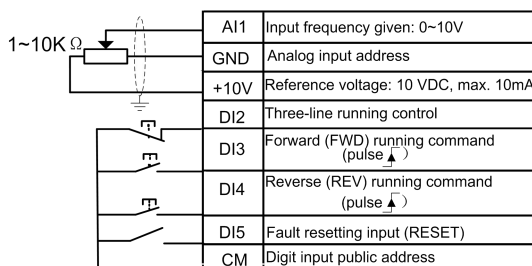


Figure 7-3 3 wire control 1/AI1 setting wiring diagram

Table 7-1: Table Application Macro Association Self-Setting Parameters

Parameters	Application Macro 1	Application Macro 2	Application Macro 3	Application Macro 4	Application Macro 5	Remarks
F0.1.15	0	0	0	0	0	Locked
F0.1.16	0	0	0	0	0	Locked
F0.1.18	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	Locked
F0.2.25	2 (0~2)	3	9	9	9	Locked
F0.3.33	0	0	1	1	1	Locked
F0.3.35	—	—	0	1	2	Locked
F0.4.37	0	0	0	0	0	Locked
F0.4.38	0	0	0	0	0	Locked
F3.0.01	—	—	—	—	19	Locked
F3.0.02	—	—	7	7	7	Locked
F3.0.03	—	—	8	8	8	Locked
F3.0.04	13	13	13	13	13	Locked
F6.1.15	0	0	0	0	0	Relocatable
F6.2.46	0	0	0	0	0	Relocatable
F7.0.00	0	0	0	0	0	Relocatable
F8.0.00	0	0	0	0	0	Relocatable
F9.0.00	0	0	0	0	0	Relocatable
FA.2.25	0	0	0	0	0	Relocatable

6: Machine tool spindle drive/AI1 setting

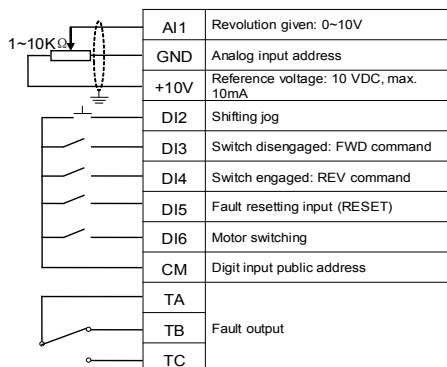


Figure 7-4 Machine tool spindle driving macro AI1 setting wiring diagram

Associated macro parameters

Associated parameters	F0.0.09	F0.2.25	F0.3.33	F0.3.35	F0.4.37	F0.4.38	F3.0.01	F3.0.02	F3.0.03
Macro set value	0000	9	1	0	0	0	67	7	8
Value locking	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Associated parameters	F3.0.04	F3.0.05	F3.1.21	F5.3.32	F6.1.15	F6.2.46	F7.0.00	F8.0.00	F8.3.39
Macro set value	13	41	4	1	0	0	0	0	0
Value locking	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N

X _ _ _ : System macro (0~F)

The system macro cannot be modified unless correct modification password [F0.0.02] is set. Refer to the instructions of **F0.0.02** parameter for details. Modification of system macro will automatically lead to initialization of all functional parameters (Group **FF** parameters will not be initialized unless **FF.0.00** allows for initialization).

0: Standard operation mode

1: Steady load operation

Applicable to steady load (e.g. fan and pump load). In this mode, the load capacity of the equipment will be automatically increased by one power grade, and the initialization value of motor parameters will be also automatically increased by one function grade.

F0.0.01 Parameter display and modification (H)	Setting range: 0000~9014	Factory default: 0001
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

_ _ _ X : Parameter display mode

0: Display all parameters

1: Display effective configuration parameters

To automatically hide the parameters irrelevant with current command or hardware according to different parameter setting commands or different current hardware configuration (e.g. various expansion boards), so as to

simplify field commissioning.



- F0.0.00 and F0.0.01 are not limited by the parameter display mode, and will not be concealed in any display mode. The panel displaying parameters concealed due to parameter display mode will not influence the access to the concealed parameter via communication port.

2: Display parameters different from factory default

3: Display modified and stored parameters after power-on this time

4: Display modified and un-stored parameters after power-on this time

_ _ X _ : Parameter modification mode

The macro parameter **F0.0.00** is also limited by this function.

0: Effective and permanently stored after modification

Parameters modified will be immediately stored in the memory and permanent saved, and will not lose after power-off.

1: Effective after modification but not stored, and getting lost after power-off

Parameters modified are effective but are not saved in the memory. And parameters modified will automatically restore to the values saved in the memory after completion of relevant operation or power-off. This function is used for tentative modification of undetermined parameters for field commissioning; After commissioning, all modified and unsaved parameters can be displayed for view separately (when the unit of this parameter is set to 4), and batch recovery or batch storage will be conducted (when the kilobit of this parameter is set to 2 or 5).

X _ _ _ : Batch recovery or batch storage of parameters

The macro parameter **F0.0.00** is not subject to the influence of this function.

2: Abandon modifying all unsaved parameters (restoring to original value)

All unsaved parameters will be rapidly restored to the values stored in the memory with one key.

This function can only be used when the device is stopped. If this function is activated when the device is running, the inverter will send alarm **aL.058** and give up operation.

5: Batch storing all modified and unsaved parameters

All modified and unsaved parameters will be saved in the memory.

9: Resume all parameters to initial values at the last power-on

To restore all parameters to the initial values at the last power-on. Even after initialization, all parameters can be restored to the preliminary power-on values with this function. This function is used to make correction during field commissioning when the system works abnormally because no one knows which parameter is modified incorrectly at the current power-on.

This function can only be used when the device is stopped. If this function is activated when the device is running, the inverter will send alarm **aL.059** and give up operation.

F0.0.02 Macro-call parameter modification password	Setting range: 0~65535	Factory default: 0
---	-------------------------------	---------------------------

For modifying the system macro setting (kilobit) of the macro parameter **F0.0.00**, the modification password 1580 must be entered. This password will automatically disappear after 30 seconds. The macro parameter cannot be modified once within 30 seconds upon input of the password. If it is intended to make modification once again, the password should be entered again.

F0.0.07 Parameter initialization	Setting range: 0~8	Factory default: 0
---	---------------------------	---------------------------

When the macro parameter **F0.0.00** is effective, the self-setting parameter relevant with the macro will not be influenced by the initialization. Refer to the function description of **F0.0.00**.

FF group parameters will not be initialized by this parameter until the kilobit of **FF.0.00** parameter is set to 1.

F0.0.08 Parameter copying (H)	Setting range: 0000~0013	Factory default: 0000
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__ _ X : Upload and download

0: No action

1: Parameter upload

The inverter will upload parameter values in the control board memory to the panel memory.

2: Parameter download

The parameter values in the panel memory will be downloaded to the control board memory.

3: Parameter download (except for motor parameters/F2 Group)

The parameter values in the panel memory will be downloaded to the control board memory (motor parameters will not be downloaded).

Note: when the inverter is running, the action of upload and download is forbidden, and the setting for this parameter will not take effect.

During parameter upload and download, all keys except for **STOP** key on the panel are temporarily locked. Press **STOP** key to forcibly terminate upload and download; when the upload operation is forcibly terminated, the parameters uploaded will be stored in the panel memory, and the parameters not uploaded will be kept unchanged; when the download operation is forcibly terminated, the inverter will give up all parameters already downloaded into the control board memory, and automatically restore to the values before download.

The alarm signal relevant with this parameter is as below:

aL.071 – Parameter unload failed. Uploaded parameters will be saved in the panel memory, and parameters not uploaded will be kept unchanged.

aL.072 – Uploaded parameter storage failed. The panel memory is damaged or the memory is unavailable.

aL.074 – Parameter download failed. Terminate the parameter download process, and all parameters downloaded will be automatically restored to the values before download.

aL.075 – The board memory parameters are not consistent with the frequency inverter parameters in terms of the version.

aL.076 – There are no effective parameters in the board memory.

aL.077 – Some set values among the panel parameters are out of the allowable range. Terminate the parameter download process, and all parameters downloaded will be automatically restored to the values before download.

F0.0.09 Selection of motor type and control mode (H)	Setting range: 0000~3131	Factory default: 0000
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__ _ X/ _ X _ _ : Motor type selection

0: Common motor

1: Asynchronous servo motor dedicated for the spindle

Closed-loop vector control mode must be adopted, and specified motor should be used.

__ _ X _/X _ _ _ : Control Mode

0: SVC (open-loop vector control) mode

The vector control operation mode without the speed sensor features low frequency, high torque, steady speed and

high precision. It can precisely control the motor's speed and torque, and is often used in the occasion in which **V/F** control mode cannot meet the requirements of high-performance universal variable speed drive.

1: VC (closed-loop vector control) mode

The vector control operation mode with the speed sensor is applicable to the occasion in which the torque response is faster and the control precision of torque and speed is higher. It enables for certain precision of position control so as to achieve control over simple servo positioning in the process of dragging the asynchronous motor. When dragging the synchronous motor, high precision of position service control (optional function) can be achieved.

2: V/F control

It refers to the constant control voltage/frequency ratio. It can be used to the occasion in which the performance is not required to be very high, and is also applicable to the occasion in which single inverter drives several motors.

3: V/F separated control

It is used for special application occasions, and is also applicable to V/F separated control for torque motors. In this mode, the output voltage and output frequency of the inverter have no connection with each other, and are set separately by users.

In the case of V/F separated control, F0.0.25 is forced set to the frequency preset channel, and F0.2.26 is forcedly set to the voltage giving channel.

Note: This control mode cannot be used for common asynchronous motors and synchronous motors. The equipment may be damaged if this mode is mistakenly set.

F0.0.11 Keypad operation (H)	Setting range: 0000~0224	Factory default: 0000
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__X : Locking of panel keys

After the key locking function is set with this function, the locking will not take effect until **ESC** key is pressed to back to the normal control mode. For details, please refer to **5.2 Basic Functions and Operating Methods of the Panel**.

0: Not locked

All keys are effective on the operating panel.

1: All keys except for UP/DW (shuttle), STOP and RUN are locked.

Only **UP/DW** (shuttle), **STOP** and **RUN** keys on the operating panel are effective.

2: All keys except STOP and RUN are locked.

Only the **STOP** and **RUN** keys on the operating panel are effective.

3: All keys except STOP are locked.

Only the **STOP** key on the operating panel is effective.

4: Locking all keys

All keys are void on the operating panel.

__X : STOP button function

0: The modes other than the panel control are void.

Only when the running command channel is the operating panel is it effective to press down the **STOP** key.

1: Press STOP key in any control mode for deceleration stop.

No matter the running command preset channel is the operating panel, external terminals or the communication port, when **STOP** key is pressed, the inverter will control the motor to achieve deceleration stop according to the current effective deceleration time. The priority of this stop mode is higher than that of parameter **F0.4.38**.

2: Press STOP key in any control mode for free stop.

No matter the running command preset channel is the operating panel, external terminals or the communication port, when **STOP** key is pressed, the inverter will stop output, and the motor stop in free sliding mode. The priority of this stop mode is higher than that of parameter **F0.4.38**.

_ X _ : Function of PANEL/REMOTE keys

When the functional setting of **PANEL/REMOTE** keys is effective, and in the normal monitoring mode, the **PANEL/REMOTE** keys can be used to switch the running command channel. The switching status is not saved, and will get lost after power-off. The running command channel for the inverter is still the operating panel after power-on once again.

If **PANEL/REMOTE** keys are used to circularly switch to desired running command channel, it is required to press "OK" key for confirmation within 5s. Otherwise, it will not get effective.

The switching sequence of the running command channel: Operating panel running command channel (**PANEL/REMOTE** light on)→external terminal operating running command channel (**PANEL/REMOTE** light off) → communication port running command channel (**PANEL/REMOTE** light off) → operating panel running command channel (**PANEL/REMOTE** light on).

0: Void

The running command channel cannot be switched with **PANEL/REMOTE** key.

1: Effective at stop

PANEL/REMOTE key is effective at the stop status, but it is void to switch the running command channel with this key when the device is running.

2: Continuous effective

PANEL/REMOTE keys can be used to switch the running command channel both at the stop and running status.



- The command channel switching at the running status of the inverter should be used carefully. Be sure the safety before operation. If the running command (FWD/REV/JOG) after switching is inconsistent with that before switching, the inverter will change its current running status (stop, run or REV), which may cause accident.

F0.0.12 Principal monitoring parameter (H)	Setting range: d0.00~d0.55 / d1.00~d1.55	Factory default: d0.00
F0.0.13 Auxiliary monitoring parameter 1 (H)	Setting range: d0.00~d0.55 / d1.00~d1.55	Factory default: d0.02
F0.0.14 Auxiliary monitoring parameter 2 (H)	Setting range: d0.00~d0.55 / d1.00~d1.55	Factory default: d0.04

This group of parameters is used to determine display contents on the operating panel at the status monitoring mode, and bitwise operation must be followed for setting.

The **Principal monitoring parameter** is used to determine display contents on the main display column of the **LED** panel, or the first display parameter on the **LCD** panel (signal parameter display).

The **auxiliary monitoring parameter 1** is used to determine display contents on the auxiliary display column of the **LED** panel, or the second display parameter on the **LCD** panel (dual parameter display) when the inverter is running.

The **auxiliary monitoring parameter 2** is used to determine display contents on the auxiliary display column of the **LED** panel, or the third display parameter on the **LCD** panel (three parameter display) when the inverter is stopped.

The corresponding physical quantity of the display data can be referred to the status monitoring parameter table. When the inverter is conducting detection of motor parameters, the auxiliary display will display the value of the current output current, which is not restricted by the parameter **F0.0.13**.

7.2 Running command selection (group f0.1)

F0.1.15 Control place selection	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default: 0
--	-------------------------------	---------------------------

This function defines three kinds of modes for selecting the control command source, as shown in Figure 7-7:

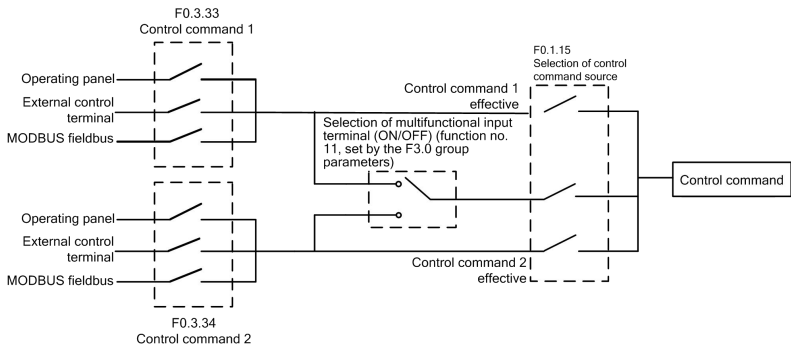


Figure 7-7 Sketch of selecting the control command sources

F0.1.16 Selection of frequency set value	Setting range: 0~14	Factory default: 0
---	----------------------------	---------------------------

The **V800** series inverter has two frequency setting sources (corresponding parameters **F0.2.25**, **F0.2.26**). This parameter determines 14 kinds of combined calculation methods for the two frequency setting sources. Figure 7-8 shows the structure sketch of the frequency setting channel.

The actual running direction of the inverter is the result of "XOR" between the set value direction (always being FWD direction for single polarity setting) and the running command direction.

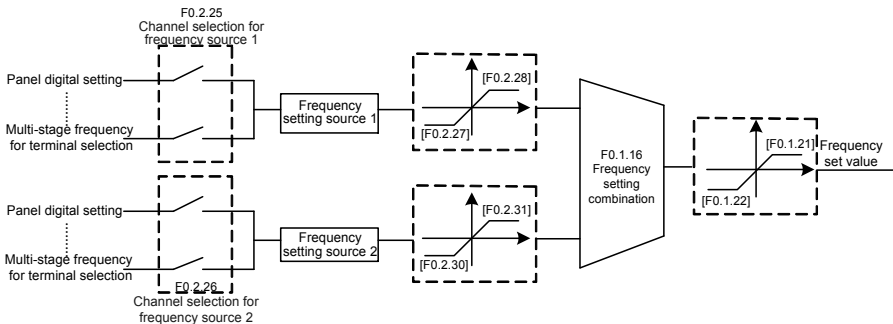


Figure 7-8 Structure sketch of frequency setting channel

0: Channel 1 Hz setting

The frequency setting source 1 is independently effective. In this case, the frequency set value is solely determined by the frequency setting source 1 and is named as the set value 1.

1: Channel 2 Hz setting

The frequency setting source 2 is independently effective. In this case, the frequency set value is solely determined by the frequency setting source 2 and is named as the set value 2.

2: Select Channel 1 or 2 Hz via input terminal (Function No. 12)

The frequency setting source is selected by the functional input terminal (Function No. 12) and the terminal function is set with F3.0 group parameters.

3: Selected via control place selection

The selection of frequency setting source is bound with the start-stop command. In this case, the running command source is bound with the frequency setting source. That is to say, if the running command source 1 is effective, the frequency setting source 1 is also effective; and if the running command source 2 is effective, the frequency setting source 2 is effective as well.

4: Channel 1 + Channel 2

Frequency set value = set value 1 + set value 2

The frequency combination curves under different status are shown as below:

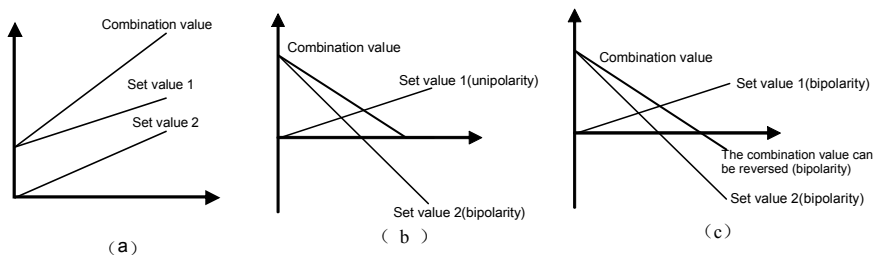


Figure 7-9-A Frequency combination sketch 1



- The combination result will only be in bipolarity when only two setting sources are set in bipolarity way. (Figure c)

5: Channel 1 amplified by Channel 2

Frequency set value = set value 1 * (1 + set value 2 / [F0.2.31])

The sketch of frequency combination setting is shown as below:

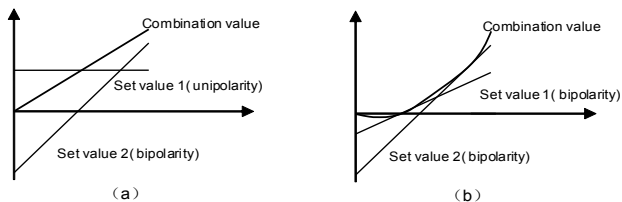


Figure 7-9-B Frequency combination sketch 2



- The combination results will only be in bipolarity when the setting source 1 is set in bipolarity way. (Figure b)

6: Channel 1 - Channel

Frequency set value = setting 1 - set value 2

The sketch of frequency combination setting is shown as below:

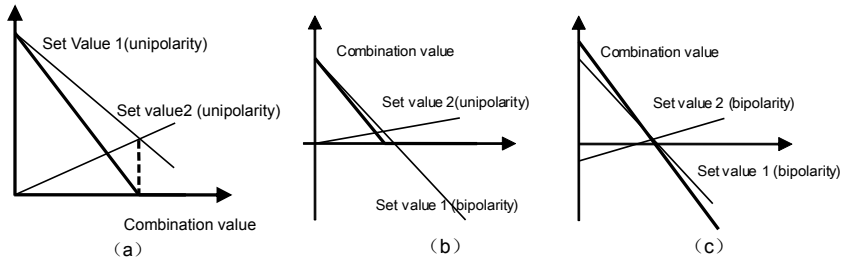


Figure 7-9-C Frequency combination sketch 3



- The combination result will only be in bipolarity when only two setting sources are set in bipolarity way. (Figure c)

7: Channel 1 reduced by Channel 2

Frequency set value = set value 1 * (1-set value 2 /[F0.2.31])

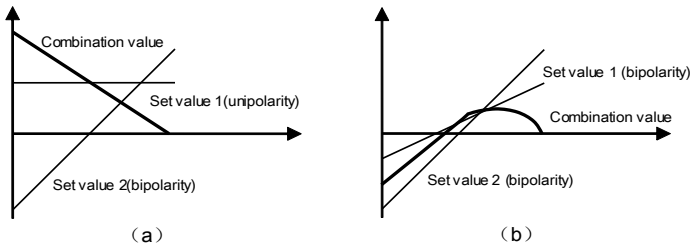


Figure 7-9-D Frequency combination sketch 4



- The combination results will only be in bipolarity when the setting source 1 is set in bipolarity way. (Figure b)

8: Channel 1 reduced by Channel 2

Frequency set value = set value 1 * set value 2 /[F0.2.31]

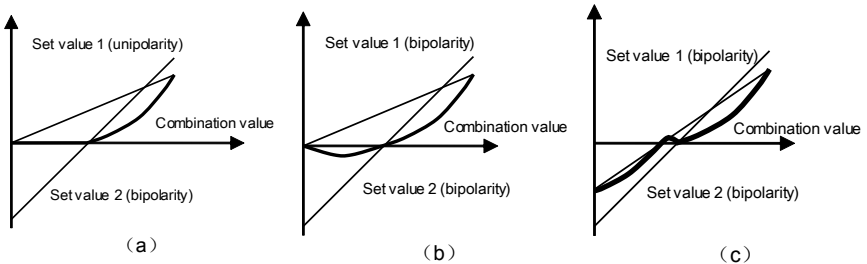


Figure 7-9-E Frequency combination sketch 5



- The combination results will only be in bipolarity when the setting source 1 is set in bipolarity way. (Figure b, Figure c)

9: Highest value Channel 1 or Channel 2

Frequency set value = **Max** (|set value 1|, |set value 2|)

The maximum value between the absolute values of set value 1 and set value 2 is taken as the frequency set value, and the combination value must be unipolar.

10: Lowest value Channel 1 or Channel 2

Frequency set value = **Min** (|set value 1|, |set value 2|)

The minimum value between the absolute values of set value 1 and set value 2 is taken as the frequency set value, and the combination value must be unipolar.

11: $\sqrt{(\text{Channel 1}) + \sqrt{(\text{Channel 2})}}$

Frequency set value = $\sqrt{|\text{set value 1}| + \sqrt{|\text{set value 2}|}}$

The frequency set value is the total of the square root of the absolute value of set value 1 and set value 2, and the combination value must be unipolar.

12: $\sqrt{(\text{Channel 1} + \text{Channel 2})}$

Frequency set value = $\sqrt{|\text{set value 1}| + |\text{set value 2}|}$

The frequency set value is square root of the absolute value of the total of set value 1 and set value 2, and the combination value must be unipolar.

13: (Channel1 x Scaling 1) + (Channel 2 x Scaling 2)

Frequency set value = $\text{set value 1} * [\text{F0.1.18}] + \text{set value 2} * [\text{F0.1.19}]$

Only when the two setting channels are both in the mode of bipolar setting, the combination results will show the characteristics of the bipolar setting.

14: (Channel1 x Scaling 1) - (Channel 2 x Scaling 2)

Set value $1 * [\text{F0.1.18}] - \text{set value 2} * [\text{F0.1.19}]$

Only when the two setting channels are both in the mode of bipolar setting, the combination results will show the characteristics of the bipolar setting.

Remarks: after selecting the combination way of the frequency set value, the following aspects must be considered in order to get correct frequency set value

- To set **F0.2.25** (channel selection for the frequency setting source 1) and **F0.2.26** (channel selection for the frequency setting source 2) to determine the given channel of the frequency setting source;
- To set **F0.1.18** (action coefficient of the frequency setting source 1) and **F0.1.19** (action coefficient of the frequency setting source 2) to determine the weighting coefficient of the frequency setting source;
- To Set **F0.2.27** (minimum set value of frequency source 1) and **F0.2.28** (maximum set value of frequency source 1) to limit the range of frequency set value of the frequency source 1, and to set **F0.2.30** (minimum set value of frequency source 2) and **F0.2.31** (maximum set value of frequency source 2) to limit the range of frequency set value of the frequency source 2;
- To set **F0.1.21** (upper limiting frequency) and **F0.1.22** (lower limiting frequency) to limit the range of the frequency set value.

F0.1.17 Running direction (H)	Setting range: 0000~0021	Factory default: 0000
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

___X : Direction switching

0: Void

The running direction is controlled by the direction command.

1: Negate

The running direction is opposite to that directed by the direction command.

__X_ : Direction locking

0: Void

The running direction is controlled by the direction command.

1: FWD locking

The motor will run in FWD direction No matter the FWD running command or REV running command is given.

2: REV locking

The motor will run in REV direction no matter the FWD running command or REV running command is given.



- The function of "Direction locking" (__X_) has precedence over the function of "Direction switching" (___X).
- It can be set when the inverter is running. Be sure that the operation is safe.

F0.1.20 Maximum output frequency	Setting range: 10.00~300.00Hz/100.0~400.0Hz	Factory default: 60.00
F0.1.21 Upper limit frequency	Setting range: [F0.1.22]~Min (300.00Hz,[F0.1.20])	Factory default: 50.00
F0.1.22 Lower limit frequency	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 0.0

The maximum output frequency is the allowable output maximum frequency of the inverter as set by users (maximum stator synchronous frequency of the asynchronous motor); The upper limiting frequency is the maximum frequency allowed for running of the asynchronous motor as set by users (the maximum frequency corresponding to the mechanical rotor of the asynchronous motor). The maximum output frequency must be higher than the upper limiting frequency; The lower limiting frequency is the minimum frequency allowed for running of the motor as set by users.

The maximum output frequency, upper limiting frequency and lower limiting frequency shall carefully set according to the actual nameplate parameters and operating status of the controlled motor and. The relationship among the three kinds of frequency is shown in Figure 7-10.

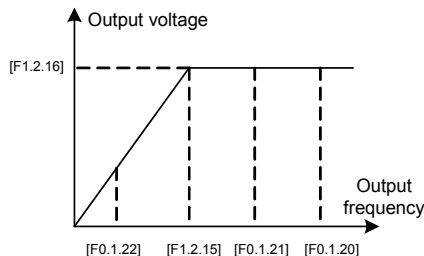


Figure 7-10 Frequency parameter definition sketch



- [F1.2.15] in Figure 7-10 represents the motor's reference frequency, and [F1.2.16] represents the motor's reference voltage.

F0.1.23 FWD jog frequency	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 10.00
F0.1.24 REV jog frequency	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 10.00

Jog running is a special running mode of the inverter. No matter the inverter is initially stopped or running, as long as the jog command is inputted, the inverter will transit to the jog frequency according to the preset jog acceleration and deceleration time. However, it is also influenced by the startup frequency and startup frequency duration as well as the functions of DC band-type braking, startup delay and startup pre-excitation.

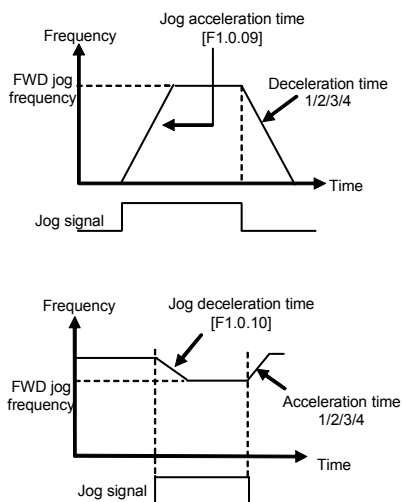


Figure 7-11 FWD jog running curve

7.3 Frequency setup (group f0.2)

F0.2.25 Frequency setting channel 1	Setting range: 00~29	Factory default: 2
F0.2.26 Frequency setting channel 2	Setting range: 00~29	Factory default: 0

The frequency set value determined via the frequency setting source 1 is named as the set value 1; And the frequency set value determined via the frequency setting source 2 is named as the set value 2.

0: Keypad entry 1 (keep value when stopped)

The frequency set value is determined by the value of the parameter **F0.2.29** (or **F0.3.32**). In the normal monitoring mode, it is applicable to make direct modification with the \wedge and \vee keys (or shuttle) on the panel. The modified values will not be saved and will get lost after power-on.

1: Keypad entry 2 (go to zero when stopped)

Similar to the case of "0" as above, the inverter will automatically clear current set value after stop.

2: Keypad entry 3 (keep value at power off)

Similar to the case of "0,1" as above, the inverter will automatically save the current set value after power-off, and take the saved value as the initial set value after power-on once again.

3: Setting of wheel potentiometer

Its function is equivalent to the high-precision panel potentiometer. The set resolution is the minimum quantitative value (e.g. 0.01 Hz), and data are saved in the internal memory of the panel.

4: Remote UP/DW 1 (keep value at power off)

Multifunctional terminals are used to directly increase, decrease (Function No. 15, 16) or clear (Function No. 17) the set frequency. The terminal function is selected by parameters **F3.0.00 ~ F3.0.08**. The set data will not be saved and will get lost after power-off.

The relationship between the status setting combination of the three external switches and the current frequency set value of the inverter is shown in Figure 7-2.

Preconditions for below instruction: multifunctional terminal **DI1** frequency or process **PID** setting **UP** function ([F3.0.00]=15), **DI2** sets frequency or process **PID** **DW** function ([F3.0.01]=16), and **DI5** sets **UP/DW** with frequency clear function ([F3.0.04]=17).

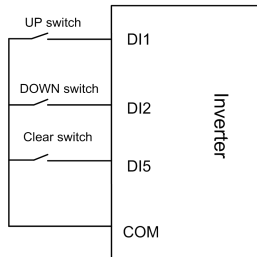


Figure 7-12 Terminal UP/DW wiring sketch

Table 7-2 External Switch Status and Current Frequency Set Value of the Inverter

Terminal Status			Set frequency
DI5	DI2	DI1	
OFF	OFF	OFF	Maintained
OFF	OFF	ON	Increased
OFF	ON	OFF	Decreased
OFF	ON	ON	Maintained
ON	Any	Any	Zero

5: Remote UP/DW 2 (go to zero when stopped)

Similar to the case of "4" as above, the inverter will automatically clear current set value after stop.

6: Remote UP/DW 3 (keep value at power-off)

Similar to the case of "4" as above, the set value will be saved automatically after power-off, and the initial set data will be the set value at the last power-off when the inverter is powered on once again.

7: Remote UP/DW bipolar setting 1 (keep bipolar when stopped)

The basic operation is simpler to that as stated in "the" and the difference is that: in the mode of "4", the set frequency is unsigned values (not containing direction information), and the setting range of the frequency is: 0~upper limiting frequency; while in the mode of "7", the set frequency is signed values (containing direction changing

information), and the setting range of the frequency is: - upper limiting frequency upper limiting frequency.

The inverter's actual running direction is according to "XOR" calculation of the command direction (**FWD**, **REV**) and the set frequency direction.

8: Remote UP/DW bipolar setting 2 (keep at power-off)

The basic operation is similar to the case of "7" as above. The set value will be saved automatically after power-off, and the initial set data will be the set value at the last power-off when the inverter is powered on once again.

9: Analog input AI1

The frequency set value is given via the analog input AI1; For relevant characteristics please see the instructions of the parameters F4.0.00 and F4.0.01.

10: Analog input AI2

The frequency set value is given via the analog input AI2; For relevant characteristics please see the instructions of the parameters F4.0.02 and F4.0.03.

11: Analog input AI3

The frequency set value is given via the analog input AI3; For relevant characteristics please see the instructions of the parameters F4.0.04 and F4.0.05.

12: AI1 bipolar setting

The frequency set value is given by the bipolarity of the analog AI1 ([F4.0.00]~[F4.0.01]), and AI1 contains the direction changing information. For relevant characteristics please see the instructions of the parameters F4.0.00 and F4.0.01.

13: AI3 bipolar setting

The frequency set value is given by the bipolarity of the analog AI3 ([F4.0.04]~[F4.0.05]), and AI3 contains the direction changing information. For relevant characteristics please see the instructions of the parameters F4.0.04 and F4.0.05.

14: Pulse follower input

The frequency set value is given by the pulse input **Fin**.

15: Pulse follower bipolar input

The frequency set value is given by the pulse input **Fin** bipolarity, and the pulse signal contains the direction changing information.

16: MODBUS communications 1 relative (relative set value)

The frequency set value is given by the principal computer through **MODBUS** fieldbus (**RS485** communication port), and the set value (-10000 ~ 10000) is relative data and is corresponding to the upper limiting frequency.

17: MODBUS communication 2 absolute (absolute set value)

The frequency set value is given by the principal computer through **MODBUS** fieldbus (**RS485** communication port), and the set value (-30000 ~ 30000) is absolute value neglecting the decimal point) (e.g. the value 1500 corresponds to the set frequency **150.00Hz** in general mode.)

18: AI1+AI2

The frequency set value = the frequency value corresponding to the analog input AI1 + the frequency value corresponding to the analog input AI2

19: AI2+AI3

The frequency set value = the frequency value corresponding to the analog input AI2 + the frequency value corresponding to the analog input AI3

20: AI2+pulse input Fin

The frequency set value = the frequency value corresponding to the analog input AI2 + the frequency value corresponding to the pulse input **Fin**

21: AI1*AI2/full scale of AI2 (10V)

The frequency set value = the frequency value corresponding to AI1 *the frequency value corresponding to AI2/the

frequency corresponding to the maximum input of AI2.

22: AI1/AI2

The frequency set value= the frequency value corresponding to AI1/the frequency value corresponding to AI2.

23: Process PID output

The frequency set value is given by the process **PID** output. This option is mainly for the system in which the **PID** running output needs to be combined with other setting channel for running. In general running system, this value does not need to be selected. **PID** output will automatically participate in setting competition according to the frequency setting priority.

24: Compensation PID output

The frequency set value is given by the compensation **PID** output. This option is mainly for the system in which compensation **PID** running output needs to be combined with other setting channel for running. In general running system, this value does not need to be selected. The compensation **PID** output will automatically participate in setting competition according to the frequency setting priority.

25: Disturbance running frequency

The frequency set value is given by the disturbance running frequency. This option is mainly for the system in which the disturbance running output needs to be combined with other setting channel for running. In general running system, this value does not need to be selected. The disturbance output will automatically participate in setting competition according to the frequency setting priority.

26: Auto preset speeds

The frequency set value is given by the multi-stage running frequency. This option is mainly for the system in which the multi-stage running output needs to be combined with other setting channel for running. In general running system, this value does not need to be selected. The multi-stage running output will automatically participate in setting competition according to the frequency setting priority.

27: Preset speeds via terminals

The frequency set value is determined by the combination status of the four multifunctional input terminals (Function No. 1, 2, 3, 4), and the terminal function is set by the parameters **F3.0.00~F3.0.08**. This way allows for multi-stage frequency running.

28: Simulated analog input SAI1

29: Simulated analog input SAI2

The frequency setting source and set value are determined by the virtual input parameter Group F4.4.50 ~ F4.4.54.

F0.2.27 Min frequency channel 1	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.2.28]	Factory default: 0.0
F0.2.28 Max frequency channel1	Setting range: [F0.2.27]~[F0.1.20]	Factory default: 50.00
F0.2.30 Min frequency channel 2	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.2.31]	Factory default: 0.0
F0.2.31 Max frequency channel 2	Setting range: [F0.2.30]~[F0.1.20]	Factory default: 50.00

This group of parameters confines the range of frequency allowed to be set for two frequency setting sources.

F0.2.29 Keypad incremental value channel 1	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.2.28]	Factory default: 0.0
F0.2.32 Keypad incremental value channel 2	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.2.31]	Factory default: 0.0

The frequency command value at the time of panel digital setting can be directly modified with the ▲, ▼ keys (or shuttle) on the panel in the normal monitoring mode, and the set frequency can be also modified by means of parameter modification.

7.4 Control command source (group f0.3)

F0.3.33 Control command 1	Setting range: 0~2	Factory default: 0
F0.3.34 Control command 2	Setting range: 0~2	Factory default: 0

To select the input physical channel of the inverter control commands (start, stop, forward, reverse, jog and reset, etc).

0: Operating panel

The running control command is given via the operating panel. Please see Chapter 5 for the use of the operating panel.

1: External control terminal

The running control command is given via external control commands, and the terminal function is set by the parameter **F3.0**.

2: MODBUS fieldbus/standard expansion card configuration

The running control command is given via **MODBUS** fieldbus.

F0.3.35 External control quick setup (H)	Setting range: 0000~0013	Factory default: 0000
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__X : Control command action mode

Preconditions for below instructions: the multifunctional terminal **DI3** is for **FWD** command function ([F3.0.02]=7), **DI4** is for **REV** function ([F3.0.03]=8), and **DI5** is for three-line running control function ([F3.0.04]=19).

0: Two wire mode 1

DI4	DI3	Running command
OFF	OFF	Stop
OFF	ON	FWD
ON	OFF	REV
ON	ON	Stop

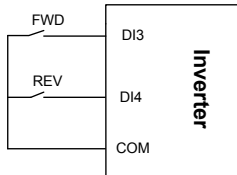


Figure 7-13-A Two wire running mode 1

1: Two wire mode 2

DI4	DI3	Running command
OFF	OFF	Stop
OFF	ON	FWD
ON	OFF	Stop
ON	ON	REV

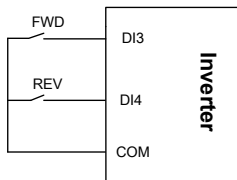


Figure 7-13-B Two wire running mode 2

2: Three wire mode 1

When **K0** is engaged, **FWD** and **REV** control is effective; and when **K0** is unengaged, **FWD** and **REV** control is void, and the inverter will stop.

DI3 terminal ascending edge indicates FWD running command and **DI4** terminal ascending edge indicates REV running command.

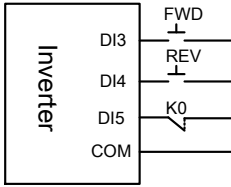


Figure 7-14-A Three wire running mode 1

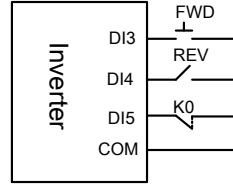


Figure 7-14-B Three wire running mode 2

3: Three wire mode 2

When **K0** is engaged, **FWD** and **REV** control is effective; and when **K0** is unengaged, **FWD** and **REV** control is void, and the inverter will stop.

DI3 terminal ascending edge indicates running command; **DI4** terminal disconnection indicates FWD running command, and **DI4** terminal engagement indicates REV running command.

__X__: Control first starting mode

0: Running signal level starting

1: Running signal rising edge starting

Note : The signal given by two-line mode running command is level signal, and when the terminal is at effective status, the inverter will automatically start after power-one. In the system in which power-on auto start is not expected, it is applicable to select the way of rising edge start.

7.5 Start and stop (group f0.4)

F0.4.37 Start/Running permission(H)	Setting range: 0000~1202	Factory default: 0000
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__X__: Start permission

0: Function closed

The inverter can start without start permission signal.

1: Permitted when the multifunctional terminal is effective

The inverter will not start until it is defined that the multifunctional input terminal (Group **F3.0**) of the start permission (Function No.42) is continuously effective; Start is forbidden when it is void, and the inverter which is running will stop freely (alarm code: **aL.031**). The inverter will not start again until the rising edge of the starting signal is detected.

2: Command word from standard fieldbus (effective when standard expansion card is equipped)

The start permission signal is from the bus command word.

_X__: Running permission

0: Function closed

The inverter can run without running permission signal.

1: Permitted when the multifunctional terminal is effective (Function No. 43)

The inverter will not start until the multifunctional input terminal (Group **F3.0**) which is defined to be running permissible (Function No.43) is effective; If it is void, the inverter will stop in the way defined by the kilometer of this parameter, and will then automatically run again after signal recovery.

2: Command word from standard fieldbus (effective when standard expansion card is equipped)

The start permission signal is from the bus command word.

X _ _ _ : The action mode when the running permission signal is void

0: Free stop

The inverter stops outputting, and the motor stops freely.

1: Deceleration stop

The inverter will stop at deceleration mode according to preset deceleration time.

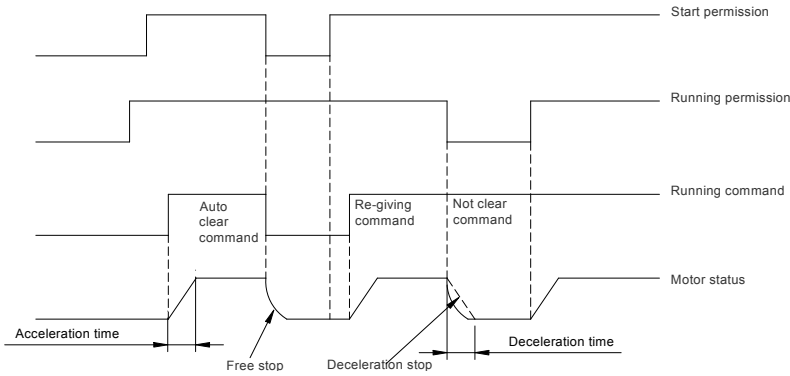


Figure 7-15 Schematic diagram of start process

F0.4.38 Start/Stop Mode(H)	Setting range: 0000~0101	Factory default: 0000
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

_ _ _ X : Start mode

0: Normal start

There are no special requirements for most load start mode. normal start mode will be adopted.

1: Revolution tracking start

It is applicable to the occasion of fault resetting and restart and restart after power-off. The inverter will automatically judge the running speed and direction of the motor, and starts the rotating motor in a smooth and impact-free way according to the detection and judge results; See below figure for the revolution tracking start sketch.

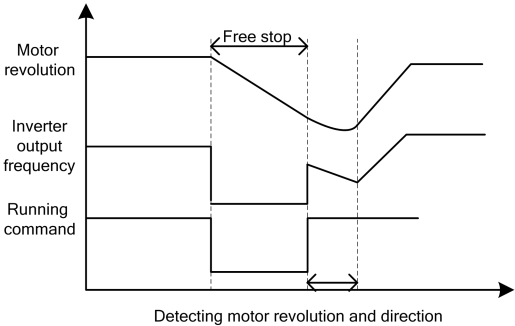


Figure 7-16 Revolution tracking start sketch

_ X _ _ : Stop mode

0: Deceleration stop

In the case of deceleration stop, the inverter will gradually reduce the output frequency according to the preset deceleration time until it stops.

1: Free stop

At stop, the inverter outputs zero frequency and clocks output signals, and the motor will stop in a free sliding way according to inertia.

At free stop, if it is needed to restart the motor before the motor stops running completely, it is necessary to appropriately configure the revolution tracking start function; Otherwise, it will leads to overcurrent or overvoltage fault protection.

If the motor has not stopped completely in deceleration way, because of high load inertia of the field work and short deceleration time, it is then applicable to start DC band-type braking control. See the instructions of the parameter **F0.4.44** for details.

F0.4.39 Start frequency	Setting range: 0.0Hz~50.00Hz	Factory default: 0.50
F0.4.40 Start frequency hold time	Setting range: 0.00~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.0

The start frequency means the initial frequency when the inverter starts up, and is not limited by the lower limiting frequency **F0.1.22**.

The start frequency holding time means the duration of operation at the start frequency, and can be set according to actual needs. When it is set to 0, the start frequency is void.

For the system with high inertia, heavy load and high requirement of start torque, the start frequency can effectively overcome the difficult of start, and the start frequency is also effective in each acceleration process when the inverter switches between forward and reverse running.

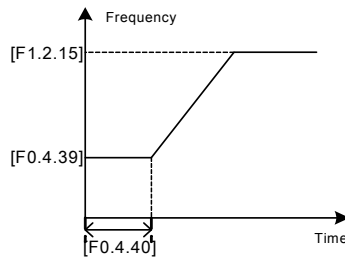


Figure 7-17 Start frequency sketch

F0.4.41 Start pre-excitation current	Setting range: 0.0~100%	Factory default: 35.0
F0.4.42 Start pre-excitation time	Setting range: 0.00~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.10

It costs some time to develop air gap flux for asynchronous motor (approaching to the constant of the rotor time). When it is at stop status before the motor is started, in order to get enough start torque, it is a must to develop the air gap flux. Therefore, it is needed to start pre-excitation for the asynchronous motor. See Figure 7-18 for the pre-excitation process.

The set value of start pre-excitation current is the percentage with respect to the inverter rated output current.

The start pre-excitation time means the duration in which the inverter inputs start pre-excitation current for the motor.



- When the rated current of the adapter motor differs greatly from the rated current of the inverter, please carefully set the pre-excitation current (F0.4.41), as excessive setting may damage the motor.

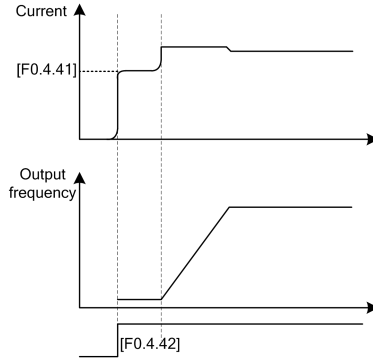


Figure 7-18 Start pre-excitation output

F0.4.43 Start delay	Setting range: 0.00~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.0
----------------------------	--------------------------------------	-----------------------------

Start delay means the waiting time before the inverter starts after receiving the running command.

F0.4.44 DC band-type brake control	Setting range: 0000~0001	Factory default: 0
---	---------------------------------	---------------------------

___X : DC band-type brake control

The DC band-type brake means to lead DC current into the motor rotor so as to generate braking torque. The DC band-type braking function cannot be used when synchronous motor is driven.

When both the set value and the actual speed of the motor has decreased below [F0.4.45], the inverter will stop generating sine current but will inject direct current to the motor, and the current value is to be set by the parameter [F0.4.47]. When the given speed or the motor speed has surpassed the parameter [F0.4.45], the inverter will stop DC power supply and restore to the normal running status.

If it is started, the permission signal will be disconnected, and the DC band-type brake will be void.

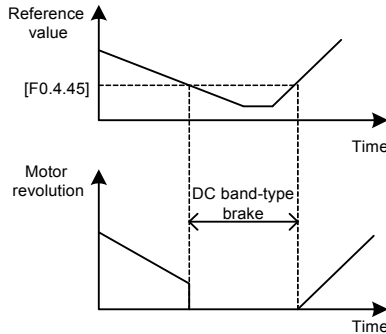


Figure 7-19 DC band-type brake sketch



- Injecting current to the motor may lead over-temperature of the motor. In the circumstances where long-time DC band-type brake is needed, forced air-cooling motor should be used. During the long time of band-type braking, if there is constant load in the motor band-type brake, DC band-type brake will not guarantee that the motor shaft will not rotate.

F0.4.45 DC injection brake application frequency	Setting range: 0.0Hz~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 2.00
---	---------------------------------------	------------------------------

In the deceleration and stop process of the inverter, when the output frequency is lower than the DC band-type brake/brake start frequency/speed, the DC band-type brake/brake function will be started.

F0.4.46 DC brake action time	Setting range: 0.00~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.0
F0.4.47 DC injection brake current level	Setting range: 0.0~100%	Factory default: 50.0

The DC brake time is the duration of the output DC braking current. If it is selected that the external terminal stop DC braking is effective, the parameter of DC braking action time will be void.

The DC band-type brake/brake injection current means the brake current outputted at the time of inverter DC band-type brake/brake. Its set value is the percentage with respect to the rated current.

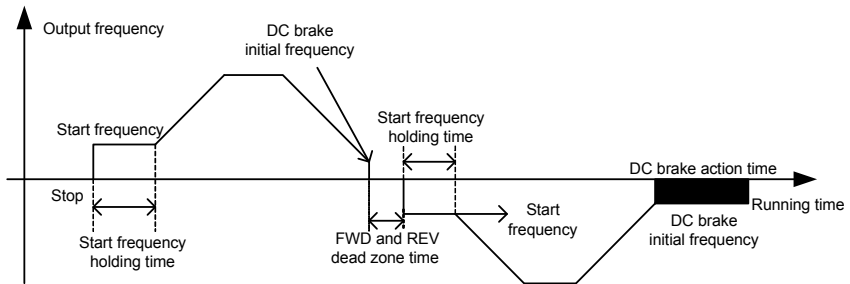


Figure 7-20 Stop DC brake sketch

F0.4.48 Restart after power-off	Setting range: 0, 1	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

It is mainly for the trigger starting modes including "panel control, bus control and three-line control". If the function of restart after power-off is set to be effective, when the inverter is powered off, the running command/status before power-off will be automatically saved, and it will automatically restore to the running status before power-off after the waiting time after power-on again.

In case of the restart after power-off, it will resume running in the mode of restart at detected speed.

F0.4.49 Restart delay time	Setting range: 0.1~10.0Sec.	Factory default: 0.5
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------	-----------------------------

It means the time of waiting status before the inverter automatically executes the function of restart after power-off.

F0.4.50 Direction change delay time	Setting range: 0.00~5.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.00
--	-------------------------------------	------------------------------

The forward and reverse transition dead time is used to set the waiting time for the motor to shift from FWD to REV or from REV to FWD. This function is used to overcome reversal current compact caused by mechanical dead zone, as shown in Figure 7-21.

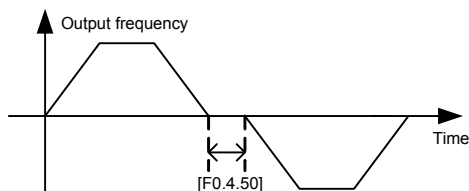


Figure 7-21 FWD and REV transition dead zone Sketch

F0.4.51 Forward and reverse switch mode	Setting range: 0, 1	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

0: Switch at zero point

To switch between FWD and REV at the zero point.

1: Start frequency switch

To switch between the FWD and REV at the start frequency. See the following figure:

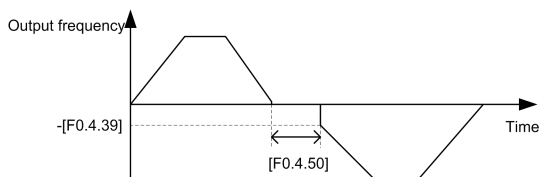


Figure 7-22 Sketch of start frequency FWD and REV switching

F0.4.52 Zero speed (frequency) detection level	Setting range: 0.00~100.00Hz	Factory default: 0.10 Hz
F0.4.53 Zero speed delay time	Setting range: 0.00~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.05

When the inverter output frequency is lowered to zero, it will immediately lock the output. At this time, the motor revolution may not at zero, but the motor is completely at the free stop status, and will slide to stop.

Within the delay time, when the inverter output frequency is lower than the zero speed (frequency) detected level [F0.4.52], within the zero speed delay time [F0.4.53], the inverter will keep working and output a DC current, and the motor will keep excitation. The inverter may rapidly restart at any time.

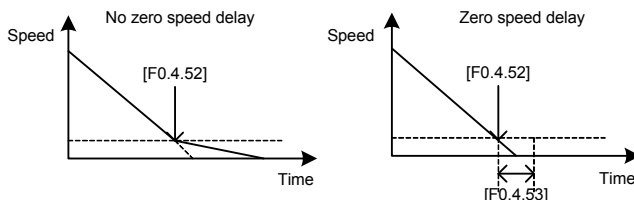


Figure 7-23 Comparison diagram when with or without zero speed delay

F0.4.54 Emergency stop mode (EMS)	Setting range: 0, 1	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter defines the stop mode after the inverter has received an emergency command (Function No. 14, to be set by the Group F3.0 parameters).

7.6 Accel and decel characteristics (group f1.0)

F1.0.00 Acceleration and deceleration modes

Setting range: 0000~0011

Factory default: 0000

___X : Accel and decel mode

0: Liner acceleration and deceleration

The output frequency of the inverter increases or decreases according to fixed speed. The output frequency has liner relationship with the acceleration and deceleration time, and steadily increases or decreases according to constant gradient.

1: S curve acceleration and deceleration

The output frequency of the inverter increases or decreases according to grading speed, and the characteristics of S curve is determined by the parameter [F1.0.01] and [F1.0.02]. This function is mainly to reduce noise and ventilation during acceleration and deceleration, and decrease impact of the starting and stop load. When the load inertia is excessive, leading to overload fault during deceleration, it can be improved by adjusting the parameter setting ([F1.0.01] and [F1.0.02]) of S deceleration curve, so as to reasonably adjust the deceleration rate at different frequency.

__X_: Accel and decel unit

0: Sec. (Second)

The acceleration and deceleration time is in the unit of second, and is at factory default value.

1: Min. (Minute)

The acceleration and deceleration time is in the unit of minute.

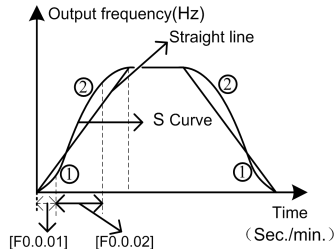


Figure 7-24 Acceleration and deceleration curve

F1.0.01	% of S curve at the bottom	Setting range: 5.0~100.0-[F1.0.02]	Factory default: 15.0
F1.0.02	% of S curve at mid section	Setting range: 20.0~100.0-[F1.0.01]	Factory default: 70.0

Define the curve parameters of acceleration and deceleration of S curve.

As shown in item ① in Figure 7-24, the acceleration starting/deceleration ending period of S curve is indicated by the percentage of the total acceleration and deceleration time.

As shown in item ② in Figure 7-24, the acceleration rising/deceleration decreasing period of S curve is indicated by the percentage of the total acceleration and deceleration time.

F1.0.03~F1.0.08 Acceleration/ deceleration time 1/2/3	Setting range: 0.01~600.00	Factory default: ☆
F1.0.09 Acceleration 4/jog acceleration time	Setting range: 0.01~600.00	Factory default: ☆
F1.0.10 Deceleration 4/jog deceleration time	Setting range: 0.01~600.00	Factory default: ☆

The acceleration time means the time required for the inverter to accelerate from 0.00Hz to maximum output frequency [F0.1.20].

The deceleration time means the time required for the inverter to decelerate from the maximum output frequency [F0.1.20] to 0.00Hz.

V800 series inverters are defined with 4 kinds of acceleration/deceleration time. The acceleration/ deceleration time 1~4 during the running process of the inverter can be selected through different combinations of external terminals. During simple PLC running, it is also applicable to use them as the acceleration and deceleration time at the time of switching among different running frequency at each stage. See instructions of F6.1 group parameters for detail.

The acceleration/deceleration time 4/jog acceleration/deceleration time are also used as the acceleration and deceleration running time at the status of jog running. The jog frequency has the highest priority. At any state, the inverter will immediately transit to the jog frequency running state according to the preset jog acceleration and deceleration time as long as the jog command is inputted. (See the instructions of the functional parameter F0.1.23 and F0.1.24) The unit (Sec., Min.) of the acceleration and deceleration time is determined by the tens' digit of the parameter F1.0.11.

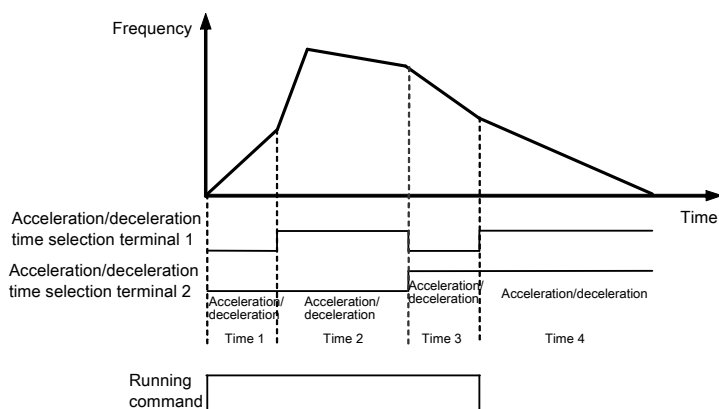


Figure 7-25 External terminal selection mode for acceleration and deceleration time

F1.0.11 EMS emergency stop and deceleration time	Setting range: 0.01~600.00	Factory default: ☆
---	-----------------------------------	---------------------------

The time for decelerating from the maximum output frequency [F0.1.20] to the zero frequency will only function when the inverter stops in deceleration way (F0.4.54 is set to 0) after receiving **EMS** emergency stop command (Function No. 14).

7.7 Carrier frequency (group f1.1)

F1.1.13 Carrier frequency	Setting range: 1.5~12.0KHz(FF.4.43=##0#) 1.5~15.0KHz(FF.4.43=##1#)	Factory default: ☆
----------------------------------	---	---------------------------

It is the switch frequency determining the inverter's internal power module. The allowable maximum carrier frequency is relevant with the inverter model. The carrier frequency mainly influences the audio noise and heat effect during running. When mute running is required, it is applicable to appropriately increase the value of the carrier frequency, but the maximum load allowable for the inverter may be somewhat reduced, accompanied by somewhat increase of interference of the inverter to the outside world.

For the circumstances where the motor wire is too long, it may lead to leaking current between motor wires and between the wire and the ground. When the ambient temperature is too high and the motor load is too high, or the inverter is failed due to above reasons, it is suggested to appropriately decrease the carrier frequency to improve thermal characteristics of the inverter.

F1.1.14 Carrier characteristics	Setting range: 0000~2111	Factory default: 0011
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

This parameter is used to set some characteristics relevant with the carrier (binary system setting), and usually needs not be modified.

__X : Load linkage adjustment

When this function is effective, if the load current is excessive, the carrier frequency will be automatically decreased in order to ensure safe running of the inverter.

__X_ : Temperature linkage adjustment

When this function is effective, the inverter will automatically decrease the carrier frequency if the ambient temperature is too high.

_X__ : Reference frequency linkage adjustment

When this function is effective, the inverter will appropriately decrease the carrier frequency if the output frequency is too low.

X___ : Modulation mode

0: Asynchronous modulation

1: Synchronous modulation

When the ratio between the carrier frequency and inverter output frequency is below 20, it is suggested to set to the synchronous modulation mode so as to promote stability.

2: Noise smoothing

In this mode, the inverter's carrier frequency is uncertain random value, which is favorable for reducing audio noise and fixed frequency interference.

7.8 V/F parameters and overload protection (motor 1) (group f1.2)

F1.2.15 Reference frequency of motor 1	Setting range: 5.00~300.00Hz/50.0~400.0Hz	Factory default: 50.00
F1.2.16 Reference voltage of motor 1	Setting range: 50~500V	Factory default: 380/220

The reference frequency means the minimum frequency when the inverter outputs the maximum voltage, and generally is rated frequency of the motor.

The reference voltage means the output voltage when the inverter outputs the reference frequency, and generally is rated voltage of the motor.

This group of parameters is set according to the motor's parameters, and do no need to be modified except for special circumstances.

F1.2.17 V/F curve selection for motor1	Setting range: 0, 1, 2, 3	Factory default: 0
---	----------------------------------	---------------------------

Set the corresponding curve between the inverter output voltage and output frequency. See the following figure.

0: Customized curve

When this mode is selected, users can set any desired V/F curve via this group of parameters (Group F1.2).

1: 1.2 times squares curve

The outputted is 1.2 times-square descending torque characteristics curve. See the curve 1 in the figure.

It is suitable for torque load of fans and pumps.

2: 1.5 times squares curve

The outputted is 1.5 times-square descending torque characteristics curve. See the curve 2 in the figure. It is suitable for torque load of fans and pumps. The energy saving effect of the descending torque curve is slightly increased compared with the constant torque curve.

3: Second square curve

The outputted is 2.5 times-square descending torque characteristics curve. See the curve 3 in the figure. It is suitable for torque load of fans and pumps. If it is not steady during light load operation, please switch to 1.5 times-square curve for operation.

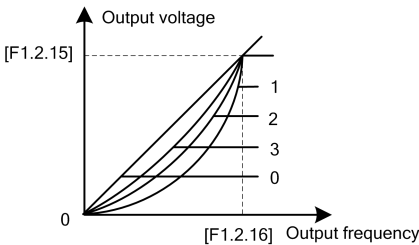


Figure 7-26 V/F curve

F1.2.18 Torque boost motor 1	Setting range: 0.0~20.0%	Factory default: ☆
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------

It is used to improve the inverter's low frequency torque characteristics. When the inverter runs at low frequency, it will make compensation for the inverter's output voltage. Its set value is the percentage relative to the motor's reference voltage [F1.2.16]. See Figure 7-27-A and Figure 7-27-B.

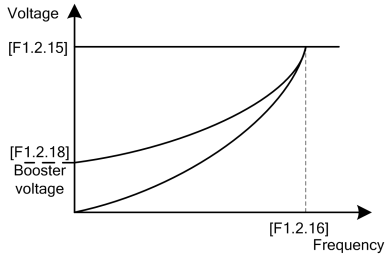


Figure 7-27-A Sketch of torque booster for descending torque curve

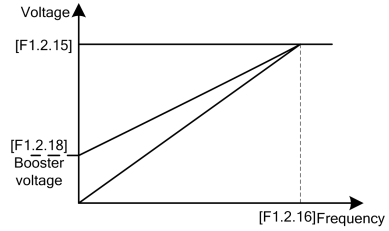


Figure 7-27-B Sketch of torque booster for constant torque curve

F1.2.19	V/F curve 1st frequency motor 1	Setting range: 0.0~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 0.0
F1.2.20	V/F curve 1st voltage of motor 1	Setting range: 0~500V	Factory default: 0.0
F1.2.21	V/F curve 2nd frequency motor 1	Setting range: 0.0~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 0.0
F1.2.22	V/F curve 2nd voltage of motor 1	Setting range: 0~500V	Factory default: 0.0
F1.2.23	V/F curve 3rd frequency motor 1	Setting range: 0.0~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 0.0
F1.2.24	V/F curve 3rd voltage of motor 1	Setting range: 0~500V	Factory default: 0.0

This group of parameters is used to flexibly set **V/F** curve desired by users, as shown in Figure 7-28.

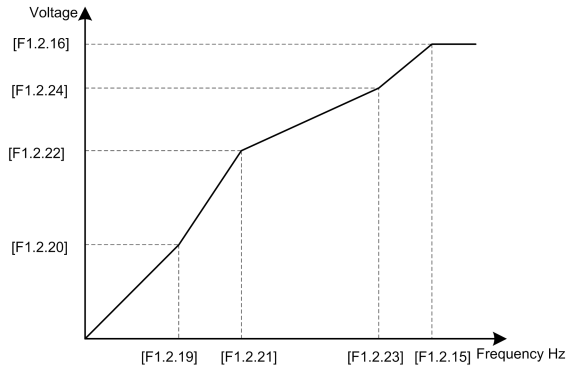


Figure 7-28 V/F customized curve

F1.2.25	Slip frequency compensation for motor 1	Setting range: 0~150%	Factory default: 0
----------------	--	------------------------------	---------------------------

The actual revolution difference of the motor may vary with the change of the load. Through setting of this parameters, the inverter will automatically adjust the inverter's output frequency according to the load, so as to offset the influence of the load to the motor revolution.

This parameter is only effective to **V/F** control mode.

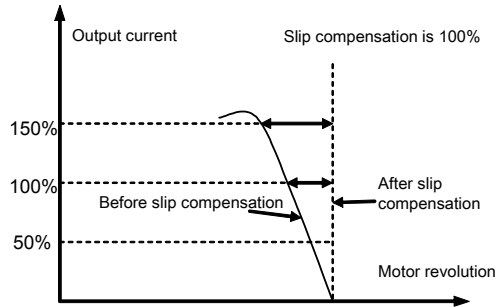


Figure 7-29 Slip frequency compensation sketch

7.9 V/F parameters and overload protection (motor 2) (group f1.3)

F1.3.27 Reference frequency of motor 2	Setting range: 5.00~300.00Hz/50.0~400.0Hz	Factory default: 0
....		
F1.3.37 Reference voltage of motor 2	Setting range: 0~150%	Factory default: 0

The V/F control parameter when the motor 2 is selected is defined the same as parameters F1.2.15~ F1.2.25.

7.10 Steady running (group f1.4)

F1.4.39 Accel/decel current limit level	Setting range: 120~180%	Factory default: 160
--	--------------------------------	-----------------------------

When the frequency inverter is in acceleration and deceleration running, for the acceleration and deceleration time does not match to the motor inertia or load breaks, there can be phenomenon of steep current rise. This parameter is used for setting the allowed output level when frequency inverter is in state of acceleration. Setting value is the relevant percentage of rated output current of frequency inverter.

When the output current of frequency inverter exceeds the specified level of this parameter, acceleration and deceleration time will be automatically delayed, to ensure the output current limited within the range of this level, refer to the figure below. Thus, for occasions requiring shorter acceleration time, acceleration torque level shall be properly improved.

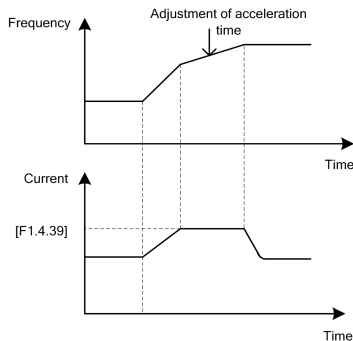


Figure 7-30 Schematic diagram of current limit for acceleration and deceleration

F1.4.40 Strong start current limiting level	Setting range: 120~200%	Factory default: 160
F1.4.41 Strong start current holding time	Setting range: 0.00~5.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.0

Function is similar with [F1.4.39], limit the current value when frequency inverter is in acceleration and starting. For some systems with large inertia, or requires to overcome great static friction at start, large starting current can be set for a certain time ([F1.4.41]), to meet the requirement. Setting value is the relevant percentage of rated output current of frequency inverter.



➤ F1.4.41 is set as zero, it means the function of current limit of strong start is closed.

F1.4.42 Trip suppression selection	Setting range: 0000~0112	Factory default: 0111
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

_ _ _ X : Overvoltage suppression adjutor

When setting is valid, for load with energy feedback, in order to suppress overvoltage, frequency inverter may lift output frequency automatically, making it exceed selected frequency (limited by upper limiting frequency). Be attention if it is dangerous to the equipment safety when setting.

_ _ X _ : Undervoltage suppression adjutor

When setting is valid, undervoltage caused by sudden fall of grid voltage, frequency inverter may lower output frequency automatically, accessing into feedback braking state, to keep running with mechanical energy for a certain time to ensure the normal running of equipment.

_ X _ _ : Frequency modulation and current

When setting is valid, if the output current exceeds the maximum current [F1.4.47], frequency inverter will lower output frequency automatically.

X _ _ _ : Failure Auto Recovery Mode

Setting effective, failure auto recovery mode is normal start, setting not effective, failure auto recovery mode is speed tracking start.

F1.4.43 Overvoltage trip level (DC BUS)	Setting range: 720~800V	Factory default: 740
F1.4.44 Overvoltage adjusting gain	Setting range: 0.10~10.00	Factory default: 1.00

When the motor is dragging overvoltage or in process of deceleration stop with large inertia, it may access into recycle braking state, causing rapid rise of direct current bus voltage of frequency inverter, leading to overvoltage protection action. When frequency inverter detects the direct current bus voltage exceeds [F1.4.43], it will adjust output frequency (extended deceleration time or increase frequency), to ensure continually safe running.

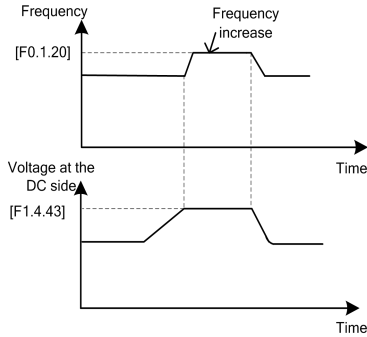


Figure 7-31-A Overvoltage suppression during steady running

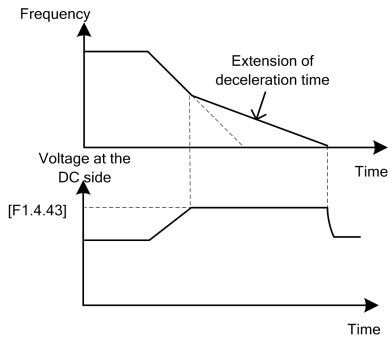


Figure 7-31-B Overvoltage suppression during deceleration process



- The larger the overvoltage adjusting gain is, the more obvious the suppression is, but it may lead to unsteady running.

F1.4.45 Undervoltage trip level (AC input)	Setting range: [FF.2.35]~480V	Factory default: 400
F1.4.46 Undervoltage trip level gain	Setting range: 0.10~10.00	Factory default: 1.00

When frequency inverter detects the direct current bus voltage is below [F1.4.45], it may lower output frequency automatically, accessing into recycle braking state, keep running with mechanical energy. The larger the undervoltage adjusting gain is, the stronger undervoltage suppression is.

This function plays very efficiently in large inertia load application occasions like centrifugal pump and draught fan.

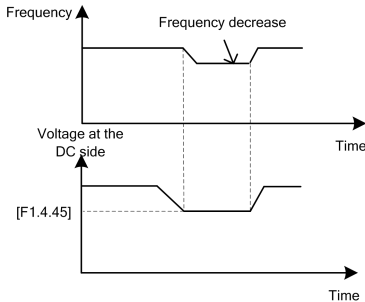


Figure 7-32-A Sketch of undervoltage

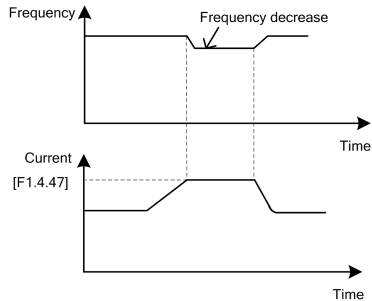


Figure 7-32-B Sketch of current-limiting adjusting and undervoltage adjusting

F1.4.47 Current limit trip level	Setting range: 20~200%	Factory default: 190
F1.4.48 Current limit trip level gain	Setting range: 0.10~10.00	Factory default: 1.00

When the output current of frequency inverter exceeds [F1.4.47], it may lower output frequency automatically to suppress current from further increasing, to ensure continually safe running. The bigger (F1.4.48) gain is, the stronger current suppression is. Setting value is relevant percentage of rated output current of frequency inverter.

F1.4.49 Number of auto reset attempts	Setting range: 0~5	Factory default: 0
F1.4.50 Time between auto resets	Setting range: 0.2~100.0Sec.	Factory default: 1.0
F1.4.51 Auto reset cycle time	Setting range: 900~36000Sec.	Factory default: 3600

Fault self resetting refers to that when the frequency inverter breaks down, with a period of time, fault self resetting can be operated and recover to run with starting way of speed inspection. When accumulated resetting times exceeds setting value [F1.4.49], self resetting action terminates. When self resetting time [F1.4.49] is set as zero, it means this function is banned.

Recovery waiting time of fault self resetting gets longer with resetting times: waiting time=[F1.4.50] * already reset times

Each time it passes the set parameter period [F1.4.51], or external forced fault reset, it will automatically eliminate one self resetting record.

F1.4.53 Display coefficient	Setting range: 0.001~60.000	Factory default: 1.000
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------

It is used for correction values of monitoring parameters (d0.0.00, d0.0.01, d0.0.9, d0.0.10), to match with site parameters.

7.11 Vector running parameters (motor 1) (group f2.0)

F2.0.00~F2.0.04 Motor rated parameters	—	Factory default: ☆
---	---	---------------------------

Nameplate parameters of asynchronous motor, for ensure performance control, it must:

- Correctly set nameplate parameters;
- Power level of motor and frequency inverter shall be match with each other, generally motor only can be two levels less or one level more than frequency inverter.

Change the rated power setting (F2.0.00), it may match with later parameters automatically. Please change the settings in order.

Any one of the nameplate parameters changed, frequency inverter can set static identification of motor parameters once automatically. With motor accessed to start running, an additional static identification of parameters will be conducted prior to running (parameter FF.4.43 can shield this function).

F2.0.05 ~ F2.0.09 Motor internal parameters	—	Factory default: ☆
--	---	---------------------------

This group of parameters can be auto updated after parameter identification, generally free of necessity of setting.

F2.0.10 Slip compensation coefficient	Setting range: 0.50~1.50	Factory default: 1.00
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

Slip compensation coefficient is used for slip frequency calculation, valid with vector control mode. With SVC running, this parameter can be amended to adjust speed for compensation control.

F2.0.24 Z pulse initial angle	Setting range: 0.0~359.9	Factory default: 0.0
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------

This parameter is valid when Z pulse selection is valid ([F8.0.07] = 1), used for set corresponding mechanical rotating angle of Z pulse position.

F2.0.25 Overload protection setting motor1	Setting range: 50.0~131.0%	Factory default: 110.0
---	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------

With dragging rated current value (parameter F2.0.02, F2.1.28) of motor, frequency inverter can automatically confirm the heat protection curve of motor. This parameter is used for setting sensitivity of heat relay protection to load motor of frequency inverter. The larger the value is, the lower the sensitivity is. Please set according to the actual load capacity of motor.

When fixed value of this parameter is 131.0%, overload protection function of motor closes.



- When a frequency inverter runs with several motors in parallel, function of heat relay protection of frequency inverter will out of action automatically. In order to protect motor efficiently, it is suggested that installation of heat protection relay in each motor.

7.12 Parameter measurement and pre-excitation (group f2.2)

F2.2.52 Excitation time for vector mode	Setting range: 0.02~2.50Sec.	Factory default: ☆
--	-------------------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter is valid with vector operation; the pre-excitation action must be conducted prior to start of motor, to build air gap flux to obtain enough starting torque. This excitation process shall be conducted after action defined of parameter F0.4.42, excitation current shall be calculated automatically as selected time. The shorter the excitation time is, the larger the current is.

F2.2.53 Motor parameter measurement	Setting range: 0, 1, 2, 3	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------------	---------------------------

Motor parameter measurement function must be started when vector control mode is selected (tens of F0.0.09 is set as 0 or 1).

When this function (when F2.2.53 is set as 1~3) is operated, there will be a identification operation when the frequency inverter is start. After parameter identification is over, F2.2.53 will automatically reset. Obtained motor parameters will be stored in internal storage of frequency inverter, and value of parameter F2.0.05 ~ F2.0.09 will be automatically updated.

Before identification operation, please confirm that:

- Nameplate parameter of motor (F2.0.01~F2.0.04) has been input correctly;
- The motor is in stopped condition.

0: Closed

1: Static identification

During the process of parameter measurement, motor shall be kept in stopped condition. There is no requirement for the connection relationship of motor shaft, but with lower measurement precision.

2: Static + operating parameter identification

Frequency inverter will conduct static identification previously, and then automatically start operation identification process. During operation identification process, stop order can be input to forcedly terminate identification process. It won't be eliminated of application of identification then. When restarted, identification process will be operated again.

Top operating frequency of operation identification will reach 80% of rated frequency of motor. Before identification starts, please be sure to confirm the equipment safety, and it will automatically stop operating when identification ends.

Operation identification can obtain accurate parameters, but it must be operated when the motor is complete no-load. Otherwise, unpredictable parameter value may be obtained.

3: Static + operating parameter identification + revolution ratio identification

Operation process under this setting is totally the same as that of 2, as well as identification result of motor parameters. However, when there's no installation of PG encoder on the motor shaft, the transfer ratio of motor shaft and speed measurement shaft must be obtained to realize closed loop vector control. This setting will not only automatically identify motor parameters, but also will measure the transfer ratio of motor shaft: speed measurement shaft, and result can be stored automatically in parameter F8.0.17.



- During the process of operation identification of motor parameter, it must sure that no load of motor during the whole process, otherwise, incorrect motor parameters will be obtained.

7.13 Multifunctional input terminal (group f3.0)

F3.0.00~F3.0.05 Multifunctional input terminals DI1~DI6	Setting range: 0~96	—
F3.0.06 Multifunctional input terminal DI7/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0~96	Factory default: 0
F3.0.07 Multifunctional input terminal DI8/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0~96	Factory default: 0
F3.0.08 Multifunctional input terminal DI9/Fin/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0~98	Factory default: 97

Control terminals **DI1~DI9/Fin** are functional programmable switch input terminals; They can define the **DI1~DI9/Fin** functions respectively by way of the setup of **F3.0.00~F3.0.08** values; See their set values and relevant functions as Table 1 (Contrast Table of Multifunctional Terminals (DI/EDI/SDI) Function).

For example: Define **F3.0.00** as **23**, so the function of DI1 can be defined as "Simple **PLC** Multi-stage Operation Input"; When the DI1 terminal status validates, simple **PLC** multi-stage operation input function can be realized.

The function specifications in the table as following:

1~4: Multi-speed control terminals 1~4

By means of the **ON/OFF** status combinations of these four functional terminals, select the set frequencies relevant to **F6.0.00~F6.0.15** parameters as the current set frequencies of frequency converter. The priority of the frequency instruction is higher than frequency set channel **F0.1.16**.

Table 7-3 Multi-speed operation selection table

Multi-speed control 4	Multi-speed control 3	Multi-speed control 2	Multi-speed control 1	Frequency set
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	Ordinary operation frequency (F0.1.16 determined)
OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 1
OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 2
OFF	OFF	ON	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 3
OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 4
OFF	ON	OFF	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 5
OFF	ON	ON	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 6
OFF	ON	ON	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 7
ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 8
ON	OFF	OFF	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 9
ON	OFF	ON	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 10
ON	OFF	ON	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 11
ON	ON	OFF	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 12
ON	ON	OFF	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 13
ON	ON	ON	OFF	Multi-stage operation frequency 14
ON	ON	ON	ON	Multi-stage operation frequency 15

5~6: External forward/Reverse jog control

Apply to jog operation control under the external terminal control (regard **F0.3.33/F0.3.34** as 1).

7~8: FWD/ REV running command terminal

Apply to forward (FWD)/reverse (REV) running command under the external terminal control (regard **F0.3.33/F0.3.34** as 1); According to the setup of **F0.3.35**, it can jog two-line mode and three-line mode (regard another external control terminal as three-line running command function (Function No.19)).

9~10: Acceleration and deceleration time 1 and 2

By means of the acceleration and deceleration time, selecting the **ON/OFF** status combinations of terminals can realize the selection of acceleration and deceleration time 1~4 (refer to parameter specifications of **F1.0.03~F1.0.10**). If the user doesn't define this function, frequency inverter can automatically select acceleration and deceleration 1, except simple **PLC** jog. See the acceleration and deceleration time selection as following table.

Table 7-4 Contrast table of acceleration and deceleration time selection

Acceleration and deceleration time selection 2	Acceleration and deceleration time selection 1	Acceleration and deceleration time
OFF	OFF	Acceleration time 1/Deceleration time 1
OFF	ON	Acceleration time 2/Deceleration time 2
ON	OFF	Acceleration time 3/Deceleration time 3
ON	ON	Acceleration time 4/Deceleration time 4

11: Running command switching

This function is applied to switch running command of frequency inverter between control command 1 and control command 2. See the running command switching status as following table:

Table 7-5 Contrast table of jog command switching

Terminal status	Running command of frequency inverter
ON	Running command 2
OFF	Running command 1

12: Frequency command switching

This function is applied to switch frequency setting source of frequency inverter between frequency setting source 1 and frequency setting source 2. See the frequency command switching status as following table:

Table 7-6 Contrast table of frequency command switching

Terminal status	Frequency setting source of frequency inverter
ON	Frequency setting source 2
OFF	Frequency setting source 1

13: Fault resetting input (RESET)

Once frequency inverter occurs to fault alarm, reset it through external terminals and be valid to input rising edge; the function is coincident to operation board's **STOP/RESET** buttons'.

14: Emergency stop (EMS)

Whatever status frequency inverter operates, if the functional terminal is effective, frequency inverter stops in terms of set emergency stop mode (**F0.4.54**) and starts to operate with rising edge of running command.

15~16: Frequency or Process PID set value ascending (UP)/descending (DW)

V800 frequency inverter can achieve the setup of operation frequency via external terminal and long-distance frequency set operation. If the terminal is effective, set frequency increases progressively or decreases progressively in the light of set speed; if the terminal is ineffective, set frequency keeps same. If both terminals are effective, set frequencies keep same. See 4~8 parameter functional specifications of **F0.2.25** or **F0.2.26**.

17: UP/DW set frequency zero clearing

Set frequency of external terminal can be cleared to zero through the functional terminal (set frequencies of frequency increasing progressively command **UP**/decreasing progressively command **DW**). The function invalidates frequencies set by other frequencies setting modes.

18: External equipment fault

Inputting external equipment fault signal through the terminal is easy for frequency inverter to fault supervision and communication to external equipment. Since frequency converter receives external equipment fault, displaying "Fu.017" is the external equipment fault and making a stop forcefully.

19: Three wire running control

When select the three-line running mode under the external terminal control (regard **F0.3.33**/**F0.3.34** as 1), define three wire running control for input terminal. See Three wire Mode Introduction (regard **F0.3.35** as 2 or 3).

20: Stop DC braking command

When frequency inverter is in the process of deceleration stop and running frequency is lower to straight flow brake or brake starting frequency or speed, the function is effective. When the terminal status is effective, execute DC brake;

Only when the terminal status is ineffective, DC brake can be stopped. When operate this function, DC braking functional time F0.4.46 is ineffective.

21: Acceleration and deceleration forbidden

When the terminal is effective, suspend acceleration and deceleration forbidden and frequency inverter keeps current frequency operation as the acceleration and deceleration achieves; if the terminal is ineffective, execute ordinary acceleration and deceleration command.

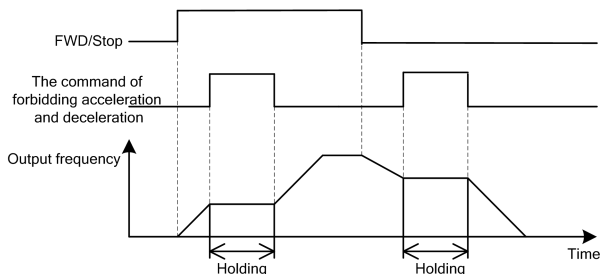


Figure 7-33 Sketch of acceleration and deceleration forbidden

22: Process PID effective

When selecting the multifunctional input terminals in the process PID, the function can achieve process PID's input and cutting off.

23: Simple PLC multi-stage running effective

When select the multi-stage frequencies or rotation running condition input in the programmable multi-stage speed operation mode (regard F6.1.15 as ###2), the functional terminal can achieve simple PLC multi-stage running's input and cutting off.

24: Swing frequency running effective

If swing frequency running selects effective terminal (set F6.2.46 as ###2), the functional terminal can input and cut off swing frequency running.

If terminal status is effective, frequency converter runs swing frequency. If terminal status is ineffective, frequency inverter can accelerate and decelerate into swing frequency preset frequency [F6.2.47] for running according to effective acceleration and deceleration time (regard acquiescent value as acceleration and deceleration time 1).

25: Compensation PID effective

When the function of compensation PID is activated from external effective terminal selection (regard F9.0.00 as _ _ 2), the functional terminal can input and cut off the function of compensation PID.

26: Simple PLC multi-stage running status (when stopping) resetting

Simple PLC multi-stage running status when stopping can select the automatic memorized ([F6.1.15] = _ 1 _ _ / _ 2 _ _). The functional terminal can reset the automatic memorized status forcefully.

27: Swing frequency status resetting (effective when stopping)

If the swing frequency's current running status is ([F6.2.46] = _ _ 0 _) when swing frequency operation selects automatic memory stop, the functional terminal can reset the status of swing frequency forcefully.

28~30: Process PID multi-stage given terminals 1~3

Using ON/OFF status combinations of multi-stage process PID given terminals 1~3 can achieve multi-stage process PID given terminals selection as following table.

Table 7-7 Contrast table of multi-stage process PID given terminals selection

Multi-stage process PID given terminal 3	Multi-stage process PID given terminal 2	Multi-stage process PID given terminal 1	Process PID multi-stage given selection
OFF	OFF	OFF	Ordinary process PID given (determined by F7.0.01)
OFF	OFF	ON	Process PID multi-stage given 1
OFF	ON	OFF	Process PID multi-stage given 2
OFF	ON	ON	Process PID multi-stage given 3
ON	OFF	OFF	Process PID multi-stage given 4
ON	OFF	ON	Process PID multi-stage given 5
ON	ON	OFF	Process PID multi-stage given 6
ON	ON	ON	Process PID multi-stage given 7

31: Process PID setting selection (switching)

The functional terminal is applied to switch process PID setting of frequency inverter between process PID setting 1 and process PID setting 2. See process PID setting switching status as following table:

Table 7-8 Contrast table of process PID setting switching status

Terminal status	Process PID setting of frequency inverter
ON	Process PID setting 2
OFF	Process PID setting 1

32: Process PID feedback selection (switching)

This functional terminal is applied to switch Process PID feedback of frequency inverter between process PID setting 1 and process PID setting 2. See process PID switching status as following table:

Table 7-9 Contrast table of process PID feedback switching status

Terminal status	Process PID feedback of frequency inverter
ON	Process PID feedback 2
OFF	Process PID feedback 1

33: Process PID sleep activation

When the sleep function is activated by multifunctional input terminals (set F7.2.34 as 2), the functional terminal can activate process PID sleep function.

34: Torque/speed control mode switching

The functional terminal is applied to switch closed loop control mode of frequency inverter between torque control and speed control. See the closed loop control mode of frequency inverter as following table:

Table 7-10 contrast table of closed loop control mode of frequency inverter

Terminal status	Closed loop control mode of frequency inverter
ON	Torque control mode
OFF	Speed control mode

35: Minimum torque limiting set value selection

This function is applied to switch minimum torque limiting set value of frequency inverter (negative torque limiting) between minimum torque limiting 1 and minimum torque limiting 2. See switching status as following table:

Table 7-11 Minimum torque limiting selection contrast table of frequency inverter

Terminal status	Minimum torque limiting set value of frequency inverter
ON	Minimum torque limiting 2
OFF	Minimum torque limiting 1

36: Maximum torque limiting set value selection

This function is applied to switch maximum torque limiting set value of frequency inverter between maximum torque limiting 1 and maximum torque limiting 2. See switching status as following table:

Table 7-12 Maximum torque limiting selection contrast table of frequency inverter

Terminal status	Maximum torque limiting set value of frequency inverter
ON	Maximum torque limiting 2
OFF	Maximum torque limiting 1

40: RS485 external/Standard operation panel switching

When two operation panels are inserted to frequency inverter at the same time, one is for master control panel switching, and the other is only for monitoring, and the order cannot be inputted in.

Table 7-13 Control command channel switching and selecting table for frequency inverter

Terminal state	Control command channel of frequency inverter
ON	RS485 external panel
OFF	Standard operation panel

42: Start permission

When parameter F0.4.37 is set as ###1 or ###2, the function terminal is valid.

43: Running permission

When parameter F0.4.37 is set as #1## or #2##, the function terminal is valid.

44~45: Counter clock terminal

This function terminal is used for counter clock inputting.

46~47: Counter trigger signal

This terminal is used as counter trigger end.

48~49: Counter resetting terminal

This terminal is used for counter resetting signal inputting.

50~51: Counter auto control signal

This terminal is used for counter gated signal inputting.

52~54: Timer trigger signal

This terminal is used as timer trigger end.

55~57: Timer resetting

This terminal is used for timer resetting signal inputting.

58~60: Timer gated signal

This terminal is used for timer gated signal inputting.

61: Single pulse accumulative length value

This terminal is used for single pulse accumulative length value resetting.

62: Motor temperature detection contact input

When thermo switch is used as the external temperature transmitter (see parameter F5.4.43 specification), this terminal is used for external thermo switch inputting.

63~64: Compensation PID parameter selection

When [F9.1.21] = # # 3 3, this terminal is used for controller parameter of compensation PID selecting.

Table 7-14 Parameter selecting table for compensation PID

Compensation PID parameter selection 2	Compensation PID parameter selection 1	PID effective parameter group
OFF	OFF	Group 1 (F9.0.03~F9.0.07)
OFF	ON	Group 2 (F9.1.29~F9.1.33)
ON	OFF	Group 3 (F9.1.34~F9.1.38)
ON	ON	Group 4 (F9.1.39~F9.1.43)

65: Magnetic flux brake effective

It is applied to magnetic flux brake function input and removal during the deceleration halt process.

66: Position pulse counting resetting

Adjust the position pulse counting to zero, which is used for position origin preset default counting.

67: Automatic shifting jog

It is the machinery shifting dedicated function of the spindle or machinery variable speed gear. When this function is invalid, frequency drive system will operate both sides alternatively at certain period or revolving speed/moment of force so as to achieve the machinery shifting, avoiding the dead(relative function parameter: Fb.2.18, Fb.2.19).

68: Servo pulse command direction

This function is valid when pulse input port (DI9//Fin) is used as servo command pulse, and representative pulse direction is: invalid is positive (add plus), valid is negative (minus pulse).

69: Servo control effective

Switching terminal of servo control and moment of force control (relative function parameter Fb.2.23).

70: Spindle positioning origin photoelectric signal input

When reference signal of spindle positioning origin is photoelectric switch positioning (parameter Fb.2.36), this signal stands for spindle origin.

71: Spindle origin homing

When this function is valid, spindle auto positions to origin position to maintain the moment of force, and after the signal is cancelled, there is no moment of force output.

72: Spindle positioning selection 1**73: Spindle positioning selection 2****74: Spindle positioning selection 3**

When the spindle positioning command selects external terminal selecting source(relative function parameter Fb.2.36), these multi-function terminal are used for spindle positioning angle selecting, when the following groups are valid, the spindle positions to the assigned angle and maintains the moment of force. When these terminals are invalid, there is no moment of force output.

Table 7-15 Selecting table for spindle positioning angle

Spindle positioning selection 3	Spindle positioning selection 2	Spindle positioning selection 1	Positioning angle values
OFF	OFF	OFF	Common operation
OFF	OFF	ON	Positioning angle1 (Fb.2.38)
OFF	ON	OFF	Positioning angle 2 (Fb.2.39)
OFF	ON	ON	Positioning angle 3 (Fb.2.40)
ON	OFF	OFF	Positioning angle 4 (Fb.2.41)
ON	OFF	ON	Positioning angle 5 (Fb.2.42)
ON	ON	OFF	Positioning angle 6 (Fb.2.43)
ON	ON	ON	Positioning angle 7 (Fb.2.44)

75: Position gain selection

Position gain of servo control or spindle positioning selecting.

76: Reserved**77: Servo command pulse value zero clearing****78~96: Reservation function****97: Pulse input (0.1~100.00 KHz)**

This function is applied to multi-function input terminal DI9/Fin (F3.0.08), and 0.10~100.00 KHz signal can be received effectively.

98: Pulse input

This function is applied to multi-function input terminal DI9/Fin (F3.0.08) and 1.0~1000.0 KHz low frequency signal can be received effectively.

F3.0.09 Multifunctional terminal filtering time (DI1~DI5)	Setting range: 1~50ms	Factory default: 5
F3.0.10 Multifunctional terminal filtering time (DI6~DI9) /standard expansion card	Setting range: 1~50ms	Factory default: 5

Set the filtering time of the input terminal detection. When state of the input terminal changes, if it remains the same even after the filtering time setting, the terminal state change is effective, or otherwise it will remains the former state, thus the interference triggered false operation can be reduced.

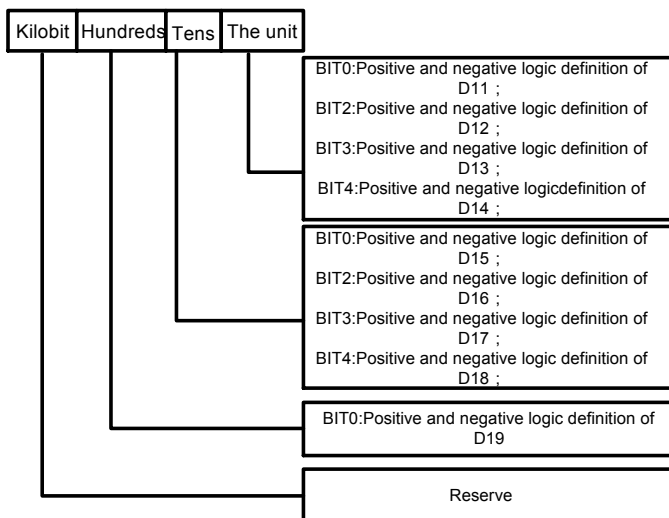
F3.0.11 Input terminal effective level (H)	Setting range: 0000~0FFF	Factory default: 0000
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

Define the positive and negative logic of the input terminal.

Positive logic: When DIx terminal and common port COM are connected, it is valid, or otherwise it is invalid.

Negative logic: When DIx terminal and common port COM are disconnected, it is valid, or otherwise it is invalid.

Bit place as 0 represents the positive logic; 1 represents negative logic.



Determination methods of parameter setting value are shown as following:

Table 7-16 Correspondence between Binary Number Setting and Digital Show Value

Binary number setting				Hexadecimal(digital show value)
BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0	
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	2
0	0	1	1	3
0	1	0	0	4
0	1	0	1	5
0	1	1	0	6
0	1	1	1	7
1	0	0	0	8
1	0	0	1	9
1	0	1	0	A
1	0	1	1	b
1	1	0	0	C
1	1	0	1	d
1	1	1	0	E
1	1	1	1	F

7.14 Multifunctional output terminal (group f3.1)

F3.1.12 Multifunctional output DO1	Setting range: 0~71	Factory default: 1
F3.1.13 Multifunctional output DO2	Setting range: 0~71	Factory default: 2
F3.1.14 Multifunctional output DO3/ Fout/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0~71	Factory default: 63
F3.1.21 Multifunctional relay output (RO1A/B/C)	Setting range: 0~71	Factory default: 4
F3.1.22 Multifunctional relay output (RO2A/B/C)/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0~71	Factory default: 5

The control terminal D01-D03 is the on-off output terminal with programmable function, and its functions can be defined by set values of F3.1.12-F3.1.14; Functions of output RO1and RO2 of relay, on-off output terminal with programmable function, can be defined by set values of F3.1.21 and F3.1.22. Please refer to the attached list for their set values and corresponding functions (Reference table of variables of multi-function output terminal (DO/EDO/SDO)).

1: Inverter running ready

When inverter is in normal running ready state, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in (connection of TA and TC).

2: Inverter is running

When inverter is in running state, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

3: Equipment normal

When inverter is fault free, and DC busbar voltage is normal, terminal will effectively indicate signal/relay will pull in.

4: Equipment fault

When inverter goes wrong and sends fault signal, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

5: Equipment alarm

When there is exception of inverter and sending warning signal, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

6: Equipment fault or alarm

When there is fault for exception of inverter and sending fault or warning signal, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

7: Reverse running

When electric motor rotates reversely, the terminal will output the valid signal/relay will pull in.

8: Running command valid

When running instruction of inverter is valid, the terminal will output the valid signal/relay will operate.

9: Running at zero speed

When running instruction is valid but output frequency of inverter is at zero and there is current output, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

10: Speed not at zero

When the speed of rotator of electric motor is not at zero (VC mode) or output frequency is not at zero (VF or SVC mode), terminal will output the valid signal/relay will pull in.

11: Inverter undervoltage stop

When inverter is in under-voltage stop and reporting Fu.008, the terminal will output the valid signal/relay will pull in.

12: Terminal control effective

When control command of frequency converter is given not on panel, terminal will output the valid signal/relay will pull in.

14: Running at power generating status (braking)

When inverter is in regenerative braking running state, terminal will output the valid signal/relay will pull in.

19: Completion of current stage of multi-stage running (0.5s pulse)

After completion of current stage of multi-stage running, terminal will output the valid pulse signal with 0.5s width/relay will disconnect after pulling in for 0.5s.

20: Multi-stage running completed (0.5s pulse)

After completion of one cycle of multi-stage speed running, terminal will output the valid impulse signal with 0.5s width/relay will disconnect after pulling in for 0.5s.

21: Multi-stage running completed (continuous level output)

After completion of one cycle of multi-stage speed running, terminal will output continuous valid signal/relay will pull in.

22: Multi-stage running cycle completed (0.5s pulse)

After completion of one cycle of multi-stage speed running, terminal will output effective impulse signal with 0.5s width/relay will disconnect after pulling in for 0.5s.

23: Swing frequency upper and lower limit

After selection of wobulation, if the frequency fluctuation range of wobulation, which calculated based on center frequency, is above upper limit frequency F0.1.21 or below lower limit frequency F0.1.22, then terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

24: Encoder direction

It is used to indicate the directional signal output by current encoder frequency division.

26/29/32: Monitoring parameters 1/2/3 below the lower limit

When monitoring parameters 1/2/3 are below the lower limit values, terminal will output the valid signal/relay will pull in, which keeps until monitoring parameters 1/2/3 are above the upper limit values, then output the invalid signal/relay disconnects (as shown in Figure 7-34-A).

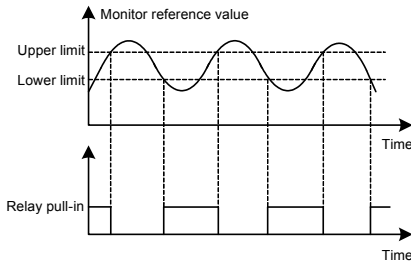


Figure 7-34-A Monitor functional sketch 1

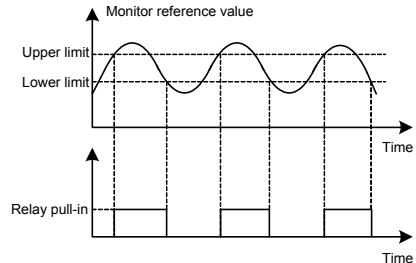


Figure 7-34-B Monitor functional sketch 2

27/30/33: Monitoring parameters 1/2/3 above the lower limit

When monitoring parameters 1/2/3 are above the upper limit values, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in, which keeps until monitoring parameters 1/2/3 are below the lower limit values, then output ineffective signal/relay disconnects (as shown in Figure 7-34-A)

28/31/34: Monitoring parameters 1/2/3 between the upper limit and the lower limit

When monitoring parameters 1/2/3 are between upper and lower limit values (including equal to upper and lower limit values), the terminal will output the indicator signal/relay will pull in.

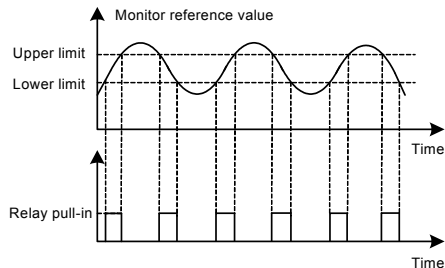


Figure 7-34-C Functional sketch 3 of monitor

36~38: Analog input AI1 wire-break detection effective

When inverter detects wire-break of analog input, it will choose to make corresponding operation according to operation after wire-break; Meanwhile terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

40~43: Counter output signal

When counting of counter reaches to setting value, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in. Please refer to function specifications for F5.2.20~F5.2.27 parameters

44~49: Timer output signal

When comparative value /periodic value of timer reaches to setting value, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in. Please refer to function specifications for **F5.1.06 ~ F5.1.19** parameters

55~62: Status of multifunctional input terminal

If D10~D18 terminals are effective, terminal will output effective signal/relay will pull in.

63: DO3/Fout terminal as the frequency output terminal

As frequency output terminal, frequency range of signal output by DO3/ Fout: 0.07~100.0KHz.

64~71: Please refer to chapter six “chart2: Variable table of multi-function output terminal (DO/EDO/SDO)”

F3.1.15~F3.1.20 DO1~DO3 delay time for switching signal output ON and OFF	Setting range: 0.01~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.0
F3.1.23~F3.1.26 RO1/RO2 delay time for switching ON/OFF	Setting range: 0.01~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.0

This group of parameters are used to define multi-function output terminal DO1~DO3 and time delay of change for signal state output by multi-function relay RO1/RO2. When signal output by multi-function terminal and pulled in by relay is effective, terminal will output indicator signal, and relay will pull in(connection of TA and TC) after delay time set by parameters F3.1.15~F3.1.20, F3.1.23~F3.1.26.

F3.1.27~F3.1.29 Input variables of monitor 1~3	Setting range: 0~44	Factory default: 0~2
---	----------------------------	-----------------------------

Different state parameters can be monitored by setting the values of F3.1.27~F3.1.29.

F3.1.30~F3.1.35 Upper and lower limit of monitor 1~3 variables	Setting range: 0.0~100.0%	Factory default: 0.0/100.0
---	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

This group of parameters restricts the range of monitoring parameter variables, of which the set values are relative to the percentages of full monitoring variable output.

7.15 Pulse input (group f3.2)

F3.2.36 Min pulse input frequency DI9/Fin	Setting range: 0.0~100.00KHz	Factory default: 0.0
F3.2.37 Max pulse input frequency DI9/Fin	Setting range: 0.01~100.00KHz	Factory default: 10.0
F3.2.38 Pulse detection cycle	Setting range: 1~20ms	Factory default: 10

This group of parameters defines multi-function input terminal **DI9/Fin** as frequency range and detection cycle of external pulse signal for pulse input (**F3.0.08** is set as 97~99), effective breadth of external pulse signal is 5~30V.

F3.2.39 Encoder pulse single channel	Setting range: 1~4096	Factory default: 1024
---	------------------------------	------------------------------

When input frequency signal of **DI9/Fin** terminal is used for length accumulation or speed measurement, these parameters are used to set pulse signal quantity for each rotation of encoder.

F3.2.40 Mechanical transmission ratio	Setting range: 0.010~10.000	Factory default: 1.000
F3.2.41 Driving wheel diameter (for liner speed calculation)	Setting range: 0.1~2000.0mm	Factory default: 100.0

This group of parameters is used for linear speed calculation or length accumulation.

Mechanical drive ratio=rotating speed of pulse speed measuring shaft: Rotating speed of motor shaft

F3.2.42 Max length count value	Setting range: 10m~50000m	Factory default: 50000
F3.2.43 Max liner speed	Setting range: 0.01~500.00	Factory default: 10.00

When reach or exceed limit maximum accumulative length or linear speed, warning signal can be output through multi-function output signal DOx.

F3.2.44 Current length count value	Setting range: 0~50000m	Factory default: —
F3.2.45 Current liner speed	Setting range: 0.0~500.00	Factory default: —

Parameters in read-only state are used to display calculated results of current length and linear speed.

7.16 Pulse output (group f3.3)

F3.3.46 Type of output pulse signal DO3/Fout	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default: 0
---	-------------------------------	---------------------------

0: Frequency signal (0.25-100.00KHz)

1: Frequency signal

2: Pulse width modulation (PWM) signal

In setting 2, the fault frequency range is 0.25 ~100.00KHz, modulation frequency is set by maximum pulse with outputting frequency parameter **F3.3.48**, which can be used to expand AO port.

F3.3.47 Min pulse output frequency DO3/Fout	Setting range: 0.25~100.00KHz	Factory default: 0.25
F3.3.48 Max pulse output frequency DO3/Fout	Setting range: 0.25~100.00KHz	Factory default: 10.0

When this group of parameters define multi-function output terminal **DO3/Fout** as pulse output (Function No. 63), its frequency range of output pulse, category settings of pulse signal output, and output frequency range are different.

F3.3.50 Lower of limit DO3/Fout	Setting range: 0.0~[F3.3.51]	Factory default: 0.0
F3.3.51 Upper of limit DO3/Fout	Setting range: [F3.3.51]~100.0%	Factory default: 100.0

This group of parameters can determine the corresponding relationship between maximum, minimum frequency and pulse output mapping variables, while the set values are the percentages of full pulse output mapping variables.

Corresponding relationship between the two is as shown in Figure 7-35:

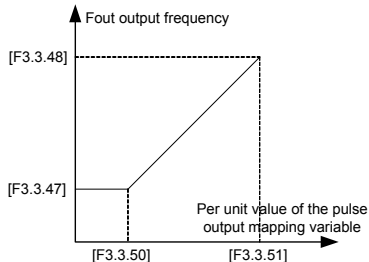


Figure 7-35 Characteristic curve of pulse output fount

7.17 Analog input (group f4.0)

F4.0.00~F4.0.05 Minimum and maximum values of analog input AI1~AI3

This group of parameters is used to define the setting range of analog input signal, which need to be set according to actual situation of access signal.

AI1 analog input port is unipolar voltage signal; AI2 analog input port is unipolar current signal; AI3 analog input signal is bipolar voltage signal.

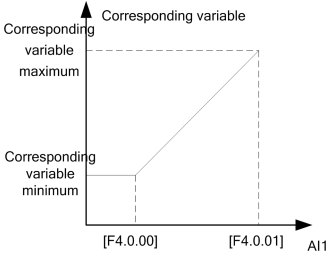


Figure 7-36-A Sketch of AI1 analog input and corresponding variables (unipolarity)

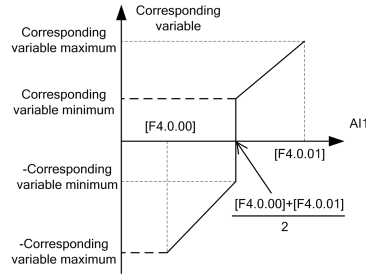


Figure 7-36-B Sketch of AI1 analog input and corresponding variables (biolarity)

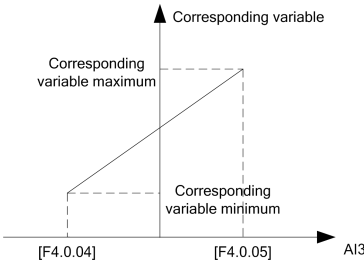


Figure 7-37-A Sketch of AI3 analog input and corresponding variables (unipolarity)

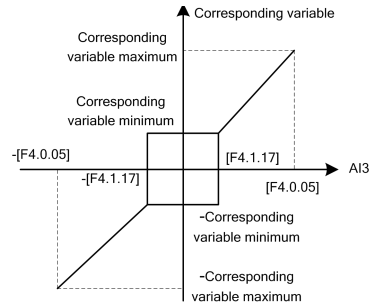


Figure 7-37-B Sketch of AI3 analog input and corresponding variables (bipolarity)



- When the unipolar input signal AI1 and AI2 are applied as bipolar signal, if input signal breaks and input value is maximum reserve setting, it may be dangerous to human and property safety. Please use in combination with broken-line fault detection function of analog input port.

F4.0.06~F4.0.08 Filtering time constant AI1~AI3

Setting range: 1~1000ms

Factory default: 10

Carry out filtering treatment to external analog input quantity to effectively eliminate interference signal. Filtering time constant (time needed for given signal rising to 63% of stable value) should be set properly according to fluctuation range of external input signal, if set it too high, anti-interference capacity will be strong while delaying the speed of response to setting signal.

7.18 Analog input curve correction (group f4.1)

F4.1.09~F4.1.21 Analog input AI1~AI31 curve correction point/value 1~3

This group of parameters is used to conduct nonlinear correction to analog input value as required. Curve correction of analog input AI1 is as shown in figure #, while the curve correction methods of AI2 and AI3 are similar to analog input AI1.

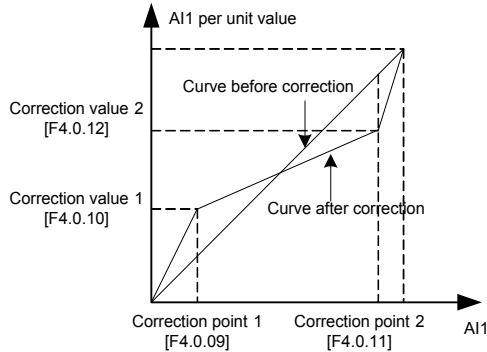


Figure 7-38 Curve correction of analog input AI1

F4.1.17 AI3 hysteresis band dead zone

Setting range: 0.00~2.00

Factory default: 0.10

Set hysteresis width of middle point between maximum value and minimum value of AI3, when it is applied as bipolar signal, forward and reverse fluctuation of zero setting value will be frequent as shown in Figure 7-38. It should be set as 0 when applied as unipolar signal.

7.19 Analog output (group f4.2)

F4.2.22 AO1 function selection

Setting range: 0~45

Factory default: 0

F4.2.23 AO2 function selection/ standard expansion card

Setting range: 0~45

Factory default: 2

Multifunction analog output AO1, AO2 can output voltage signal of 0~10V or current signal of 1~20mA, selected by the dial switch on the control board. Frequency inverter status represented by the analog output signal is set by this group of parameters. Please see Appendix 3 (comparison table of status variable).

F4.2.24 AO1 min value

Setting range: 0.00~10.00V

Factory default: 0.0

F4.2.25 AO1 maxi value

Setting range: 0.00~10.00V

Factory default: 10.00

F4.2.30 AO2 min value/standard expansion card

Setting range: 0.00~10.00V

Factory default: 0.0

F4.2.31 AO2 max value/standard expansion card

Setting range: 0.00~10.00V

Factory default: 10.00

This group of parameters defines the maximum and minimum of multifunction analog output AO1, AO2 allowed to output.

F4.2.26 AO1 lower limit scaling	Setting range: 0.0~[F4.2.27]	Factory default: 0.0
F4.2.27 AO1 upper limit scaling	Setting range: [F4.2.26]~100.0%	Factory default: 100.0
F4.2.32 AO2 lower limit scaling /standard expansion card	Setting range: 0.0~[F4.2.33]	Factory default: 0.0
F4.2.33 AO2 upper limit scaling /standard expansion card	Setting range: [F4.2.32]~100.0%	Factory default: 100.0

Corresponding relationship between maximum and minimum of **AO1**, **AO2** output given by this group of parameters and mapping variable (see figure below), whose set value is the percentage relevant to the full output of mapping variable of **AO1**, **AO2**.

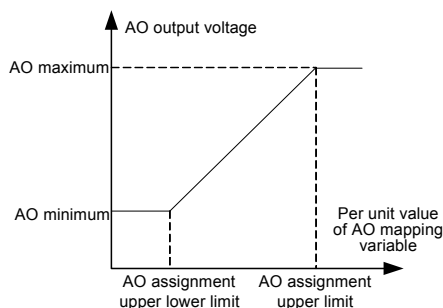


Figure 7-39 AO output characteristic curve

F4.2.28 AO1 filtering time constant	Setting range: 0.01~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.10
F4.2.34 AO2 filtering time constant/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0.01~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.10

This group of parameters is used to set the filtering time coefficient of **AO1**, **AO2** analog output signal, according to selection of requirements of the rapidity and wave character of signal. The larger the time coefficient is, the smoother the output signal is, and the slower the response is.

F4.2.29 AO1 output signal selection	Setting range: 0.00~20.00mA (0.00~10.00V)	Factory default: 0.0
F4.2.35 AO2 output signal selection/standard expansion card	Setting range: 0.00~20.00mA (0.00~10.00V)	Factory default: 0.0

When the mapping variable of multifunction analog output **AO1**, **AO2** is a fixed value (**F4.02.22**, **F4.2.23** is set as 24), fixed value of **AO1** output is [**F4.2.29**], and the fixed value of **AO2** output is [**F4.2.35**], which can output voltage and current signal.

7.20 Analog input wire-break detection (group f4.3)

On condition that break detection function of analog input is valid, when the value of **AI1**, **AI2** and **AI3** analog input is within the range of detection threshold level, when the frequency inverter passes the action of break detection delay, conduct corresponding action according to the selected setting after the wire-break action.

F4.3.39 Action selection after AI1 wire-break	Setting range: 0~4	Factory default: 0
F4.3.43 Action selection after AI2 wire-break	Setting range: 0~4	Factory default: 0
F4.3.48 Action selection after AI3 wire-break	Setting range: 0~4	Factory default: 0

Define corresponding actions after frequency inverter detects analog input wire-breakage.

0: No action (for non-stop alarm)

When detecting analog input wire-break, if the frequency inverter operates normally, it only reports aL.036-aL.038 warning signal. If the wire-break fault is cleared, the warning signal can be cleared automatically.

1: Forcedly set to the minimum

When detecting analog input wire-break, if the frequency inverter operates normally, it reports aL.036-aL.038 warning signal. Meanwhile, forcedly set the analog input signal to the minimum of analog input. If the wire-break fault is cleared, the warning signal can be cleared automatically, meanwhile, the analog input signal recovers to input value.

2: Forcedly set to the maximum

When detecting analog input wire-break, if the frequency inverter operates normally, it reports aL.036-aL.038 warning signal. Meanwhile, forcedly set the analog input signal to the maximum of analog input. If the wire-break fault is cleared, the warning signal can be cleared automatically, meanwhile, the analog input signal recovers to input value.

3: Forcedly set to the default value

When detecting analog input wire-break, if the frequency inverter operates normally, it reports aL.036-aL.038 warning signal. Meanwhile, forcedly set the analog input signal to the default input value of analog input. If the wire-break fault is cleared, the warning signal can be cleared automatically, meanwhile, the analog input signal recovers to input value.

4: Inverter forced trip stop

When detecting analog input wire-break, it reports aL.036 - aL.038 fault signal and lock output, and load motor freely sliding down. If the wire-break fault is cleared, fault signal shall be cleared with hand-reset.

7.21 HOPPING FREQUENCY (GROUP F5.0)

Hopping frequency function makes the output frequency of frequency inverter to avoid the mechanical resonant frequency point of machine loaded.

Setting frequency of frequency inverter can operate with hopping frequency near some frequency point as the method in the figure below, with 3 hopping ranges defined at most.

After hopping frequency parameters are set, even the setting frequency of frequency inverter is within the mechanical resonant frequency band of driving system; Output frequency of frequency inverter will still adjust out of the mechanical resonant band, operating with lower limiting value of the hopping range of this hopping frequency.

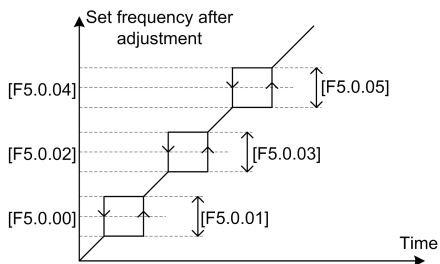


Figure 7-40 Schematic diagram of hopping frequency output

7.22 Built-in auxiliary timer (group f5.1)

This group of parameters is mainly instructed by taking example of timer 1.

7.22.1 Basic functions of the timer

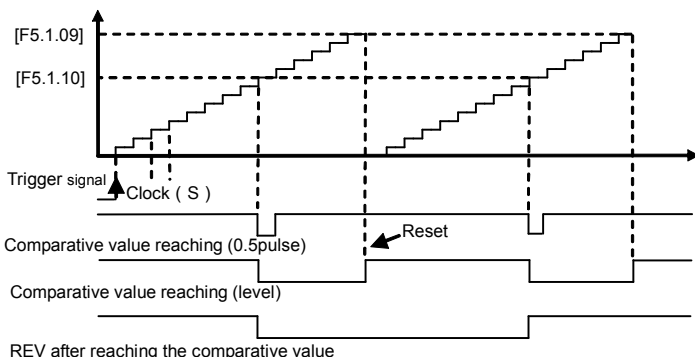


Figure 7-41-A Schematic diagram of comparison value of timer 1 reaching for the basic function (F5.1.06=11#1)

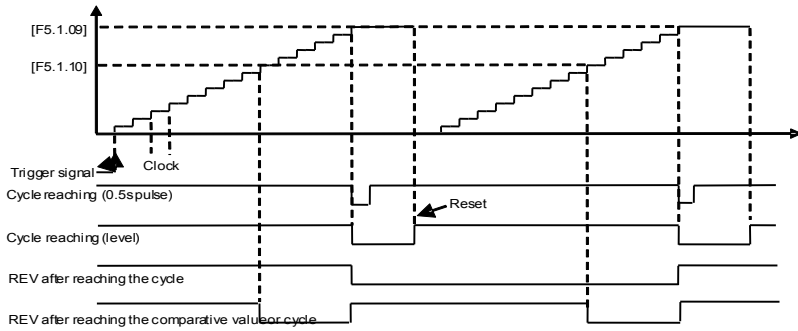


Figure 7-41-B Schematic diagram of comparison value of timer 1 reaching for the basic function (F5.1.06=10#1)

7.22.2 Trigger and gate control function setting of timer

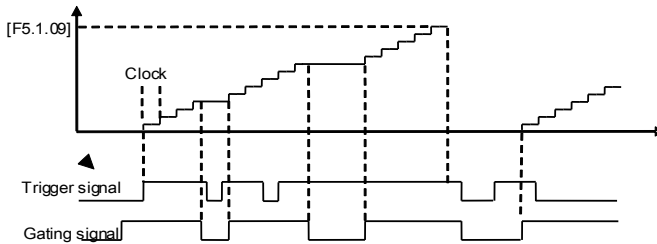


Figure 7-41-C Starting trigger and gate control signal function of timer 1 (UT1)
(F5.1.06=1111; F5.1.15=0001)

7.22.3 Clock concatenation function setting of timer

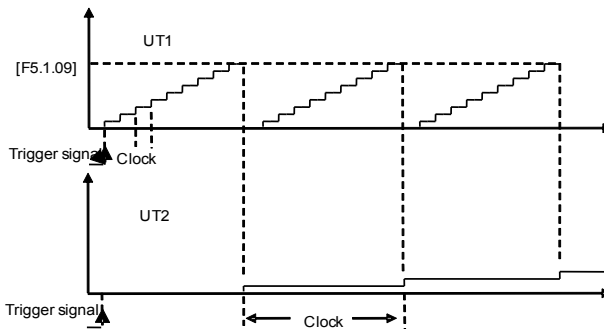


Figure 7-41-D Pulse concatenation function of timer 1(UT1) (F5.1.06=10#1; F5.1.07=###3)

7.22.4 Concatenation trigger function setting of timer

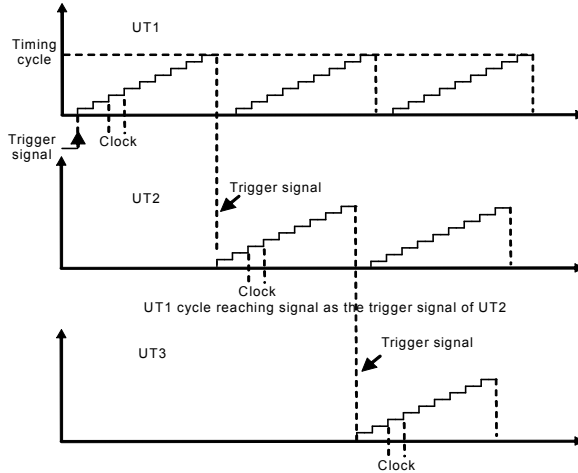


Figure 7-41-E Concatenation trigger function setting of timer (UT1, UT2, UT3)

7.23 Built-in auxiliary counter (group f5.2)

Similar to the function of timer, the counter is designed for external clock (unknown frequency variable), and timer is designed for the internal clock (known and determined frequency). With the terminal function of analog input output, it can transfer the counter into the function of timer.

Differences: Counter will continue to count upwards without reset, and start from 0 on until overflow.

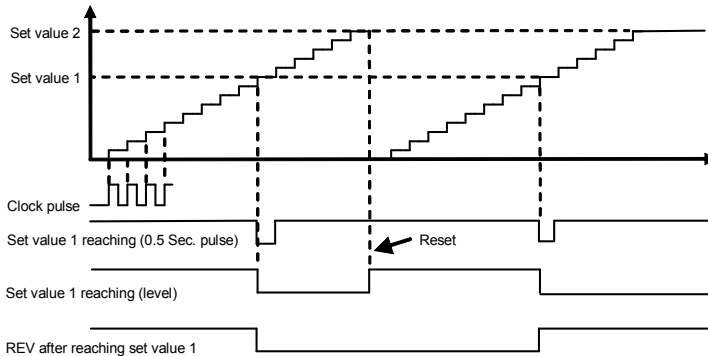


Figure 7-42-A Counter function 1

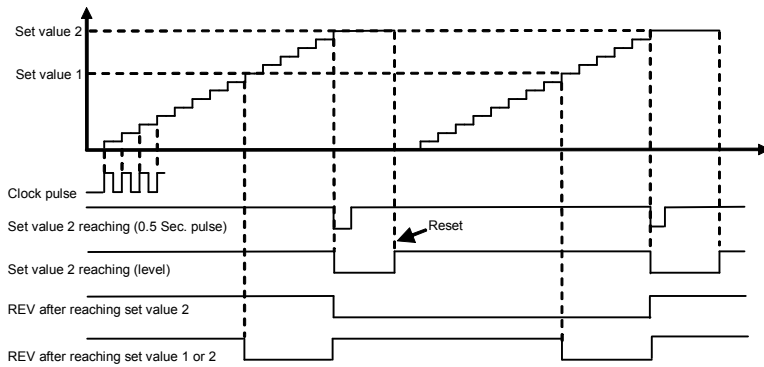


Figure 7-42-B Counter function 2

7.24 Auxiliary functions (group f5.3)

F5.3.28 Priority selection of frequency (revolution) command source

Setting range: 0000~7777

Factory default: 0000

This parameter is used to define the priority order of (revolving speed) instructions source of given frequency. When the setting channel with higher priority is invalid, frequency set value of frequency inverter will automatically set value with the frequency of next top priority.

Table 7-17 Frequency Setting Order of V800 Frequency Inverter:

Priority	Setting	Remarks
1	Inching frequency setting	Top priority
2	Torque control method	In case of torque control method, frequency setting is invalid
3	Priority defined by this parameter (four at most)	Priority defined by this parameter shall be deleted from the list of lower priority automatically
4	process PID output	
5	Swing frequency Operating frequency	
6	compensation PID output	
7	Revolving speed setting channel (F8.0.00)	
8	Automatic multiple frequency operating order	
9	Multiple operating frequency of external terminal selection	
10	Frequency setting channel (F0.1.16)	Lowest priority

F5.3.29 Lower limiting frequency action mode

Setting range: 0, 1

Factory default: 0

0: Output zero frequency when it is below the lower limiting frequency

If the value is less than the lower limiting frequency, the output of the inverter frequency is zero.

1: Output the lower limiting frequency when it is below the lower limiting frequency

If the value is less than the lower limiting frequency, the output of the inverter frequency is the lower limiting frequency.

F5.3.30 Automatic voltage regulation(only effective in V/F mode)	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default: 0
---	-------------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter applies to the situation that frequency inverter operates with **V/F** mode, forcedly operate with VC, SVC modes. Automatic voltage regulation function is used for ensuring the output voltage of frequency inverter not fluctuate as the input voltage fluctuates. In condition that grid voltage fluctuates greatly, while stable stator voltage and current of motor is required, this function shall be operated.

F5.3.31 Energy saving mode (only effective for asynchronous motors)	Setting range: 0, 1	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

Magnetic flux operates optimally, and valid with asynchronous machine. Automatic energy saving operation refers to frequency inverter can detect the load condition of motor automatically, and adjust output voltage timely to make the motor operate at high efficient status, to reach optimal effect of energy saving.

Automatic energy saving operation has the best effect when the load change of motor is with low frequency and wide range. The major energy saving way is to obtain additional energy saving effect from adjusting the status of motor excitation, to make the motor operate at optimal high efficient status, and greatly lower the energy consumption of motor.

Due to the specific corresponding relationship of draught fan, pump load and revolving speed, load condition can be judged according to the output frequency. It is a typical special case of automatic energy saving operation applying drop torque V/F curve. When applying drop torque **V/F** curve (**F1.2.17**, **F1.3.29** selection as 1, 2, 3), without necessary of operating the automatic energy saving operation function.

F5.3.32 DC injection braking	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default: 0
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------

Frequency inverter can increase the magnetic flux when the motor slows down to stop, to make the motor stops more rapidly (see figure below).

The electric energy produced during the braking process is manly consumed in form of heat inside of the motor. Therefore, frequent braking with magnetic flow will lead to the internal temperature of the motor increase. Please be sure the motor temperature shall not over the maximum admissible value.

When input operation order during magnetic flow braking, magnetic flow will be canceled, and frequency inverter will speed up again to the selected frequency. When applying braking resistor, generally the magnetic flow braking shall be selected as invalid or lower the strength properly (F5.3.33).

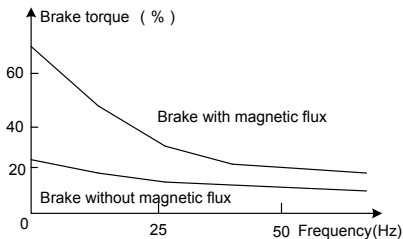


Figure 7-43 Magnetic flow braking curve

F5.3.33 DC injection braking intensity	Setting range: 30~120%	Factory default: ☆
---	-------------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter defines the increased amplitude of motor magnetic flow when magnetic flow braking, selected value is the relevant percentage of rated magnetic flow.

F5.3.34 Voltage over modulation	Setting range: 0, 1	Factory default: 1
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

Voltage over modulation refers to that in condition of lasting low grid voltage or lasting heavy load operation, frequency inverter improve the output voltage with improving the utilization rate of its bus voltage. When over modulation function is valid, output current harmonic will increase slightly.

0: Void

1: Effective

F5.3.35 Use ratio of dynamic braking	Setting range: 50~100%	Factory default: 100
F5.3.36 Level of dynamic braking starting action	Setting range: 700~760V	Factory default: 720

These two parameters is valid to frequency inverters with built-in braking unit (22KW and models below), used to define action parameters of built-in braking unit of frequency inverters. When the voltage at internal direct current side of frequency inverter is higher than starting action level of dynamic braking [F5.3.36], build in braking unit action. If there is external braking resistor, it shall make the direct current voltage fall back, via releasing pumped-up voltage energy with braking resistor. When the voltage at DC side drops down to a specific value, the built-in braking unit of the frequency inverter closes, as shown in Figure 7-44.

Utilization rate of dynamic braking is used to define the average voltage value forced on braking resistor of braking unit action. Voltage on braking resistor is pulse width modulation wave. Duty ratio equals to action ratio of dynamic braking. The large the action ratio is, the faster energy releases, and the more obvious the effect is, as well as the larger power consumed on braking resistor is. Operator may consider setting the parameters comprehensively according to the resistance of braking resistor, power and required braking effect.

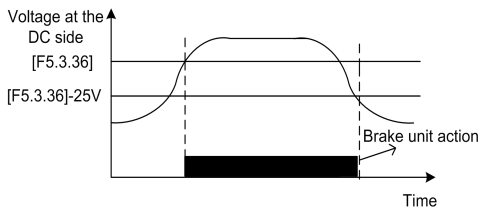


Figure 7-44 Dynamic braking

F5.3.37 Vibration suppression coefficient	Setting range: 0.0; 0.1~10.00	Factory default: 0.0
--	--------------------------------------	-----------------------------

Only valid with V/F control method. Selecting this parameter can restrain the output current oscillation.

Setting 0.0 to close this function. The larger the value is, the slower restraining action is and the wider the biggest adjustment range is.

F5.3.38 Load balancing feature	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default:0
F5.3.39 Load balancing reference	Setting range: 0~5	Factory default:0
F5.3.40 Reference value for load balance load	Setting range: 0.0~200.0%	Factory default:100.0
F5.3.41 Load balancing adjustment gain	Setting range: 0.0~100.00	Factory default:50.00
F5.3.42 Load balancing adjustment limit	Setting range:0.00~100.00(%)	Factory default:1.00

Load dynamic balance function is used for balancing load with multiple motors linkage, or occasions requiring torque motor characteristics of "Frequency inverter-asynchronous electrical units".

When this function is valid, frequency inverter shall take the input value of dynamic balance load reference source (relative value of rated current) as reference, automatically amend the input of frequency/revolving speed integrator, adjusting output frequency to balance the load. The adjustment to output frequency for dynamic balance function is relatively slow, and influenced by selections of acceleration and deceleration time.

If rapid response of linkage balance operation is required, please apply with linkage operation self-balancing function (referring to instruction of parameters in FA group), or applying with compensation PID to build flexibly as necessary, which can conduct adjustment directly to the output of frequency integrator.

Adjusting gain value = $[F5.3.41] \times \text{rated current of equipment} / 100$, when the difference of output current and reference value reaches the adjusting gain value, output frequency will drop to the adjusting amplitude limit value.

Adjusting amplitude limit value = $[F5.3.42] \times \text{current selected frequency} / 100$, this value is the amplitude peak of dynamic balance adjustment.

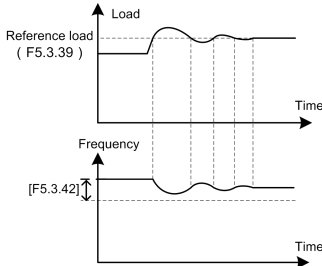


Figure 7-45 Sketch of load dynamic balance function

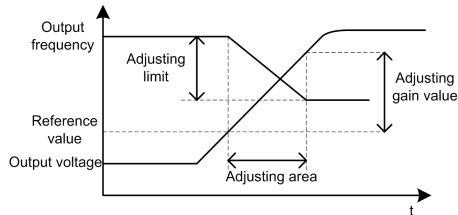


Figure 7-46 Sketch of dynamic balance variables

7.25 Motor temperature detection (group f5.4)

F5.4.43 Type 2 of motor temperature sensor	Setting range: 0~6	Factory default: 0
---	---------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter is referred to types of the selected motor temperature sensor; the different selected motor temperatures sensor with different internal algorithms results in corresponding changes in units of **F5.4.46** and

F5.4.47: When the sensor is the thermoswitch/**PT100**, their units are $^{\circ}\text{C}$; When the sensor is **PTC**, their units are Ω

- | | |
|--|--|
| 0: None | 1: 1 X PT100 |
| 2: 2 X PT100 | 3: 3 X PT100 |
| 4: PTC sensor | 5: Thermoswitch (normally closed) |
| 6: Thermoswitch (normally open) | |

The motor temperature can be measured by connecting the PT100 or PTC sensor to the analog input and output interfaces of frequency converter. See Figure 7-47-A and Figure 7-47-B for wiring:

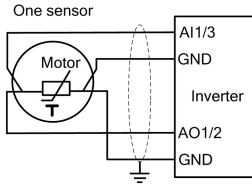


Figure 7-47-A Motor temperature measurement wiring1

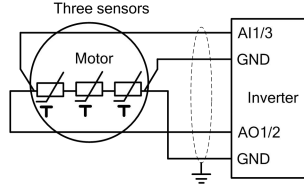


Figure 7-47-B Motor temperature measurement wiring2

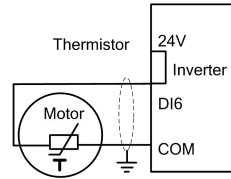


Figure 7-47-C Motor temperature measurement wiring3

The motor temperature can also be measured by connecting the thermoswitch to multifunctional input terminals of frequency inverter (Function No. 62). See Figure 7-47-C for wiring (such as DI6 terminal, that is, F3.0.05=62)

F5.4.44 Sensor current source

Setting range: 0~2

Factory default: 100.0

The functional parameter is used to define the current source port of PT100 or PTC sensor.

0: None

1: AO1

Sensor current source port is the multifunctional analog output **AO1** and the signal type of output should be current signal (dial switch of control panel).

2: AO2

Sensor current source port is the multifunctional analog output **AO2** and the signal type of output should be current signal (dial switch of control panel).



- The parameter will not only modify but also lock the selected AO port's relevant parameters, and set them forcibly as fixed value output. When using PT100 sensor, the port supplies 4.00mA's constant current; When using PTC sensor, the port supplies 1.60mA's constant current.

F5.4.45 Temperature input source

Setting range: 0~3

Factory default: 0

This parameter is used to define the input channel of temperature signal.

0: None

1: AI1 input (PT100 or PTC)

The temperature signal of **PT100** or **PTC** sensor should be inputted through analogy input Channel AI1.

2: AI3 input (PT100 or PTC)

The temperature signal of **PT100** or **PTC** sensor should be inputted through analogy input Channel AI3.

3: DI1~DI9 (thermoswitch)

The temperature signal of thermoswitch should be inputted through multifunctional input terminals Channel **D1-D19** (Function No. 62).

F5.4.46 Warning action threshold value

Setting range: -10.0~500.0°C
(0~5000Ω/PTC)

Factory default: 110.0

F5.4.47 Protection action threshold value

Setting range: -10.0~500.0°C
(0~5000Ω/PTC)

Factory default: 130.0

This parameter is used to define the alert action point and protective action point for over-temperature detection; The unit should be determined by the motor temperature sensor used.

7.26 Multi-stage frequency setting (group f6.0)

F6.0.00~F6.0.14 Preset speed 1~15	Setting range: [F0.1.22]~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 5.00~50.00
--	---	------------------------------------

The parameter is for the setup of multi-stage operation's frequency and can be used to multistage velocity operation and simple programmable multi-stage operation. Refer to the detailed specifications of multi- velocity control function 1, 2, 3, 4 of multifunctional input terminals **F3.0.00-F3.0.07** and simple programm -able multistage operation in **F6.1** group parameters. Frequency inverter can transform frequency and direction automatically according to the running time to satisfy the requirement of technology, as Figure 7-48-A shown.

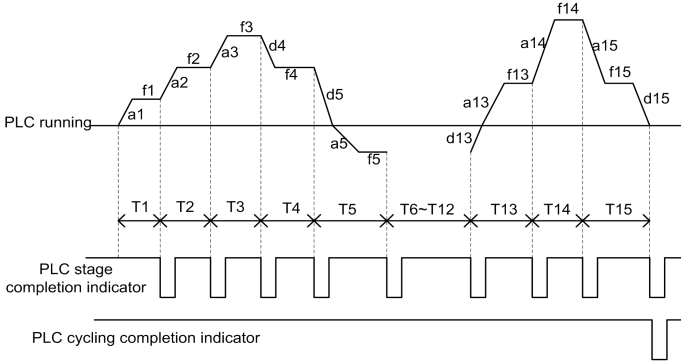


Figure 7-48-A Simple PLC operation

In the figure, **a1-a15** and **d1-d15** are current stage's time of acceleration and deceleration, while **f1-f15** and **T1-T15** are current stage's given frequency and operating time. All these will be defined in this parameter respectively.

The completion of simple programmable multi-stage operation for stage, cycle and so on can access to multifunctional output terminals or relay's output index signal. Refer to Function 20, 21 (multi-stage operation completed) and 22 (multi-stage operating cycle completed) among the **F3.1.15-F3.1.20**.

F6.0.15 Programmable multi-stage mode	Setting range: 0000~1254	Factory default: 0000
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

___ X : Function selection

0: Function selection

1: Multi-stage frequency/revolution operation effective

In case of frequency (revolution) instruction source allowed to the priority, the frequency converter operates in multi-stage frequency/revolution.

2: Multi-stage frequency/revolution operation condition effective

When multifunctional input terminal (Function No.23) is valid, frequency inverter operates in multi-stage frequency/revolution; when it is invalid, frequency inverter will automatically access to frequency setup mode allowed to the lower priority.

3: Multi-stage PID setting operation effective

When the process **PID** starts its function, the setup of **PID** should be set automatically according to given time cycle, at most 7 stages being set (F7.1.27 ~ F7.1.33).

4: Multi-stage PID setting operation condition effective

When multifunctional input terminal (Function No. 23) is valid, the multi-stage setting of process **PID** is also valid, at

most 7 stages being set (F7.1.27 ~ F7.1.33).

__X__: Operation mode

0: Single cycle

Frequency inverter should firstly operate with first multi-stage speed set frequency and output each velocity's frequency according to given operating time. If the given operating time of a certain velocity is of zero, jump out of the velocity; With a cycle's operation, the frequency inverter should stop outputting and input an effective operating instruction once again to run the next cycle. See as Figure 7-48-B.

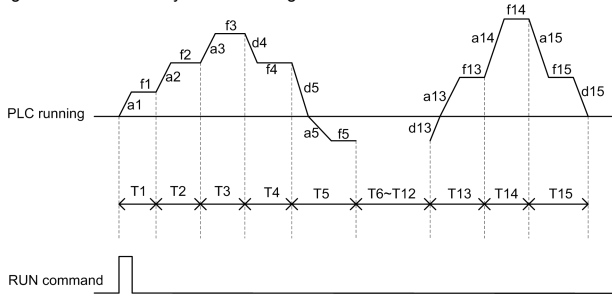


Figure 7-48-B Simple PLC operation single cycle mode

1: Single cycle stop mode

The basic operation mode is the same as mode 0 and its difference is that after frequency inverter operates a stage speed, it firstly lowers the output frequency to zero according to specified deceleration time, then outputs next stage's frequency.

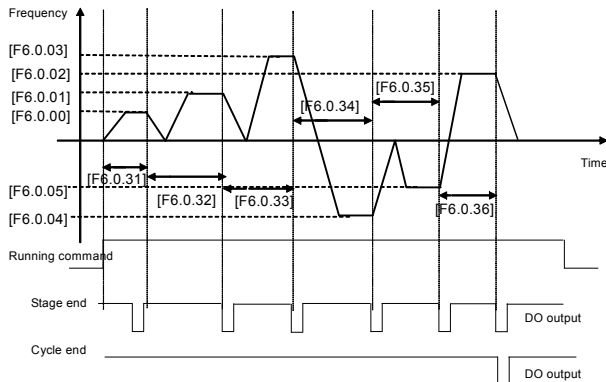


Figure 7-48-C Single cycle stop mode of simple PLC operation

2: Continuous cycling mode

As the figure shown, the frequency inverter starts next cycle after automatically after it finishes a cycle until it receives stop instruction.

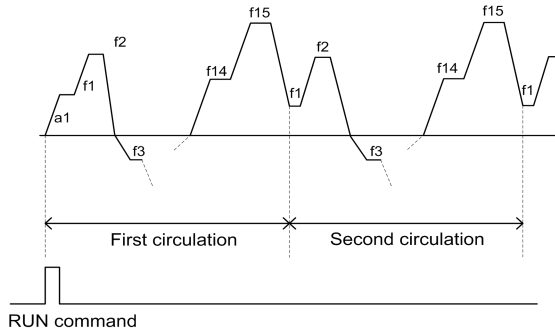


Figure 7-48-D Continuous cycling mode of simple PLC operation

3: Continuous cycle stop mode

Basic operation mode is the same as mode 2 and its difference is that after frequency inverter operates a stage speed, it firstly lowers the output frequency to zero according to specified deceleration time, then outputs next stage's frequency.

4: Keeping the final value

As the figure shown, the frequency inverter will keep the last stage's operation frequency and direction automatically after it finishes a cycle.

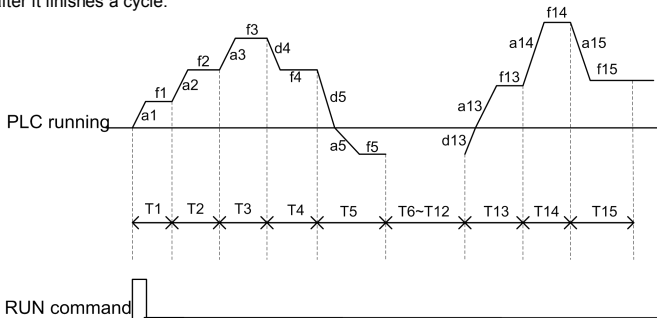


Figure 7-48-E Simple PLC operation keeping the final value mode

5: Keeping the final value stop mode

Basic operation mode is the same as mode 4 and its difference is that after frequency inverter operates a stage speed, it firstly lowers the output frequency to zero according to specified deceleration time, then outputs next stage's frequency.

X: Selection of breakpoint/stop recovery mode

0: Restore running at the first stage

In simple programmable multi-stage operation, frequency inverter will clear out current operation state

automatically after it stops because of error stop or stop instruction; Restore running at the first stage after it starts again.

1: Start running at the interruption time (effective for multi-stage frequency/ revolution operation)

In simple programmable multi-stage operation, frequency inverter will record the stage operation time and operation frequency automatically at the interrupting time after it stops because of error stop or stop instruction; Start running at the interruption time after it starts again.

2: Start running at the stage of interruption

In simple programmable multi-stage operation, frequency inverter will record the stage operation time and operation frequency automatically at the interrupting time after it stops because of error stop or stop instruction; Start running at the stage of interruption after it starts again. The single difference between mode 1 and 2 is the different frequencies at the stage of interruption. See as Figure 7-49.

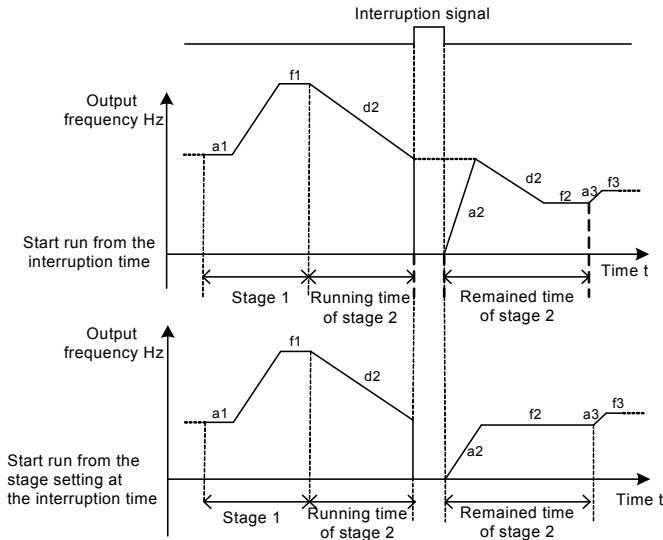


Figure 7-49 Breakpoint recovery sketch

X ___: Power-off status storage

0: Not stored

When the frequency converter fails power, it does not store the simple programmable multi-stage operation and starts operating from the first stage after power comes again.

1: Stored

When the frequency converter fails power, it stores the simple programmable multi-stage operation, including the power-off status, operation frequency, operated time, and operates according to the parameter's breakpoint/stop recovery mode of hundred definition after power comes again.

7.27 Simple programmable multi-stage operation (group f6.1)

F6.1.16~F6.1.30 Setting of stage 1~15	Setting range: 0000~1321	Factory default:0000
--	---------------------------------	-----------------------------

The unit: Operating frequency source/setting source at each stage

0: Multi-stage frequency setting 1~15/Process PID multi-stage setting 1~7 (1~7)

Stage operation frequency set values should be set by multi-stage frequency setting 1~15 (Group F6.0)/ Process PID multi-stage setting 1~7 (Group F7.1).

1: Frequency command (F0.1.16)/Process PID setting (F7.0.01)

Stage operation frequency set values should be set by frequency command (F0.1.16)/Process PID setting (F7.0.01).

F6.1.31~ F6.1.45 Stage 1 running time	Setting range: 0.0~6500.0	Factory default: 0.0
--	----------------------------------	-----------------------------

The parameter is used to the setting of each stage's operation time; when it occurs to a zero, it means jumping over this operation stage.

7.28 Swing frequency operation (group f6.2)

Swing frequency operation is regulated by upper and lower boundary of frequency. If the function's parameter group is improper, swing frequency operates properly.

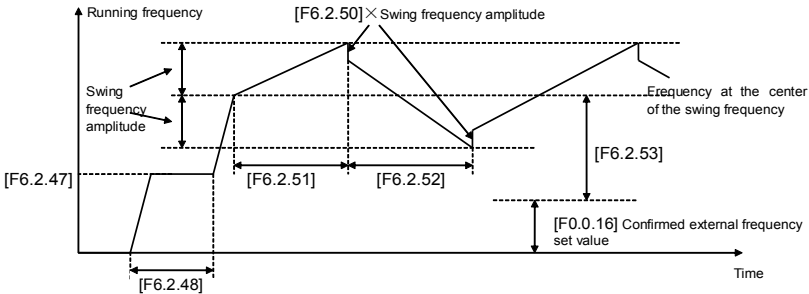


Figure 7-50 Swing frequency operation sketch

F6.2.46 Function selecting (H)	Setting range: 0000~1112	Factory default: 0000
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

___X : Function Setting

0: Function closed

The functional parameter of Group F6.2 is available.

1: Function effective

In case of frequency (revolution) instruction source allowed to the priority, the frequency inverter adopts swing function.

2: Terminal selectivity effective

When the multifunctional input terminal of definition 24 (swing operation input) is valid, the frequency inverter adopts swing function. In case of frequency (revolution) instruction source allowed to the priority, If it invalidates, frequency converter operates with the set value of swing frequency preset frequency **F6.2.47**. In this mode, preset frequency waiting time invalidates.

F6.2.47 Preset frequency of traverse	Setting range: 0.00~[F0.1.21]	Factory default:10.00
F6.2.48 Waiting time for preset frequency	Setting range: 0.0~6000.0Sec.	Factory default: 0.0

Preset frequency is referred to the operation frequency before frequency inverter adopts swing frequency operation or breaks away from operation frequency of swing frequency operation. Determine the operation mode of preset frequency according to the instruction of swing frequency function.

When the selected swing frequency function is valid ([F6.2.46]=__ _ 1), frequency inverter starts swing frequency preset frequency after running, then runs the swing frequency operation status via the process of preset frequency waiting time.

In case of the selected swing frequency function terminal available ([F6.2.46]=__ _ 2), when swing frequency operation input terminal is valid, frequency inverter runs the swing frequency operation status; When it invalidates, frequency converter outputs preset frequency ([F6.2.47]), and the preset frequency waiting time is unavailable.

F6.2.49 Swing frequency amplitude	Setting range: 0.0~50.0%	Factory default: 10.0
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

Swing frequency amplitude is the ratio of swing frequency amplitude.

When it occurs to fixed swing frequency amplitude ([F6.2.46]=_ 0 _ _), mathematics of practical swing frequency amplitude is:

Practical swing frequency amplitude= [F6.2.49] × maximum frequency [F0.1.20]

When it occurs to changeable swing frequency amplitude ([F6.2.46]=_ 1 _ _), mathematics of practical swing frequency amplitude is:

Practical swing frequency amplitude= [F6.2.49] × (preset frequency of swing frequency center [F6.2.53] + frequency set value F0.1.16)

F6.2.50 Sudden jump frequency	Setting range: 0.0~50.0%	Factory default: 10.0
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

Sudden jump frequency is the amplitude of frequency's fast descending after it reaches upper boundary in swing frequency cycle, that is, the amplitude of frequency's fast ascending after it reaches lower boundary. See in detail the Reference Diagram 7-50.

Practical sudden jump frequency = [F6.2.50] × practical swing frequency amplitude.

F6.2.51 Rise time of triangular wave	Setting range: 0.0~1000.0Sec.	Factory default: 10.0
F6.2.52 Fall time of triangular wave	Setting range: 0.0~1000.0Sec.	Factory default: 10.0

The parameter in this group is referred to acceleration and deceleration slope in the process of swing frequency.

Triangular wave rising time is referred to the time spent from the lower boundary frequency to the upper boundary frequency in swing frequency operation, that is, the acceleration time in the cycle of swing frequency operation.

Triangular wave decreasing time is referred to the time spent from the upper boundary frequency to the lower boundary frequency in swing frequency operation, that is, the deceleration time in the cycle of swing frequency operation.

The sum of triangular wave rising time and decreasing time is the swing frequency operation cycle.

F6.2.53 Center frequency setting of traverse	Setting range: 0.00~[F0.1.21]	Factory default: 10.00
---	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------

Frequency setting in the center of the swing frequency is referred to the center value of frequency converter output frequency in the process of swing frequency operation.

Center frequency of practical output = [F6.2.53] + F0.1.16 certain set frequency.

Refer to the following figure for the structure of Process PID and functions of each functional parameters:

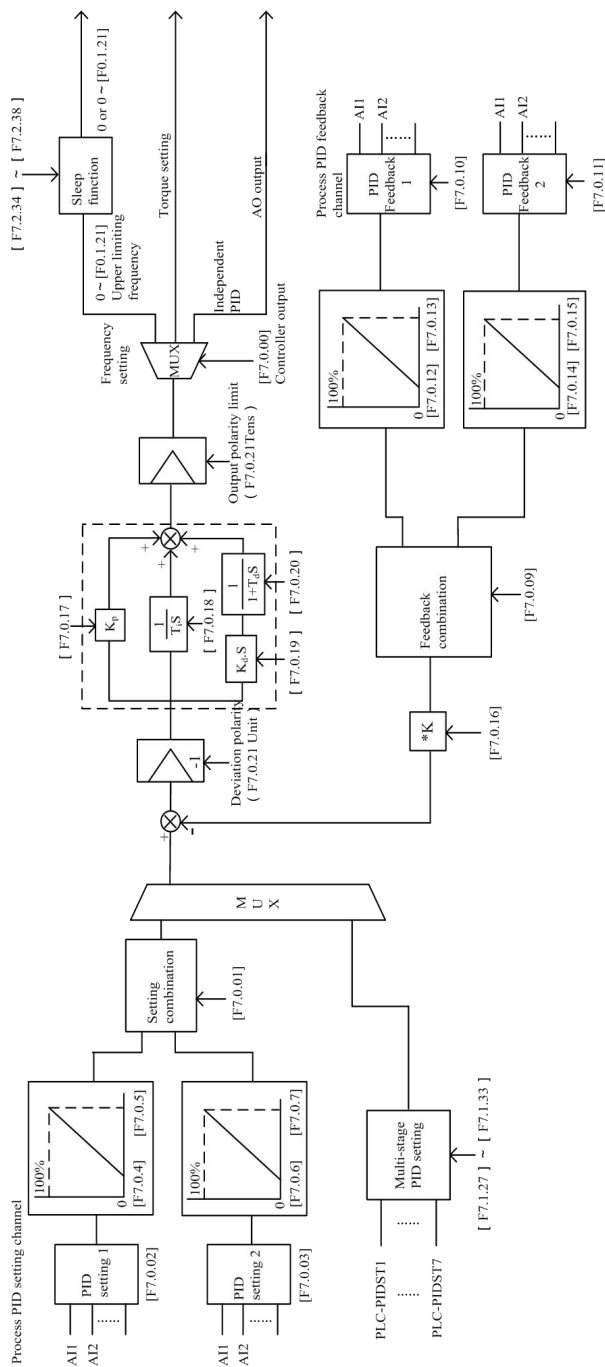


Figure 7-51 Schematic block of process PID control

7.29 Process PID (4ms control cycle) (group F7.0)

F7.0.00 Process PID function selection	Setting range: 0000~2102	Factory default: 0000
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

Process PID works when frequency setting channel (F0.2.25, F0.2.26 value 23) functional, and need set frequency reference priority selection (F5.3.28) to 0007, then the output of the process PID be as the frequency command of frequency setting channel, the upper limit of this frequency command will be chosen by the kilobit of this parameter. This function is mainly applied in occasions of PID output and external set superposition. Wake up/sleep is invalid in this mode.

X _ _ _ : The main and auxiliary superposition mode refer to frequency reference

0: Upper frequency limit

The frequency reference determined by the maximum value of chosen PID function frequency setting channel.

1: superposition channel set value

The frequency reference determined by the value of unselected PID function frequency setting channel.

2: superposition channel set value/upper frequency-superposition channel setting

When the set value of PID output and superposition channel have the same sign, reference frequency will be "frequency-superposition channel setting", otherwise it will be superposition channel set value.

If want wake up/sleep of process PID functional, the priority of rated output mode must higher than frequency setting channel. (F5.3.28=0000 or 0001)

F7.0.04 Analog input minimum value (Channel 1)	Setting range: 0.0V~[F7.0.05]/ AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.05]	Factory default: 0.0
F7.0.05 Analog input maximum value (Channel 1)	Setting range: [F7.0.04]~10.00/ AI2: [F7.0.04] ~20.00mA	Factory default: 10.00
F7.0.06 Analog input minimum value (Channel 2)	Setting range: 0.0V~[F7.0.07]/ AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.07]	Factory default: 0.0
F7.0.07 Analog input maximum value (Channel 2)	Setting range: [F7.0.06]~10.00/ AI2: [F7.0.06] ~20.00mA	Factory default: 10.00

When analog channel input is selected for setting source of process **PID**, corresponding relationship between set value of process **PID** and analog port can be altered with this group of parameters. The corresponding relationship is shown in Figure 7-52.

F7.0.12 Actual value 1 minimum (feedback channel 1)	Setting range: 0.0~[F7.0.13]/ AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.13]	Factory default: 0.0
F7.0.13 Actual value 1 maximum (feedback channel 1)	Setting range: [F7.0.12]~10.00V/ AI2: [F7.0.12] ~20.00mA	Factory default: 5.00
F7.0.14 Actual value 2 minimum (feedback channel 2)	Setting range: 0.0~[F7.0.15]/ AI2: 0.0mA~[F7.0.15]	Factory default: 0.0
F7.0.15 Actual value 2 maximum (feedback channel 2)	Setting range: [F7.0.14]~10.00V/ AI2: [F7.0.14] ~20.00mA	Factory default: 5.00

When the analog channel input is selected for feedback source of process **PID**, corresponding relationship between feedback value of process **PID** and analog port can be altered with this group of parameters. The corresponding relationship is shown in Figure 7-53.

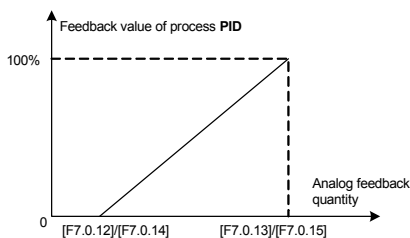


Figure 7-52 Sketch of set value of process PID

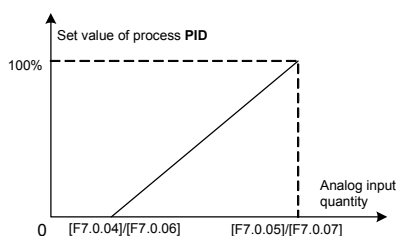


Figure 7-53 Sketch of corresponding relationship of feedback value of process PID

F7.0.16 Actual value multiplication factor	Setting range: 0.01~100.00	Factory default: 1.00
---	-----------------------------------	------------------------------

This function is mainly applied in occasions of flow calculation with differential pressure. When the feedback value is not in accordance with the given value of process **PID**, while there is a certain linear relation, this group of parameters can be selected to make it accordant of the meaning expressed by feedback value and given value of process **PID**. For example, if the given value of process **PID** means flow of the pipe, feedback value of process **PID** means flow rate of the pipe, supposing the set value of this parameter means cross sectional area (CSA) of the pipe, then the given value and feedback value of process **PID** shall be in accordance.

F7.0.17 Proportional gain	Setting range: 0.0~100.00	Factory default: 2.00
F7.0.18 Integral time	Setting range: 0.0, 0.1~1000.0Sec.	Factory default: 20.0
F7.0.19 Differential quotient	Setting range: 0.0, 0.01~10.00	Factory default: 0.0
F7.0.20 Differential inertia filtering time	Setting range: 0.01~100.00 Sec.	Factory default: 10.00

Proportional gain defines the magnification of deviation. The bigger the set value is, the faster the response of system is, but oscillation can be caused when it's too big; the smaller the set value is, the slower the response is. Adjusting only with proportional gain will not eliminate the deviation completely. In order to eliminate the remained deviation, integral time shall be selected. The smaller the integral time is set, the faster the response is, but oscillation of system can be caused when it's too big or too small.

Differentiator can make response to the change rate of deviation. The larger the change is, the larger the output gain is, that is, its gain is in proportion to change rate of deviation. But it won't make response to constant deviation. When differential coefficient is 0.0, it means the differential function closing the controller. Differential function can improve the responsibility of system.

The larger the differential coefficient is set, the stronger the differential function is. In general system, there is no need to introduce differential link.

Larger differential inertia filtering time can make the differential adjustment more smoother, generally, It is set in proportion to the inertia of system.

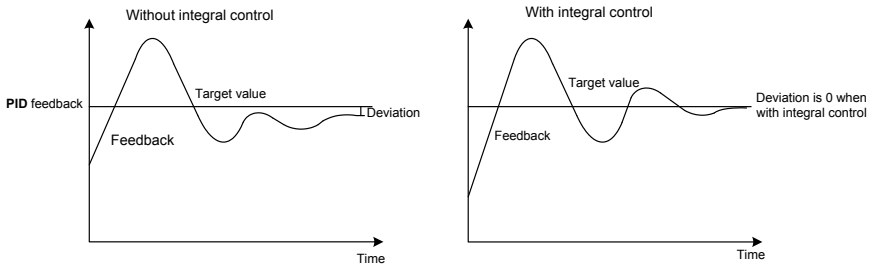


Figure 7-54 Function of integral control

F7.0.21 Configuration of standard PID controller	Setting range: 0000~0111	Factory default: 0000
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__ _ X : Dviation polarity

0: Positive deviation

When feedback signal gets weaker, PID output is increased.

1: Negative deviation

When feedback signal gets weaker, PID output is decreased.

__ _ X _ : Output polarity

0: Single polarity

1: Dual polarity

For single polarity of PID control mode, output of PID adjuster is always positive value, lower limit is 0. For frequency settings, operation direction of frequency inverter is determined with external control order, while PID output can't change the operation direction. Generally, it applies for devices without motor reversal for water and pressure delivery. Refer to Figure 7-55-A.

For dual polarity of PID control mode, output of PID adjuster is negative value. For frequency settings, operation direction of frequency inverter is determined with external control order and "Exclusive OR" calculation of PID output direction, and PID output can change the operation direction. If the direction lock parameter (F0.1.17) is valid, efficient PID output shall take the absolute value. Refer to Figure 7-55-A and Figure 7-55-B.

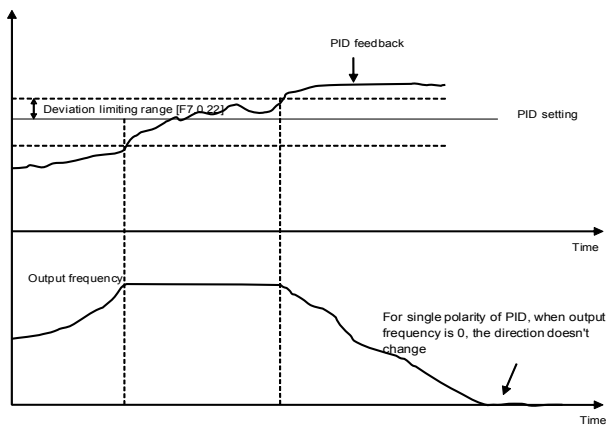


Figure 7-55-A Single polarity of PID control mode

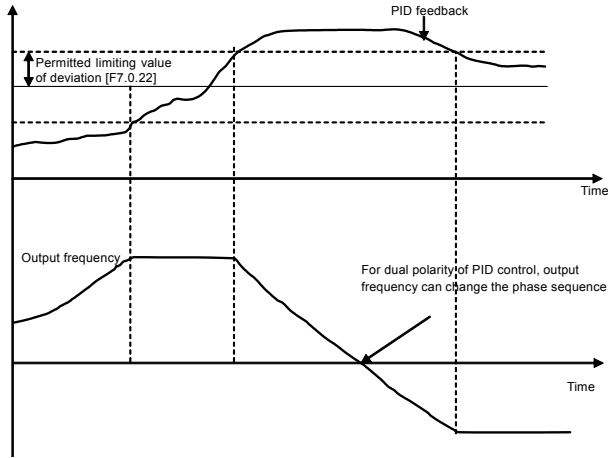


Figure 7-55-B Dual polarity of PID control mode

F7.0.22 Permitted static deviation (relative 100% setting)	Setting range: 0.0~20.0%	Factory default:5.0
---	---------------------------------	----------------------------

Controller output value is the permitted maximum deviation amount with given value of controller. When feedback value is within the range of maximum deviation range, the controller stops adjusting. Proper setting of this function contributes to covering the accuracy and stability of output of system.

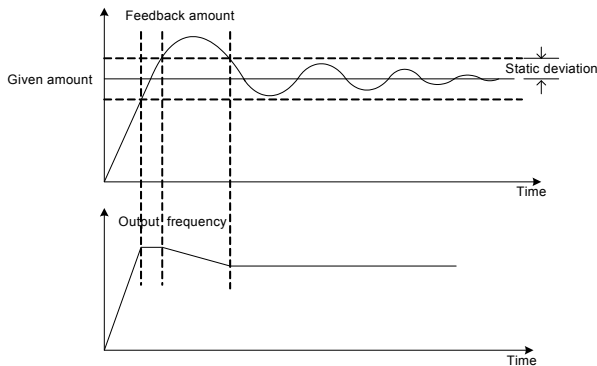


Figure 7-56 Sketch of static deviation

F7.0.23 PID output preset	Setting range: 0.0~100.0%	Factory default:0.0
F7.0.24 Preset hold time before PID starting	Setting range: 0.0~3600.0Sec.	Factory default:0.0

This function can make it earlier to access to the stable stage for PID adjustment. Preset value of PID output is the relevant percentage of upper limiting frequency [F0.1.21].

When frequency inverter start to operate, first of all, it shall be sped up to the preset frequency of PID, and operate as closed-loop characteristics after running continually for a while at this point of frequency [F7.0.24].

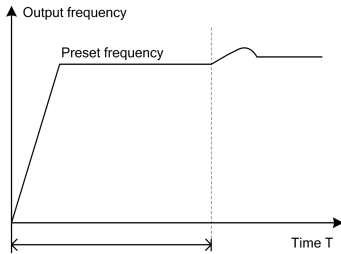


Figure 7-57 Sketch of closed-loop preset frequency operation

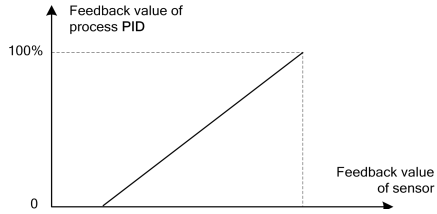


Figure 7-58 Relationship curve of feedback percentage and corresponding sensor value

F7.0.25 1Actual sensor value (range) corresponding to 100% feedback	Setting range: 0.01~100.00	Factory default: 1.00
F7.0.26 Actual sensor value corresponding to 0% feedback	Setting range: -100.00~100.00	Factory default: 0.0

This group of parameter determines the corresponding relationship between feedback percentage and feedback physical quantity, which determines monitoring the displayed dimension of parameter d0.1.36 and d0.1.37. Corresponding relationship curve is shown in Figure 7-58.

7.30 Process pid multi-stage setting (group F7.1)

F7.1.27~F7.1.33 Process PID multi-stage preset	Setting range: -100.0~100.0%	Factory default: 0.0
---	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------

This group of parameter defines the set value of process **PID** multi-stage operation. Set value is the relevant percentage of process **PID** set value determined in **F7.0.01**.

Multi-stage operation of process **PID** can be flexibly realized with multifunction input terminal, please refer to function instruction of given terminal 1, 2, 3(28~30) of multi-stage process **PID** of terminal function **F3.0.00 ~ F3.0.08**.

7.31 Process pid sleeping function (group F7.2)

This function is valid when **PID** output conducts frequency order; Sketch is shown as below:

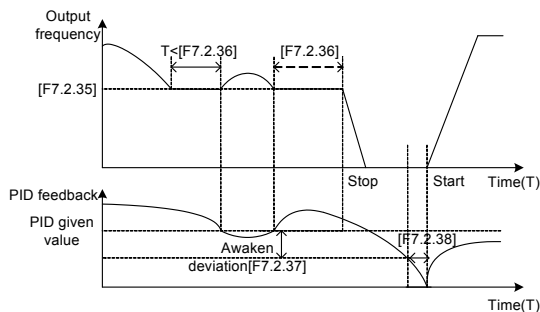


Figure 7-59 Sketch of PID sleeping function



➤ Set value of awakens deviation is the relevant percentage of PID given value.

7.32 Revolution setting and feedback (group F8.0)

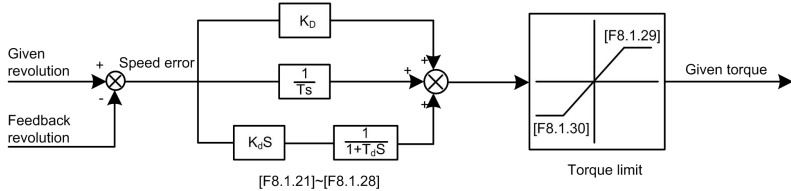


Figure 7-60 Closed-loop block diagram of revolution

This group of parameter is valid with **VC** and **SVC** modes.

F8.0.00 Revolution setting channel	Setting range: 0~10	Factory default: 0
------------------------------------	---------------------	--------------------

This parameter is used to define revolution setting channel. Selecting mode of revolution setting channel is similar with that of frequency setting source channel. Refer to instruction of **F0.2.25** parameter.

0: Set by frequency setting parameter (F0.1.16)

Revolution set value is obtained from transition of frequency set value selected by F0.1.16: Revolution setting=frequency set value*60/pairs of motor polarity

1: Keypad reference (F8.0.03)

Value of **F8.0.03** is set as revolution set value, automatically preserved when outage.

2: Keypad potentiometer

Revolution set value is given by revolving panel shuttle potentiometer.

3: Analog input AI1

4: Analog input AI2

5: Analog input AI3 (Bipolarity)

6: Frequency signal input (Fin)

Take the pulse signal input by pulse input port **Fin** as revolution set value.

7: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 (relative setting)

8: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2 (absolute setting)

9: Virtual analog input SAI1

10: Virtual analog input SAI2

Note: Select revolution setting channels 3~7, upper and lower limiting parameters shall be correctly selected F8.0.01 and F8.0.02.

F8.0.01 Rotational speed minimum	Setting range: 0~60*[F0.1.21]/ pairs of motor poles (rpm)	Factory default: 0
F8.0.02 Rotational speed maximum	Setting range: 0~60*[F0.1.21]/ pairs of motor poles (rpm)	Factory default: 1500

This parameter is used to set the relationship curve of set value and corresponding motor revolution when revolution channel is analog input port of this parameter.

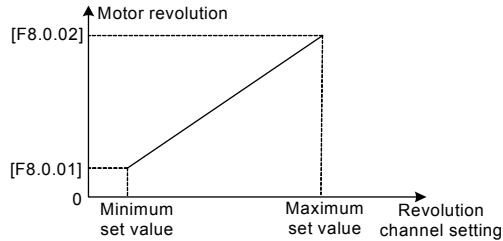


Figure 7-61 Corresponding relation of revolution set value and motor revolution

F8.0.06 PG rotation direction	Setting range: 0, 1	Factory default: 0
--------------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------

In the system of inductive vector controlling, frequency inverter output phase sequence (depending on the connection order between the motor and frequency inverter U, V, W) and the connection order between pulses of encoder Phase A and Phase B should keep uniform. Or it can't function normally and cause the **Fu.020** fault or 0 speed shock when starting. Then it can be solved with modifying the parameter.



- Systems of tension control or hoisting equipment, etc, which may lead to motor shaft side-pulling, may result in Fu.020 fault and at this moment please shield the protective function (FF.1.22 = # 0 # #).

F8.0.09 Revolution check cycle	Setting range: 1~5ms	Factory default: 2ms
---------------------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------

When revolution feedback channel selects an encoder, the parameter sets speed check cycle.

The parameter should set smaller values; Overlarge revolution check cycle may lead to unstable closed-loop running and decelerate response. When use larger check cycle for ensuring the exactness of measuring speed, please lower the proportionality factors F8.1.21, F8.1.25 of revolution closed-loop regulator and enlarge integral time constants F8.1.22, F8.1.26 moderately.

F8.0.11 Loss of rotational feedback signal delay	Setting range: 0.01~5.00Sec.	Factory default: 2.00
F8.0.12 Power failure speed	Setting range: 0~20.0%	Factory default: 0.0

When set revolution is bigger than the wire breakage zero speed signal level (its set value is relative to the percentage of the largest set speed [F8.0.02]), while feedback speed is smaller than wire breakage zero speed signal level, and revolution of frequency inverter checks wire breakage protective function after keeping the set time of **F8.0.11**.

F8.0.13 Rotational feedback sensitivity	Setting range: 0.1~100.0	Factory default: 5.0
--	---------------------------------	-----------------------------

If speed measuring loop interference is great, it can enlarge **[F8.0.13]** to prevent wrong judgments from interference; otherwise decrease the set value to strengthen the response speed of the system to wire breakage check.

F8.0.14 Rotational feedback filter time	Setting range: 1~50ms	Factory default: 2ms
--	------------------------------	-----------------------------

Filtering time coefficient of set revolution feedback in this parameter is available to all of the speed measuring modes (channels). When use encoder for speed measuring, the function is similar to check cycle parameter (**F8.0.09**), therefore there is a need to set smaller values for the system of fast-speed response.

F8.0.15 Rotational feedback minimum value (not PG)	Setting range: 0~30000rpm	Factory default: 0
F8.0.16 Rotational feedback maximum value (not PG)	Setting range: 0~30000rpm	Factory default: 1500

The parameter is used to set relations between revolution feedback signal (feedback channel 1~4) and the corresponding to the motor feedback.

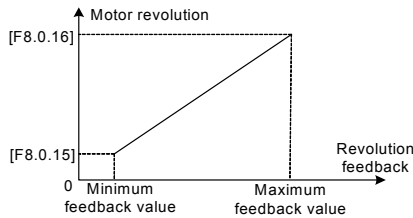


Figure 7-62 Corresponding Relation of Revolution Feedback Value and Motor Revolution

7.33 Revolution closed-loop parameter (group F8.1)

F8.1.18 Controller parameter selection	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default: 2
---	-------------------------------	---------------------------

0: Single PID parameter (the second group of parameters is effective by default)

1: Dual PID parameter (hysteresis switching)

2: Dual PID parameter (continuous switching)

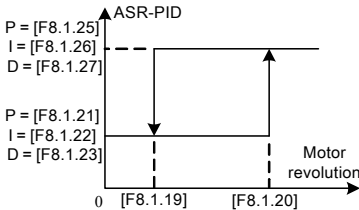


Figure 7-63-A Double PID parameter (hysteresis switching)

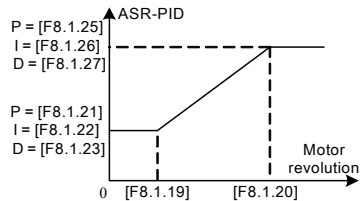


Figure 7-63-B Double PID parameter (continuous switching)

F8.1.19 PID revolution with parameter switching	Setting range: 0~[F8.1.20]	Factory default: 100
F8.1.20 PID parameter switching upper limiting revolution	Setting range: [F8.1.19]~60* [F0.1.21] Motor pole pairs (rpm)	Factory default: 300

The parameters are effective in the condition of double PID parameter hysteresis switching; the first group parameter is effective when it is lower to switching lower revolution [F8.1.18]; The second group parameter is effective when it is higher than switching upper revolution.

F8.1.21 Proportional gain 1 (ASR-P1)	Setting range: 0.1~2.00	Factory default: 1.00
F8.1.22 Integral time 1 (ASR-I1)	Setting range:0.0,0.01~50.00Sec.	Factory default: 1.00
F8.1.23 Differential coefficient 1 (ASR-D1)	Setting range: 0.0, 0.01~10.00	Factory default: 0.0
F8.1.24 Differential output filtering constant 1 (ASR-DT1)	Setting range:0.10~5.00Sec.	Factory default: 1.00
F8.1.25 Proportional gain 2 (ASR-P2)	Setting range: 0.1~2.00	Factory default: 0.80
F8.1.26 Integral time 2 (ASR-I2)	Setting range:0.0,0.01~50.00Sec.	Factory default: 2.50
F8.1.27 Differential coefficient 2(ASR-D2)	Setting range: 0.0, 0.01~10.00	Factory default: 0.0
F8.1.28 Differential output filtering constant 2(ASR-DT2)	Setting range: 0.10~10.00 Sec.	Factory default: 1.00

The parameters are applied to adjust proportional gain of speed adjuster, integral time and differential coefficient. Each parameter should be set as following:

- 1) Proportional gain P: As value is bigger, the response is faster, however the stability of system is worse and overlarge gain can lead to revolution shock.
- 2) Integral time coefficient I: As value is greater, the response is faster, and the revolution over-adjusting is greater, while the stability is worse. In general, the parameters are direct proportional to system inertia. When inertia is great, the parameter also set with great value.
- 3) Differential coefficient D: it is the reverse to differential time constant; there is no need in general system and it should be set to be zero. Differential adjusting in reality is a kind of trend forecasting adjustment; The parameter set is bigger, the differential function is stronger. Proper differential set can fast the response speed, improve the stability, and it is used to the system with requirements of less inertia and fast response.
- 4) Differential output filtering time constant DT: Differential output to the adjuster for a stage of inertia filtering time constant is generally set direct proportion to system inertia.

F8.1.29 Maximum torque output	Setting range: 0.0~250.0%	Factory default: 190.0
F8.1.30 Minimum torque output	Setting range: -250.0~0.0%	Factory default: -190.0

The parameter is applied to set adjuster output amplitude and limit system's transient forward and backward torque. Its set value is the percentage corresponding to rated torque.



- Actual output torque is also limited by adjuster output lower limit amplitude [F1.4.47] and should pick up the lower among the two. When running acceleration and deceleration, it is mainly limited by electricity limit level.

7.34 Protective parameters (group F8.2)

F8.2.32 Excessive action of revolution deviation (DEV)	Setting range: 0~3	Factory default: 0
F8.2.33 Over speed (OS) detection action	Setting range: 0~3	Factory default: 1

The parameter is used to set excessive action of revolution deviation (**DEV**) and over speed (**OS**) detection action.

0: No action

Inverter keeps on running without reporting any fault or warning message.

1: Alarm free stop

Inverter immediately blockades output and reports overlarge deviation of rotating speed (**Fu.018**) or over- speed fault (**Fu.019**), while electric motor freely coasts to stop

2: Alarm deceleration stop

Inverter slows down to stop according to effective time of deceleration, and reports overlarge deviation of rotating speed (**Fu.018**) or over-speed fault (**Fu.019**).

3: Alarm continuing running

Inverter keeps on running, whereas reports overlarge deviation of rotating speed (**aL.018**) or over-speed warning (**aL.019**) at the same time.

F8.2.34 Detected value of excessive revolution deviation (DEV)	Setting range: 0.0~50.0%	Factory default: 20.0%
F8.2.35 Detection time of excessive revolution deviation (DEV)	Setting range: 0.0~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 10.00

These parameters are used to set detecting value and time for overlarge deviation of rotating speed (**DEV**).

Provided that deviation of rotating speed is continuously greater than given **DEV** detecting value within given **DEV** detecting time [**F8.2.35**], then inverter shall be in line with the setting action of **F8.2.32**. Set value of **F8.2.34** is corresponding to the percentage of upper limit frequency [**F0.1.21**].

F8.2.36 Detected value of over speed (OS)	Setting range: 0.0~150.0%	Factory default: 120.0%
F8.2.37 Detection time of over speed (OS)	Setting range: 0.0~2.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.10

These parameters are used to set detecting value and time of over-speed (**OS**).

Provided that feedback rotating speed is continuously faster than given **OS** detecting value within given **OS** detecting time [**F8.2.37**], then inverter shall be in line with the setting action of **F8.2.33**. Set value of **F8.2.36** is corresponding to the percentage of upper limit frequency [**F0.1.21**].

7.35 Torque control (group F8.3)

F8.3.40 Selection of torque command channel	Setting range: 0~12	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

0: Digital setting (F8.3.41)

Take the set value of F8.3.41 as given value of torque, and conduct power failure storage.

1: Panel shuttle potentiometer setting

Set value of torque is given by rotational shuttle potentiometer.

2: Analog input AI1

AI1 input voltage value of 0~10V is corresponding to 0~250% of rated torque.

3: Analog input AI2

AI2 input current value of 4~20mA is corresponding to 0~250% of rated torque.

4: Analog input AI3

AI3 input voltage value of -10~10V are corresponding to 0~250% of rated torque.

5: Analog input AI3 (bipolarity)

AI3 input voltage value of -10~10V is corresponding to -250%~250% of rated torque; positive and negative input of AI3 are corresponding to positive and negative instruction value of torque.

6: Frequency signal input (Fin)

Maximum value of input frequency of Fin terminal is corresponding to 250% of rated torque.

7: Process PID output

For process PID output that given as torque instruction, F7.0.00 parameter needs to be set as #1## for matching.

8: Compensation PID output

For compensation PID output that given as torque instruction, F9.0.00 parameter needs to be set as #1## for matching.

9: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 1 (relative set value)

Current torque instruction of inverter is set by principal computer through built-in standard RS485 communication interface of inverter.

10: MODBUS Fieldbus set value 2 (absolute set value)

11: Virtual analog input SAI1

12: Virtual analog input SAI2

F8.3.41 Torque digital setting	Setting range: -250~250%	Factory default: 0.0
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------

Its set value, the setting with symbols (Direction), is corresponding to the percentage of rated torque; Actual given direction of torque is "Exclusive OR" of control command direction and set value direction.

7.36 Compensation pid (1ms control cycle) (group F9.0)

F9.0.09 Analog input minimum value is 0%	Setting range: 0.0V~[F9.0.10]/ AI2:0.0mA~[F9.0.10]	Factory default: 0.0
F9.0.10 Analog input maximum value is 100%	Setting range: [F9.0.09]~10.00V/ AI2:[F9.0.09] ~20.00mA	Factory default: 10.00

When the compensation PID setting source channel selects the analog channel input, this group of parameters can be used to modify the correspondence relationship between the compensation PID set value and the analog pot. The correspondence relationship is shown in Figure 7-65.

F9.0.13 Feedback input actual value is 0%	Setting range: 0.0V~[F9.0.14]/ AI2:0.0mA~[F9.0.14]	Factory default: 0.0
F9.0.14 Feedback input actual value is 100%	Setting range: [F9.0.13]~10.00V/ AI2:[F9.0.13] ~20.00mA	Factory default: 10.00

This group of parameters can be used to modify the correspondence relationship between the compensation PID feedback value and the analogy port. The correspondence relationship is shown in Figure 7-66.

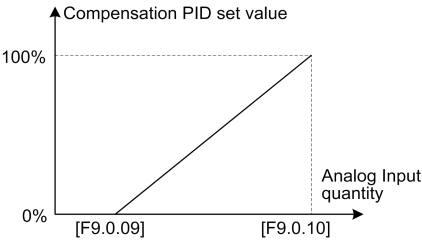


Figure 7-65 Sketch of compensation PID set value definition

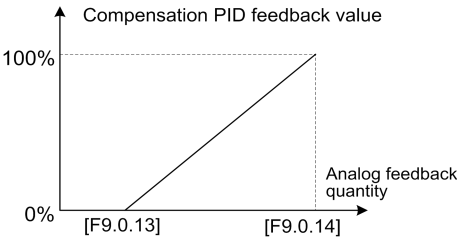


Figure 7-66 Sketch of compensation PID feedback value definition

7.37 Parameter selection of compensation pid controller (group F9.1)

There are 4 groups of compensation **PID** controller parameters, and their switching means are shown in Figure 7-67 ([9.1.21=0023]):

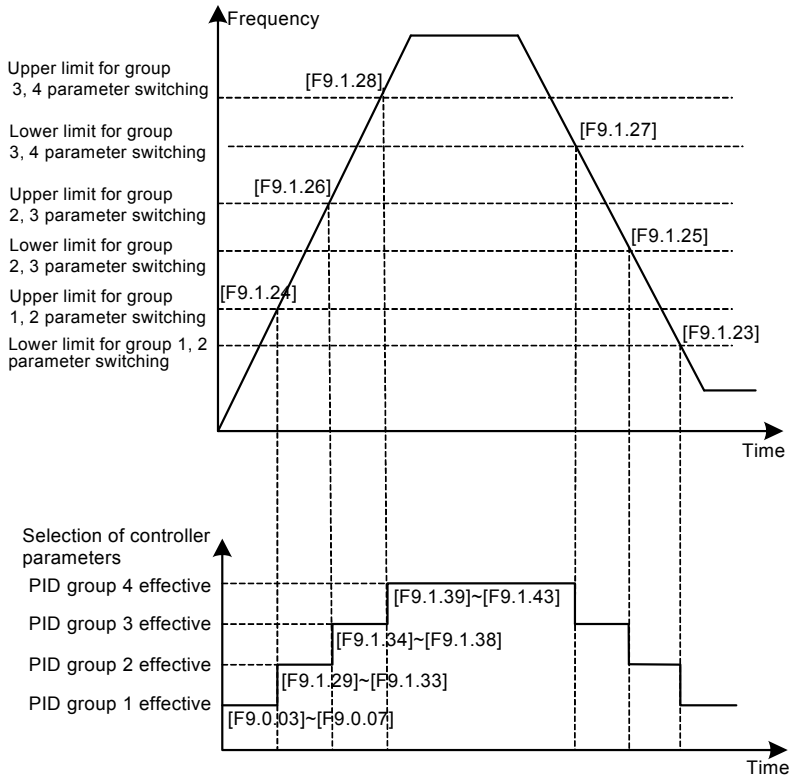


Figure 7-67 Sketch of compensation PID parameter switching

7.38 Modbus fieldbus (Standard expansion card configuration) (group FA.0)

FA.0.02 The inverter station address	Setting range: 0~247	Factory default: 1
---	-----------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter is used to set the address of the local inverter in the case of serial port communication. It is only effective when the inverter is a slave one. During communication, the local device only receives commands for the data frames consistent with the address of this device, and then sends back response frames.



- 0 is the broadcasting address. When it is set to the broadcasting address, the device will only receive and execute broadcasting commands and will not respond to the master device.

FA.0.03 The device response delay	Setting range: 0~1000ms	Factory default: 5ms
--	--------------------------------	-----------------------------

The response delay of the inverter refers to the waiting time since the inverter serial port has received and explained the command sent from the slave device till the response frames are sent.

FA.0.04 Communication failure judging time	Setting range: 0.01~10.00Sec.	Factory default: 1.00
---	--------------------------------------	------------------------------

If the local inverter has not received correct data signal beyond the time interval defined by this parameter, then the communication is judged to be failed for the local inverter. The inverter will report **Fu.071** fault, and will act as set by **FA.0.05**.

7.39 Mapping parameter access (group FA.1)

FA.1.08~FA.1.13 Mapping application parameter 1~6 (H)	Setting range: F0.00~FF.55	Factory default: F0.29/F0.32
FA.1.14~FA.1.23 Mapping status parameter 1~10 (H)	Setting range: d0.00~d1.49	Factory default: d0.00~d0.09

When DX500 series inverter makes access to functional parameters or monitoring parameters via the buss, corresponding address can be predicted directly with the functional code. However, when it is needed to access multiple functional parameters or monitoring parameters with discontinuous address, multiple-frame data are needed in this method.

The mapping parameter access is actually a needle access mode. When accessing (reading or writing) several functional parameters or status parameters with discontinuous address, these parameters can be mapped into an area with continuous address (bus-control parameter area) for accessing.

See the following table for the bus-control parameters (compatible with A510 and V320 series).

Register Name	Access address	Remarks
Control word	0x1300	Can be read as per the loops (1~16)
Set value 1	0x1301	Setting of relative values
Set value 2	0x1302	Setting of absolute values
Mapping application parameter 1	0x1303	The access parameter is set by FA.1.08.
Mapping application parameter 2	0x1304	The access parameter is set by FA.1.09.
Mapping application parameter 3	0x1305	The access parameter is set by FA.1.10

Register Name	Access address	Remarks
Mapping application parameter 4	0x1306	The access parameter is set by FA.1.11.
Mapping application parameter 5	0x1307	The access parameter is set by FA.1.12.
Mapping application parameter 6	0x1308	The access parameter is set by FA.1.13.
Status word	0x1309	Can be read as per the discrete quantity (1~16)
Mapping status parameter 1	0x130A	The access parameter is set by FA.1.14.
Mapping status parameter 2	0x130B	The access parameter is set by FA.1.15.
Mapping status parameter 3	0x130C	The access parameter is set by FA.1.16.
Mapping status parameter 4	0x130D	The access parameter is set by FA.1.17.
Mapping status parameter 5	0x130E	The access parameter is set by FA.1.18.
Mapping status parameter 6	0x130F	The access parameter is set by FA.1.19.
Mapping status parameter 7	0x1310	The access parameter is set by FA.1.20.
Mapping status parameter 8	0x1311	The access parameter is set by FA.1.21.
Mapping status parameter 9	0x1312	The access parameter is set by FA.1.22.
Mapping status parameter 10	0x1313	The access parameter is set by FA.1.23.

The mapping parameters are determined by **FA.1** group of parameters.

For example, in one frame of standard **MODBUS** protocol data, it's impossible to read the status parameters **d0.0.02**, **d0.0.05**, **d1.0.01** and **d1.1.31** and status word once and for all with a common method. To map status parameters into the bus-controlled parameter area with continuous address, set with the following method:

[FA.1.14] = d0.02

[FA.1.15] = d0.05

[FA.1.16] = d1.01

[FA.1.17] = d1.31

Then you it just needs to read the data in the continuous address **0x130A ~ 0x130D**.

7.40 Communication linkage synchronous control (group FA.2)

FA.2.26 Linkage setting proportion coefficient	Setting Range: 0.010~10.000	Factory Default: 1.000
---	------------------------------------	-------------------------------

During linkage control, this parameter defines the proportion between the output frequency of the master machine and the slave machine; the parameter of the master inverter does not function.

FA.2.27 Coupling fine proportion adjustment	Setting range: 0~3	Factory default: 0
--	---------------------------	---------------------------

0: No fine adjustment

If the fine adjustment source for linkage proportion coefficient is void, then: Slave frequency command = master frequency command * [FA.2.26] of the slave machine.

1: Analog input AI1

If **AI1** is selected for the fine adjustment source for linkage proportion coefficient, then:

Slave frequency command = master frequency command * [FA.2.26] of the slave machine * **AI1/AI1** maximum.

2: Analog input AI2

If **AI2** is selected for the fine adjustment source for linkage proportion coefficient, then:

Slave frequency command = master frequency command * [FA.2.26] of the slave machine * **AI2/AI2** maximum.

3: Analog input AI3

If **AI3** is selected for the fine adjustment source for linkage proportion coefficient, then: Slave frequency command = master frequency command * **[FA.2.26]** of the slave machine * **AI3/AI3** maximum.

FA.2.28 Slave machine offset frequency/revolution	Setting range: 0, 1, 2	Factory default: 0
--	-------------------------------	---------------------------

This parameter of the master inverter does not function, and it is used to select the auxiliary frequency of the slave machine:

Actual output frequency of the slave machine = master machine frequency command * slave machine linkage proportion (including fine adjustment) + offset frequency

0: No offset

No offset frequency/revolution; the frequency set value of the slave machine is determined by the frequency command of the master device and the setting of **FA.2.26** and **FA.2.27**.

1: Determined by frequency setting source 1

The frequency set value of the slave machine frequency setting source 1 is regarded as the offset frequency/revolution of the slave machine.

2: Determined by frequency setting source 2

The frequency set value of the slave machine frequency setting source 2 is regarded as the offset frequency/revolution of the slave machine.

FA.2.29 Coupling balance function	Setting range: 0~4	Factory default: 0
--	---------------------------	---------------------------

0: Void**1: Current balance**

With reference to the load current of the master device, each slave device will automatically conduct fine adjustment to the output of local device so as to keep consistency with the master device's current.

2: Torque balance

With reference to the torque of the master device, each slave device will automatically 7.

3: Power balance

Each slave motor refers to the main motor power, automatic self-adjustment it's output to ensure the relatively consistent with the main motor power.

4: position synchronous balance

In the multi-motor linkage system with PG close loop vector control, to use the position synchronous balance is able to eliminate the accrued displacement deviation caused by the minor deviation of driver rotate speed. This method requires the motor that runs with linkage has the same parameter in the PG speed detector.

Position synchronous balance can only revise the minor rotate speed deviation. Adjust the synchronous rotate speed function before use the function.

The accrued pulse of subordinate motor in this mode is required to reset simultaneously with the master motor. Thus, only need to operate in the master motor, or make use of the reset terminal of subordinate motor.

FA.2.30 Coupling balancing gain	Setting range: 0.001~10.000	Factory default: 1.000
--	--	-------------------------------

When the linkage balancing function is effective, this parameter is used to set the adjusting gain output by this device, and it is only effective for the slave device. The higher the gain is, the higher the amplitude of the self-balancing adjustment is.

7.41 Expansion multifunctional input terminal (group FB.0 AND FB.1)

The parameters in the access the corresponding extensions to take effect, its function and F3.Group the same parameters.

7.42 Servo control and scale positioning (group FB.2)

Fb.2.18 Automatic shift switching frequency	Setting range: 0~5.00Hz	Factory default: 1.00
Fb.2.19 Automatic shift switching cycle	Setting Range: 0.10~2.00Sec.	Factory default: 0.3

For equipments with mechanical speed change gear like the spindle, during mechanical shifting, shift jogging can be adopted to avoid mechanical dead. This group of parameters defines the running parameters for shift jogging.

Fb.2.20 Torque at 0 Hz (DC bind-type brake preferred)	Setting range: 0~3	Factory default: 0
Fb.2.21 Position lock gain1(location gain)	Setting range: 0.10~10.00	Factory default: 1.0

0: Void

1: Bind-type brake torque effective

2: Position locking (PG feedback VC mode)

In the running mode of V/F and SVC, the function of zero frequency torque holdup is similar with that of the DC braking function. It cannot guarantee that the motor shaft is absolutely static when it is dragged by the load, and the position gain is void.

In the PG feedback VC control mode, if the zero frequency torque holdup 2 is selected, the drive will automatically memorize the shaft position at stop, and shift to the position serve running mode, so as to guarantee that the shaft will not rotate even under the load dragging.

The higher the position gain is, the stronger the locking torque is.

3: Lock in the designated stop angle

It is used to the spindle drive of machine tool to ensure the constant angle in the spindle off. The stop angle is set by Fb 2.45.

Fb.2.22 PG speed shaft propulsion distance per revolution	Setting range: 0.001~50.000mm	Factory default: 0.500
--	--	-----------------------------------

This parameter is set the liner displacement of the transmission structure for each revolution of PG speed shaft. The accumulative displacement is shown in the monitoring parameter d1.2.20.

Fb.2.23 Servo control function	Setting range: 0000~0012	Factory default: 0000
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__X: Function selection

0: Void – servo control void, and running in the speed or torque control mode.

1: Effective – must be in the closed-loop vector control mode.

2: External terminal selection (Function No. 69).

The closed-loop vector control mode must be selected for this function, and the selection will not be effective until the inverter has completely stopped.

_ _ X _ : Action mode

0: Common mode

1: Spindle orientation

Fb.2.24 Position setting source in common mode	Setting range: 0~5	Factory default: 1
Fb.2.25 Position digit setting (lower)	Setting range: 0~65535	Factory default: 0
Fb.2.26 Position digit setting (upper)	Setting range: 0~500	Factory default: 0

This group of parameters is used to define the position command source in the mode of common serve control.

When the analog setting is used to set the position, the maximum analog input is corresponding to 5000 pulse commands.

When digital setting ([Fb.2.24] = 2) is selected as the position setting source, Fb.2.25 and Fb.2.26 are used to set the command position.

Fb.2.27 Electronic gear (numerator)	Setting range: 0~65535	Factory default: 1000
Fb.2.28 Electronic gear (denominator)	Setting range: 0~65535	Factory default: 1000

The electronic gear is used to transform the command pulse to the amount of movement. If the encoder is set to A (pulse per revolution), the displacement per revolution of the motor is B, and the pulse command unit is C, then the electronic gear can be calculated as below:

$$\text{Electronic gear} = 4AC/B$$

The numerator and denominator can be figured out after approximating the common divider.

For example, the encoder of a certain transmission is 1000 lines ($A=1000$), and motor displacement per revolution is 2 mm ($B=2$), and the pulse command unit is 1 μm ($C=0.001\text{m}$), then the electronic gear is $4AC/B = 4000 \times 0.001/2 = 2/1$. Hence, the numerator and the denominator for the electronic gear is respectively 2 and 1.

Fb.2.30 Position gain 2	Setting range: 0.01~100.00	Factory default: 1.00
Fb.2.31 Position gain selection mode	Setting range: 0~3	Factory default: 0
Fb.2.32 Position gain selection position deviation	Setting range: 0~30000	Factory default: 100

In the position gain selection mode, the position gain 1 (Fb. 2.21) is effective when the gain ([Fb.2.31]=3) is selected according to the position deviation, and the position deviation is lower than the set pulse value (Fb.2.32). Otherwise, the position gain 2 (Fb.2.30) will be effective.

Fb.2.33 Speed feed-forward gain	Setting range: 0.0~200.0(%)	Factory default: 100.0
--	------------------------------------	-------------------------------

The higher the position speed feed-forward gain is set, the faster the tracking speed is. However, excessive set value may worsen the stability.

Fb.2.36 Spindle orientation mode	Setting range: 0000~0111	Factory default: 0000
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

_ _ _ X: Selection of positioning zero point reference signals

0: Z Pulse positioning

Z pulse is used to be the reference signal for spindle 0 point (any offset angle can be set according to usual practice). In this mode, the encoder should be installed on the spindle.

1: Photoelectric switch positioning

The photo electricity (or other sensor signal) on the spindle is used as the zero point reference signal.

__X__: Positioning command

0: External terminal selection

The value (**Fb.2.38~Fb.2.44**) preset by the external functional terminal (**Function No. 72~74**) selection is used as the current positioning command. It is required to correctly set the transmission ratio (**Fb.2.46**) of the spindle, and when the encoder is installed on the spindle, this value is set to be **1.000**.

1: Pulse command setting

The positioning angle will be determined according to received command pulse. In this mode, it is applicable to adjust the transmission gear with the electronic gear or directly change the command pulse number. Please note that the direction of command pulse should be consistent with the spindle rotation direction, and the spindle transmission ratio (**Fb.2.46**) should be correctly set.

_x__: locating running direction

0: agreement with the order direction

1: fast locate with the minimum deflection angle

Fb.2.37 Spindle orientation frequency/speed	Setting range: 0.01~100.00Hz	Factory default: 5.00Hz
--	---	--------------------------------

To define the maximum search frequency at the time of spindle positioning.

Fb.2.38~ Fb.2.44 Spindle positioning angle 1~7	Setting range: 0~359.9	Factory default: 0.0~315.0
Fb.2.45 Spindle stop angle	Setting range: 0~359.9	Factory default: 0.0

Setting for multi-stage spindle positioning angle and stop angle.

Fb.2.46 Spindle transmission ratio	Setting range: 0.010~50.000	Factory default: 1.000
---	--	-------------------------------

When the encoder is not directly installed on the spindle, this parameter needs to be set to achieve correct spindle orientation. This parameter only functions for the spindle orientation function.

Spindle transmission ratio = revolution of the speed shaft: spindle revolution.

7.43 Virtual input and output (group FF.0)

FF.0.00 FF configuration parameter locking function (H)	Setting range: 0000~1001	Factory default: 0000
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

FF group parameters include special and internal function parameters, and their setting and initialization are confined. This group of parameters is used to set the user's authority for operating FF parameters.

FF.0.01~FF.0.08 Definition of virtual output node (SDO1~SDO8)	Setting range: 0~71	Factory default: 0
--	----------------------------	---------------------------

The virtual output nodes **SDO1~SDO8** are functionally the same as the multifunctional output terminals **DO1~DO3**, but do not output any signal. They are directly connected in the controller of the inverter to the virtual input nodes

SDI1~SDI8 one to one.

Using virtual nodes can not only help simplify wiring but can also avoid interference. The function of **SDO1~SDO8** can be defined by setting the value of **FF.0.01~FF.0.08**. Please refer to Table 2 (Comparison Table for Variables of Multifunctional Output Terminals (DO/EDO/SDO)) for the variables corresponding to the set value.

FF.0.09~FF.0.16 Definition of virtual input node (SDI1~SDI8)	Setting range: 0~96	Factory default: 0
---	----------------------------	---------------------------

The virtual input nodes **SDI1~SDI8** are functionally the same as the multifunctional input terminals **DI1~DI9**. But there are no actual physical input nodes. They are connected to the virtual output **SDO1~SDO8** one to one, and are directly taken from the virtual output signal.

The virtual input nodes **SDI1~SDI8** are functionally programmable, and their function can be defined by setting the values of **FF.0.09~FF.0.16**. Please refer to Table 1 (Comparison Table for Functions of Multifunctional Input Terminals (DI/EDI/SDI)) for functions corresponding to the set value.

FF.0.17 Virtual output - input connection polarity	Setting range: 0000~1111	Factory default: 0000
FF.0.18 Virtual output - input connection polarity	Setting range: 0000~1111	Factory default: 0000

The parameters are used to set the connection logic status of the virtual output nodes **SDO1~SDO8** and virtual input nodes **SDI1~SDI8**. When it is set to be reverse polarity connection, the virtual output signal will be negated before being inputted to the virtual input port, as shown in Figure 7-67.

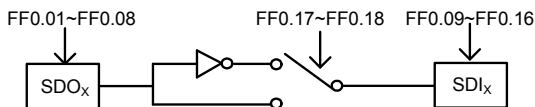


Figure 7-67 Block diagram of virtual output – input

7.44 Protecting function configuration parameters (group FF.1)

This group of parameters is used to define if the protecting function needs to be activated or not. Generally no modification is required.

7.45 Correction parameters (group FF.2)

FF.2.25 AI1 Zero offset adjustment	Setting range: -0.500~0.500V	Factory default: 0.0
FF.2.26 AI1 gain correction	Setting range: 0.950~1.050	Factory default: 1.000

This group of parameters is used to make fine adjustment to **AI1** zero point and **AI1**. The relationship before and after adjustment:

$$\text{AI1 input value} = \text{AI1 gain correction} * \text{AI1 value before adjustment} + \text{AI1 zero offset}$$

FF.2.27 4mA deviation adjustment for AI2	Setting range: -0.500~0.500mA	Factory default: 0.0
FF.2.28 AI2 gain correction	Setting range: 0.950~1.050	Factory default: 1.000
FF.2.29 AI3 Zero offset adjustment	Setting range: -0.500~0.500V	Factory default: 0.0
FF.2.30 AI3 gain correction	Setting range: 0.950~1.050	Factory default: 1.000
FF.2.31 AO1 zero offset correction	Setting range: -0.500~0.500V	Factory default: 0.0
FF.2.32 AO1 gain correction	Setting range: 0.950~1.050	Factory default: 1.000
FF.2.33 AO2 zero offset correction	Setting range: -0.500~0.500V	Factory default: 0.0
FF.2.34 AO2 gain correction	Setting range: 0.950~1.050	Factory default: 1.000

The correction principle for each analog input/output port is the same as **AI1**. The relationship curves with zero offset adjustment and gain correction are respectively as below. Generally, users do not need to set these parameters.

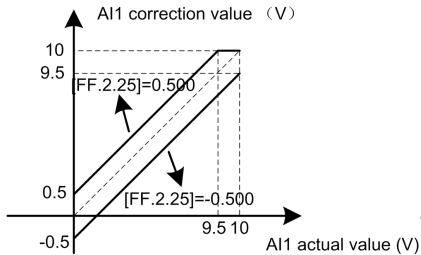


Figure 7-68-A AI1 zero offset correction curve

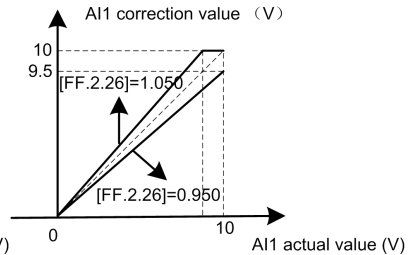


Figure 7-68-B AI1 gain correction curve

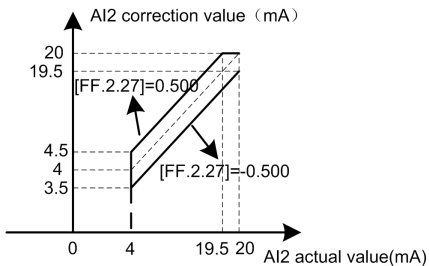


Figure 7-69-A AI2 zero offset correction curve

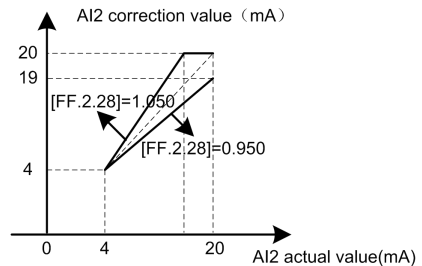


Figure 7-69-B AI2 gain correction curve

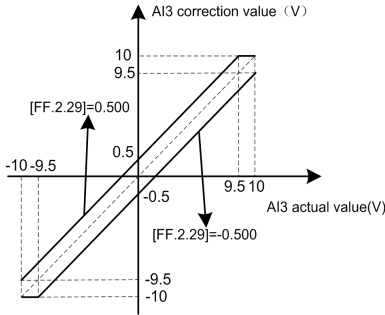


Figure 7-70-A AI3 zero offset correction curve

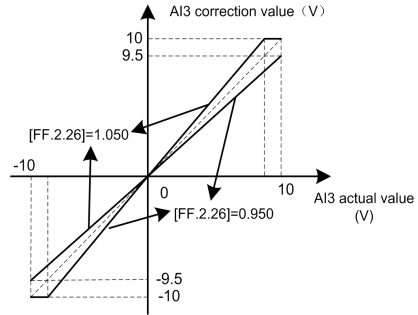


Figure 7-70-B AI3 gain correction curve

FF.2.35 Under voltage protection action level	Setting range: 320~450V	Factory default: 400V
--	--------------------------------	------------------------------

This parameter sets the allowable lower limiting voltage at the DC side during normal operation of the inverter. For some occasions with lower power grid, it is applicable to appropriately reduce the under voltage protection level, so as to ensure normal operation of the inverter.



- When the power grid is under excessive low voltage, the output torque of the motor will decrease. In the occasion of constant power load and constant torque load, excessive low voltage of the power grid will lead to increase of the inverter's input current, hence reducing the reliability of inverter operation.

The set value for this parameter [FF.2.35] must be no more than the under voltage adjustment action level [F1.4.45].

FF.2.36 DC bus volts detection level gain	Setting range: 0.950~1.050	Factory default: 1.000
--	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------

When the actual bus of the inverter is deviated from the value of the DC side voltage monitoring parameter **d0.0.07**, it is applicable to set this parameter combined with the correction of potentiometer in the bus voltage detection circuit.

7.46 SPecial functional parameters (group FF.3)

The modification of this group of parameters should be conducted under the guidance of professionals, and no modification is needed generally.

7.47 Other configuration parameters (group FF.4)

FF.4.41 Cooling fan control	Setting range: 0000~0111	Factory default: 0101
------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

__X: Soft start function (effective for model 4T0370 below)

This function helps effectively reducing the instantaneous power required for starting the fan, hence guarantee stable and reliable operation of the switch power supply.

_ _ X _ : Air volume auto adjustment (effective for model 4T0370 below)

The revolution of the cooling fan can be automatically adjusted according to the ambient temperature and operation status of the inverter, so as to maximize service life of the cooling fan.

_ X _ : Start time**0: Start immediately after power-on**

The fan will run according to the settings in the unit and ten's digit of this parameter immediately after the inverter is powered on.

1: Start during running

The fan will run according to the settings in the unit and ten's digit of this parameter after the inverter is powered on and has received the running command.

FF.4.42 Operating panel control options	Setting range: 0000~2001	Factory default: 0000
--	---------------------------------	------------------------------

X _ _ _ : Panel control selection (except STOP key)**0: Standard panel interface control**

The control command can only be given through the standard operating panel, and external monitoring panel can be connected via **RS485**.

1: RS485 port external panel control

The control command can only be given via **RS485** port, and the standard panel is only used for monitoring.

2: Multifunctional terminal switching

The master control panel is selected by the multifunctional input terminal (Function No. 40) and the terminal function is set with the parameters **F3.0.00 ~ F3.0.08**.

FF.4.43 Special function configuration	Setting range: 0000~1111	Factory default: 0001
---	---------------------------------	------------------------------

_ _ _ X: Motor parameter identification auto-start**0: Forbidden****1: Permitted**

After modifying the motor nameplate parameters, the inverter will automatically set static self identification of motor parameters once.

_ _ X _ : Voltage vector composition mode**0: Three-phase composition****1: Two-phase composition**

Another modulation method for space voltage vector. This method can help appropriately reduce heating of the inverter, but audio noise may somewhat increase.

_ X _ : Small pulse shielding**0: Void****1: Effective**

When "Effective" is selected, the heating of the drive can be reduced under full-output voltage.

X _ _ _ : SVC Revolution identification mode/synchro control mode**0: SVC Revolution identification mode 1/synchro id = 0 control mode****1: SVC Revolution identification mode 2 (reserved) effective/synchro minimum current control mode**

Chapter 8 Warning, Alarm Diagnosis And Counter Measures

When the frequency inverter sends warning signals, the auxiliary display column displays warning code. Some warnings have no influence on the operation of the inverter. Those warnings which may influence the operation of the frequency inverter should be limited as much as possible; otherwise, more serious failures may be caused. When the frequency inverter fails to alarm, its protective function will act and display fault code and the inverter will stop outputting with the motor freely sliding and shutting down.

8.1 Troubleshooting with warning or alarm display

8.1.1 Alarm display and troubleshooting

Fault code	Fault description	Possible causes	Solutions
Fu.001	Over current during acceleration	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The acceleration time is too short. 2. V/F curve or torque boosting is set improperly. 3. After it is re-energized upon transient stop, the rotating motor is restarted. 4. The frequency inverter has smaller capacity. 5. The encoder is faulty or disconnected during the operation and acceleration with PG. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust acceleration time. 2. Adjust V/F curve or torque boosting parameters. 3. It is valid to set [F0.4.38] as 1; Recover operation in the mode of deceleration and restart after power off. 4. Select frequency inverter with matched capacity level. 5. Inspect encoder and its connection
Fu.002	Over current during deceleration	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The deceleration time is too short. 2. The potential energy load or load inertia is too large. 3. The frequency inverter has smaller capacity. 4. The encoder is faulty or disconnected during the operation and deceleration with PG. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust deceleration time. 2. Connect braking resistor or unit externally. 3. Select frequency inverter with matched capacity level. 4. Inspect encoder and its connection.
Fu.003	Over current during operation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The load changes suddenly. 2. The grid has over-low voltage. 3. The frequency inverter has smaller capacity. 4. The load is overweight. 5. After it is re-energized upon transient stop, the rotating motor is restarted. 6. The output line of the frequency inverter has interphase short circuit or phase line short circuit to ground. 7. The encoder is faulty or disconnected during operation with PG. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reduce load sudden change. 2. Inspect voltage of power supply. 3. Select frequency inverter with matched capacity level. 4. Inspect load or replace a frequency inverter with larger capacity. 5. It is valid to set [F0.4.38] as 1; Recover operation in the mode of deceleration and restart after power off. 6. Eliminate short circuit failure. 7. Inspect the connection of encoder.
Fu.004	Over voltage during acceleration	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The input voltage is abnormal. 2. The rotating speed closed loop parameters are set improperly during vector control operation. 3. Start the rotating motor (without rotating speed tracking). 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inspect input power supply. 2. Adjust rotating speed closed loop parameters. Please refer to the description of F8.1 parameter set. 3. It is valid to set [F0.4.38] as 1; Recover operation in the mode of deceleration and restart after power off.

Fault code	Fault description	Possible causes	Solutions
Fu.005	Over voltage during deceleration	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The deceleration period is too short. 2. The load potential energy or inertia is too large. 3. The input voltage is abnormal. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust deceleration time. 2. Connect braking resistor or unit externally. 3. Inspect input power supply.
Fu.006	Over voltage during operation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The input voltage is abnormal. 2. The parameters of regulator are set improperly during vector control operation. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Install input reactor. 2. For adjusting parameters of regulator, please refer to the description of parameter set in F8.1.
Fu.007	Over voltage when shutting down	The voltage of the power supply is abnormal.	Inspect voltage of power supply.
Fu.008	Under voltage during operation (can be shielded)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The voltage of the power supply is abnormal. 2. Large load is started in the grid. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inspect voltage of power supply 2. Supply power separately
Fu.011	Electromagnetic interference	False operation caused by the surrounding electromagnetic interference.	Seek for technical service
Fu.012	Overload of frequency inverter	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The load is overweight. 2. The acceleration period is too short. 3. The booster voltage of torque is too high or V/F curve is set improperly. 4. The grid has over-low voltage. 5. Do not start rotating speed tracking restart function and directly start the rotating motor. 6. In closed loop vector mode, the direction of pulse of the encoder is opposite to that of the motor. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reduce load or replace a frequency inverter with larger capacity. 2. Prolong acceleration time. 3. Reduce torque lifting voltage and adjust V/F curve. 4. Inspect the voltage of grid 5. Set the starting/stopping mode ([F0.4.38]) as rotating speed tracking restarting mode. 6. Check whether the encoder is reverse.
Fu.013	Overload protection action of motor	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. V/F curve is set improperly. 2. The grid has over-low voltage. 3. The motor is operated for long time with low speed and large load. 4. The overload protection coefficient of the motor is too small. 5. Locked-rotor operation of motor or overlarge load. 6. In closed loop vector mode, the direction of pulse of the encoder is opposite to that of the motor. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust V/F curve. 2. Inspect the input voltage of grid. 3. Select special motor for frequency conversion for long-term low speed operation. 4. Increase the overload protection coefficient of the motor ([F2.0.25]). 5. Adjust the working conditions of the load or select frequency inverter with matched capacity level. 6. Adjust the connection of encoder or change the function setting for direction of the encoder.
Fu.014	Overheating of frequency inverter (sensor 1)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The air duct is blocked. 2. The ambient temperature is over high. 3. The fan is abnormal. 4. The temperature detecting circuit or power module is abnormal. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the air duct or improve ventilation conditions. 2. Improve ventilation conditions and reduce carrier frequency 3. Replace the fan. 4. Seek for the manufacturer's support.
Fu.015	Overheating of frequency inverter (sensor 2)	Same with above.	Same with above.
Fu.016	Overheating of frequency inverter (sensor 3)	Same with above.	Same with above.

Fault code	Fault description	Possible causes	Solutions
Fu.017	External equipment is faulty or the panel has forced stoppage	The external equipment of the frequency inverter is faulty, the input terminal has signal input.	Inspect signal source and relevant equipment and find the root leading to the stoppage of the panel.
Fu.018	Excessive protection of rotating speed deviation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The load is too large. 2. The acceleration time is too short. 3. The load is locked. 4. The detection value ([F8.2.34]) and time ([F8.2.35]) for DEV is set improperly. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reduce load. 2. Prolong acceleration and deceleration time. 3. Confirm the mechanical system of the load. 4. Reset the detection value ([F8.2.34]) and time ([F8.2.35]) for DEV.
Fu.019	Over speed failure (OS)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Overshoot or undershoot is occurred. 2. The frequency is too high. 3. The detection value ([F8.2.36]) and time ([F8.2.37]) for over speed is set improperly. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust the gain. 2. Adjust the set value of frequency. 3. Reset the set value of the detection value ([F8.2.36]) and time ([F8.2.37]) of OS.
Fu.020	Reverse connection of A, B pulse	Mistaken connection of A, B pulse of PG card.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the connection order of A, B pulse, or, 2. Modify the setting of parameter F8.0.06, or, 3. Exchange any two wires from U, V, W
Fu.021	The master contactor is not actuated well. Or the thruster of major loop is not conducted.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The DC side master contactor in the frequency inverter is not actuated well. 2. The power supply voltage is unstable with frequent sudden change. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the dust on the contact of the master contactor. 2. Replace the master contactor 3. Close this protective function (FF.1.21)
Fu.022	Internal data memory is faulty	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is intense noise around in the process of writing in function code data. 2. The internal memory is damaged. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Retry after reset. 2. Seek for manufacturer's service.
Fu.026 Fu.027 Fu.028	The output current of U phase is deficient/smaller The output current of V phase is deficient/smaller The output current of W phase is deficient/smaller	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The lead from frequency inverter to motor is disconnected. 2. The driving or control panel of the frequency inverter is faulty. 3. The three-phase winding of the motor is faulty. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eliminate peripheral failures. 2. Seek for manufacturer's support. 3. Eliminate the failure of motor.
Fu.032	The three-phase input voltage is unbalanced (can be shielded)	The imbalance rate of three-phase voltage is larger.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Add AC or DC reactor. 2. Increase the capacity of frequency inverter.
Fu.035	Program overcurrent protection	Three-phase imbalance	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1:check power grid and working situation 2:Seek for manufacturer's support.
Fu.036 Fu.037 Fu.038	A11 input is disconnected A12 input is disconnected A13 input is disconnected	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The wiring of input analog signal is disconnected or analog input signal source is inexistent. 2. Parameters related to disconnection detection are configured improperly. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inspect the wiring of analog input signal and the analog input signal source. 2. Modify the configuration parameters.

Fault code	Fault description	Possible causes	Solutions
Fu.039	Fin input is disconnected	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The wiring of pulse input signal is disconnected or analog input signal source is inexistent. 2. Parameters related to disconnection detection are configured improperly. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inspect the wiring of pulse input signal and analog input signal source. 2. Modify the configuration parameters.
Fu.040	The rotating speed detection loop is disconnected	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The speed measuring module is incorrectly connected. 2. The wiring of speed measuring module is disconnected. 3. The output of speed measuring module is abnormal. 4. Relevant function codes are set improperly. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Inspect the connection of speed measuring module. 2. Modify the parameter setting. 3. Seek for manufacturer's support.
Fu.041	The motor fails to be connected when the motor parameters are identified.	The motor fails to be connected when the motor parameters are identified.	Connect motor.
Fu.042	U phase output is disconnected or the parameters are seriously unbalanced	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The lead from frequency inverter to motor is disconnected. 2. The driving or control panel of the frequency inverter is faulty. 3. The three-phase winding of the motor is faulty. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eliminate peripheral failures. 2. Seek for manufacturer's support. 3. Eliminate the failure of motor.
Fu.043	V phase output is disconnected or the parameters are seriously unbalanced	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The lead from frequency inverter to motor is disconnected. 2. The driving or control panel of the frequency inverter is faulty. 3. The three-phase winding of the motor is faulty. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eliminate peripheral failures. 2. Seek for manufacturer's support. 3. Eliminate the failure of motor.
Fu.044	W phase output is disconnected or the parameters are seriously unbalanced	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The lead from frequency inverter to motor is disconnected. 2. The driving or control panel of the frequency inverter is faulty. 3. The three-phase winding of the motor is faulty. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Eliminate peripheral failures. 2. Seek for manufacturer's support. 3. Eliminate the failure of motor.
Fu.045	Over temperature of motor	The motor temperature exceeds the setting scope	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reduce motor load. 2. Improve operating environment. 3. Modify protective threshold.
Fu.051	U phase current is detected faulty (sensor or circuit)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The current sensor or circuit is damaged. 2. The auxiliary power supply is faulty. 3. The control and driving panel are bad connected. 	Seek for manufacturer's support.
Fu.052	V phase current is detected faulty (sensor or circuit)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The current sensor or circuit is damaged. 2. The auxiliary power supply is faulty 3. The control and driving panel are bad connected. 	Seek for manufacturer's support.
Fu.054	The temperature sensor 1 is faulty (can be shielded)	The temperature detecting circuit is abnormal.	Seek for manufacturer's support.
Fu.055	The temperature sensor 2 is faulty (can be shielded)	The temperature detecting circuit is abnormal.	Seek for manufacturer's support.

Fault code	Fault description	Possible causes	Solutions
Fu.056	The temperature sensor 3 is faulty (can be shielded)	The temperature detecting circuit is abnormal.	Seek for manufacturer's support.
Fu.072	The connection of accessories is abnormal	1. The extended components are not inserted well. 2. The extended components are damaged.	1. Reinstall the extended components. 2. Replace the extended components.
Fu.201	Conflicting parameter setting		Please contact the direct supplier.
Fu.301 ~ Fu.311	Control panel is faulty		Seek for manufacturer's support.

8.1.2 Warning display and troubleshooting

Display	Warnings	Can be shielded or not	Solutions other than shielding
aL.003	Over high power supply voltage		Inspect input power supply
aL.008	Lower input voltage (under voltage early warning)		Inspect input power supply
aL.011	Bad electromagnetic environment		Improve working environment or seek for manufacturer's support
aL.012	The load is overweight and protection maybe occurred		Reduce load, or replace a frequency inverter with larger power
aL.014	INV overheating early warning		Improve ventilation conditions and reduce carrier
aL.018	Overlarge DEV		1. Reduce load 2. Prolong acceleration and deceleration time 3. Confirm mechanical system of load 4. Confirm the detection value ([F8.2.34]) and time ([F8.2.35]) for DEV
aL.019	Over speed (OS)		1. Adjust frequency setting loop 2. Inspect the setting value of detection value [F8.2.36]) and time ([F8.2.37]) for OS
aL.026 aL.027 aL.028	The output current of U phase is deficient/smaller The output current of V phase is deficient/smaller The output current of W phase is deficient/smaller	Can be shielded	Inspect the connecting wire between frequency inverter and motor or the winding of motor
aL.031	The starting enabling signal is deficient		1. Inspect the enabling connection (42) in multifunctional input terminal and the status of the terminal (ON/OFF) 2. Inspect whether the starting enabling signal in bus command word is effective or not
aL.032	Early warning of unbalanced three-phase input voltage	Can be shielded	Measure the input voltage of all the phases, install ACR and reduce imbalance rate among phases
aL.036 aL.037 aL.038	AI1 input is disconnected AI2 input is disconnected AI3 input is disconnected	Can be shielded	1. Inspect the connection of analog input signal 2. Inspect whether there're signals in the signal source
aL.039	Fin input is disconnected (retained)	Can be shielded	

Display	Warnings	Can be shielded or not	Solutions other than shielding
aL.040	The rotating speed detecting loop is disconnected	Can be shielded	1. Inspect the connection of speed measuring module 2. Seek for manufacturer's support
aL.041	No-load operation fails to identify the parameters of motor		
aL.042 aL.043 aL.044	The parameters of U phase of motor is abnormal The parameters of V phase of motor is abnormal The parameters of W phase of motor is abnormal		Inspect whether the winding of motor is faulty
aL.045	Over temperature of motor		Select special motor for frequency conversion for long-term low speed operation
aL.049	The driving circuit is abnormal and unbalanced		
aL.050	The communication of MODBUS bus is interrupted		
aL.054 aL.055 aL.056	The temperature sensor 1 is faulty The temperature sensor 2 is faulty The temperature sensor 3 is faulty	Can be shielded	1. Increase the action point for over temperature warning 2. Replace the temperature sensor 1,2,3
aL.058	The parameters can not be recovered in batch during operation		
aL.059	The numerical value when energized can not be recovered during operation		
aL.061	The connection between expanded communication module and master control board is interrupted abnormally		
aL.062	The function expansion unit 1 has a hardware conflict		1. The expansion unit selected is inappropriate and can not be used with such type of frequency inverter 2. The function expansion unit has a internal fault
aL.063	The function expansion unit 2 has a hardware conflict		1. The expansion unit selected is inappropriate and can not be used with such type of frequency inverter 2. The function expansion unit has a internal fault
aL.064	The function expansion unit has a resource conflict		This expansion unit can not be used with other expansion units
aL.065	Fail to establish communications with function expansion unit 1		
aL.066	Fail to establish communications with function expansion unit 2		
aL.067	The communication links of function expansion unit 1 is interrupted abnormally		

Display	Warnings	Can be shielded or not	Solutions other than shielding
aL.068	The communication links of function expansion unit 2 is interrupted abnormally		
aL.071	The parameter download is failed (Note: download is from operation panel to control panel of frequency inverter; upload is from control panel to operation panel)		Inspect whether the communication interface between operation panel and control panel is normal or not
aL.072	The memory of panel fails to be operated		
aL.073	The memory of panel inhibits write and can not download parameters		
aL.074	The upload of parameters is failed (automatically recover to the numerical value before uploading)		1. Inspect whether the communication interface between panel and control panel is normal or not. 2. In the parameter F0.0.08, parameter upload is forbidden in terms of local upload.
aL.075	The version of panel parameters is different from that of equipment parameters; it can not be uploaded		Re-upload panel parameters same as the version of equipment parameters
aL.076	The panel has no effective parameters and can not be uploaded		The panel parameters are not modified effectively and need not to be uploaded
aL.077	The panel parameters exceed the setting scope INV allowed and fail to be uploaded		Confirm the allowed parameter scope, reset and upload
aL.099	The operation panel is abnormally connected		After power off, reinsert and pull out of the panel or replace the panel
aL.100	The control program is failed resulted from electromagnetic interference		Improve electromagnetic environment
aL.101	The setting parameters are conflicted		Reset the parameters correctly
aL.102	The setting parameters fail to connect the corresponding expansion card		Reset the parameters or inspect the connection of expansion card
aL.103	The setting motor parameters are conflicted(rated frequency, rotating speed conflict)		Reset the motor parameters
aL.104	The setting motor parameters are conflicted (No-load current, rated current, rated rotating speed, rated frequency and rotor time constant)		Reset the motor parameters
aL.105	The inductance parameters of motor stator overflow		Reset the inductance parameters of motors stator
aL.201	The setting parameters are conflicted and it's about to shut down		Immediately contact the direct supplier

8.2 Abnormal operation without prompts and the solutions

1. The motor is not rotated:

Possible causes	Solutions
The operation command channel is wrongly selected	Switch the operation command channel into correct one via PANEL/REMOTE key in operation panel or remote terminal
The operation command source is wrongly selected	According to the need on the site, reset the selection of operation command source ([F0.1.15]), control command 1([F0.3.33]) and control command 2 ([F0.3.34])
The setting frequency is below the starting frequency	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set the setting frequency to be above the starting frequency ([F0.4.39]) 2. Inspect whether the frequency setting channel is normal or not, eliminate possible analog input frequency setting failures and shuttle potentiometer failures, etc. 3. Correctly connect the external terminals related to frequency setting
Other frequency command sources with higher priority are valid	According to the need on the site, reset the frequency (rotating speed) setting priority ([F5.3.28])
The upper and lower frequency limit is set improperly.	Inspect the data of upper ([F0.1.21]) and lower ([F0.1.22]) frequency limit and reset
The motor has insufficient torque	In V/F control mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Increase the torque of motor and boost voltage · Adjust V/F curve In SVC/VC control mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Re-measure the parameters of motor ([F2.2.53]) · Adjust vector mode and start pre-excitation time ([F2.2.52])

2. The motor is rotating but the speed can not be increased:

Possible causes	Solutions
The setting value of maximum output frequency is too low.	Increase the value of maximum output frequency ([F0.1.20]).
The setting value of upper frequency limit is too low.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Increase the data of upper frequency limit ([F0.1.21]). 2. Increase the maximum value of frequency setting channel 1([F0.2.28]) and 2 ([F0.2.31]).
The set frequency is too low.	Inspect whether the setting of selection of frequency setting channel ([F0.1.16]) is correct or not; the set frequency value is lower or the frequency setting channel is faulty.
The acceleration period is too long.	Set appropriate acceleration time ([F1.0.03], [F1.0.05], [F1.0.07], [F1.0.09]).
The parameter values of motor are set improperly	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Confirm whether ([F2.0.00] ~ [F2.0.09]) is compatible with the parameters of motor. 2. In vector control mode, make the motor re-self measured and get correct internal motor parameters.
The output frequency is not rising resulted from current limit protection	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. According to the requirements on the site, reasonably configure the acceleration/deceleration current limit level ([F1.4.39]), strong starting current limit level (F1.4.40) and maintenance time ([F1.4.41]). 2. Restart after reducing torque and boosting voltage (F1.2.18) and observe whether the output frequency is rising or not. 3. Confirm whether V/F setting ([F1.2.15], [F1.2.16], and [F1.2.17]) is appropriate or not. Adjust V/F setting into rated value of motor.
The output frequency is not rising resulted from torque setting limit	Confirm the torque setting limit ([F8.3.47], [F8.3.48]~[F8.3.51])sets correct value.

3. The direction of rotation of the motor is opposite to the command

Possible causes	Solutions
Operation direction	Inspect the setting of operation direction ([F0.1.17]).
The F/R function code in multifunctional input terminal is wrongly selected	Inspect whether the multifunctional input terminal ([F3.0.00]~[F3.0.08]) correctly selects the function code of FWD operation command terminal, REV operation command terminal and three wire operation control.
The action mode of external control terminal is wrongly selected	Inspect the action mode of external control terminal (F0.3.35).
Inspect the wiring connecting with the motor	Exchange the connection of any two phases of U, V, and W of frequency inverter or motor.
Inspect the connection of F/R control terminal	Inspect the connection of multifunctional input terminal set as FWD operation command terminal, REV operation command terminal and three wire operation control.

4. Rotating speed variation and current fluctuation occurs in constant speed operation

Possible causes	Solutions
The frequency setting varies	When the frequency is set by adopting analog input terminal, the analog input filtering time constant can be increased. ([F4.0.06], [F4.0.07], [F4.0.08])
The carrier frequency is set lower	Increase the carrier frequency of the frequency inverter ([F1.1.13]), change the carrier characteristics ([F1.1.14]) and observe whether the oscillation is disappeared.
The load type is set improperly	Set steady load operation in macro parameter ([F0.0.0]) and confirm whether there's vibration or not.
The motor parameters are set inaccurately	1. Make sure the motor parameters ([F2.0.00~F2.0.09]) are set correctly or re-self adjust the internal parameters of the motor. 2. Adjust motor speed closed loop PID parameter ([F8.2.25~F8.2.27]).
The wiring between frequency inverter and motor is long	Shorten the output wiring as much as possible or install AC reactor.
Vibration is caused due to the vibration system with lower rigidity at the side of the load	Cancel the increasing of automatic torque, automatic energy-saving operation, anti-overload control, current limit, torque limit and confirm whether the vibration is disappeared.

5. The motor roars or has abnormal sound

Possible causes	Solutions
The carrier is lower	Increase the carrier frequency of the frequency inverter ([F1.1.13]).
The surrounding temperature of the frequency inverter is higher	1. If the temperature exceeds 40℃, it shall strengthen Ventilation and reduce temperature. 2. Reduce load and the temperature of frequency inverter (reduce upper frequency limit for fan and pump ([F0.1.21])). 3. Select temperature associated adjustment function in carrier characteristics ([F1.1.14]).
Mechanical resonance	1. Operate the motor separately, find the reasons of resonance and improve the characteristics at one side of the motor 2. Adjust hopping frequency ([F5.0.00]~[F5.0.05]) and avoid continuous operation in the frequency area where resonance occurs.
Input phase failure	1. Inspect the connection between frequency inverter and motor. 2. Inspect whether the three-phase winding of the motor is faulty or damaged.
The motor parameters are set improperly	Adjust motor speed closed loop PID parameter ([F8.2.25~F8.2.27]).

6. The motor does not accelerate or decelerate within the setting acceleration and deceleration time

Possible causes	Solutions
Operate in the form of S acceleration and deceleration curve	1. Set the acceleration and deceleration characteristic parameter ([F1.0.00]) into linear acceleration and deceleration mode and observe the acceleration and deceleration conditions. 2. Shorten the acceleration and deceleration time ([F1.0.03]~[F1.0.10]) and observe the acceleration and deceleration conditions.
Current limit action, the frequency rising is restricted (in acceleration)	1. Increase the data of acceleration current limit level ([F1.4.39]) and strong starting current limit level ([F1.4.40]). 2. Prolong acceleration time ([F1.0.03], [F1.0.05], [F1.0.07], and [F1.0.09]).
The motor has insufficient torque	Increase torque and boost voltage ([F1.2.18]) and confirm whether it is started.
The acceleration and deceleration of frequency is limited due to the limitation of torque	1. Reset the torque setting limit ([F8.3.47]) and maximum and minimum torque limit value. ([F8.3.48]~[F8.3.51]). 2. Prolong acceleration and deceleration time ([F1.0.03]~[F1.0.10]).
Wrongly select the acceleration and deceleration time	Inspect whether the selection signal for acceleration and deceleration time of multifunctional input terminal ([F3.0.00]~[F3.0.08]) is correct or not.

7. After transient powered off, the motor can not be started even it is powered on.

Possible causes	Solutions
Restart function after power off (F0.4.48) is prohibited	Set the restart function after transient power off ([F0.4.48]) as valid.
The operation command is maintained in OFF status when it is power on.	Confirm the reset sequence of external circuit, if necessary; discuss whether to adopt the holding relay of operation command.

8. The parameters are set improperly and the original value or delivery value needs to be recovered.

Possible causes	Solutions
The function code is conducted unnecessary parameter setting	Recover the parameters not necessary to be set into default.
The function code is conducted wrong parameter setting	Reset necessary function codes after initialization of parameter set as needed and confirm actions.

8.3 Failures in setting operation of frequency inverter

1. No display in the operation panel

Possible causes	solutions
The operation panel is not correctly connected to the frequency inverter	1. Confirm whether the operation panel is correctly connected to the frequency inverter, take it down and reinstall. 2. Replace other operation panels and confirm display.

2. The function code can not be changed

Possible causes	Solutions
Some codes can not be changed during operation	Confirm whether it is operating and whether the function code to be changed in the function code list can be changed during operation.
The parameters are locked	Confirm the locking conditions of parameters ([F0.0.05]), ([F0.0.06]); if the parameters are subject to be modified, the locking password with corresponding modification permissions shall be input first.
Did not press OK key	Confirm whether the OK key is pressed after the modification of function code data.
There's failure in the connection between operation panel and frequency inverter	Remove the operation panel and reinstall or replace a new operation panel.

8.4 Inquiry for failure record

This series of frequency inverter records the failure code for the recent 8 times and the output parameters of frequency inverter for the last failure. Looking up such information can help find the reasons of failure.

The failure information and status monitoring parameters are stored uniformly. Please look up the information referring to operating methods of keyboard.

Monitoring items	Content	Monitoring items	Content	Monitoring items	Content
dE.0.00	The last failure	dE.0.09	The output current in the last failure	dE.0.18	The accumulative running time (h) in the last failure.
dE.0.01	Historical failure 1	dE.0.10	The output voltage in the last failure.	dE.0.19	The interval time (h) of running between the recent two failures.
dE.0.02	Historical failure 2	dE.0.11	Detected motor speed (with speed sensor) in the last failure.	dE.0.20	The sync output frequency in the last failure.
dE.0.03	Historical failure 3	dE.0.12	DC side voltage in the last failure.	dE.0.21	
dE.0.04	Historical failure 4	dE.0.13	The output torque in the last failure.	dE.0.22	
dE.0.05	Historical failure 5	dE.0.14	The target frequency in the last failure.	dE.0.23	
dE.0.06	Historical failure 6	dE.0.15	The highest temperature of the equipment in the last failure.	dE.0.24	
dE.0.07	Historical failure 7	dE.0.16	Command status in the last failure (see the following table for detail).	dE.0.25	
dE.0.08	The operation frequency in the last failure(rotor sync)	dE.0.17	The operating conditions of frequency inverter in the last failure (see the following table for detail).		

Description of command and operation status:

dE.0.16	LED __X : 0: Stop command LED __X __, __X __, X __ : Retained	1: Operation command
dE.0.17	LED __X : Operation mode 0: V/F mode 2: Closed loop vector speed 4: Closed loop torque control LED __X : Operation status 0: Shut down 2: Stop and decelerate 4: Stable operation LED __X : Electric/braking status 0: Electric operation LED X __ : Limit suppression 0: No action 2: Over voltage suppressor action	1: Open loop vector speed 3: Open loop torque control 5: V/F separation control 1: Start and accelerate 3: Reduce frequency and decelerate 1: Power generation operation 1: Over current suppression action 3: Under voltage suppressor action

8.5 Reset of warning or alarm failure

When warning or alarm failure appears, the following operations can be selected:

1. When failure code displays, press **STOP/RESET** key.
2. When external terminal operation command channel is adopted and the terminal for failure reset is defined as valid in multifunctional input terminal Dix, the failures are reset.
3. When the field bus operation command channel is adopted, the upper computer can send fault reset command to frequency inverter through RS485 interface.
4. Power off.



- The failures causes must be checked thoroughly and eliminated before reset, otherwise, the frequency inverter may be damaged permanently.
- If it can not reset or failures reoccur after reset, it should check the causes; continuous reset will damage the frequency inverter.
- The reset shall be conducted 5 minutes later in overload and overheating protection action.
- When external terminals control, the fault reset shall be conducted after the removal of terminal operation command.

Chapter 9 Maintenance

Many factors such as temperature, humidity, dust and vibration of the use environment, and internal components aging, wear of frequency inverter, which may lead to hidden fault of frequency inverter. In order to ensure the frequency inverter of long and steady operation, its maintenance is required in the storage and the process of use.

After long-distance transportation of the frequency inverter, users should check whether the components are in good condition, or the screws are fastened before use them. During the normal use period, users shall regularly clean the internal dust of frequency inverter and check whether the screws are loose.



- The inspection shall be carried out by professional technician, and the power of frequency inverter shall be cut off.
- For frequency inverter with more than half a year storage time, when an electric current is applied, users shall boost the voltage slowly through voltage regulator to supply the power, or otherwise will lead to the risk of electric shock and explosion (internal electrolysis condenser).

Due to the high voltage of frequency inverter in service, the wrong operation can result in serious injury or death, therefore, the power supply of the frequency inverter shall be cut off, and the maintenance operation after ten minutes after the nixie tube of the frequency inverter panel extinguishing can be carried out.

9.1 Routine maintenance

Through routine maintenance, all kinds of abnormal condition and abnormal cause can be found promptly, and the faults and hidden dangers can be eliminated as soon as possible. Thus, the normal operation of equipment can be guaranteed and also the service life of the frequency inverter can be prolonged. Refer to the following table for routine maintenance.

Table 9-1 Tips for inspection and maintenance

Object checked	Inspection cycle		Scope of inspection	Assessment criterion
	Irregularly	Regularly		
Operation environment	√		1. Humidity, temperature 2. Dust, moisture 3. Gas	1. Keep humidity below 95%, without frost deposit 2. Free from peculiar odor, inflammable and explosive gas
Cooling system		√	1. Installation environment 2. Frequency inverter fan	1. The installation environment shall be well ventilated and the duct has no block 2. Fan is in well operation and without abnormal noise
Frequency inverter	√		1. Vibration, temperature rise 2. Noise 3. Wire, terminal	1. Vibration is smooth and outlet temperature is normal 2. No abnormal noise and no peculiar smell 3. No loose for fastening screw
Generator	√		1. Vibration, temperature rise 2. Noise	1. Smooth operation and normal temperature 2. No abnormalities and inconsistent noise
Input and output parameter	√		1. Input voltage 2. Output current	1. The input voltage is in the specified scope 2. Output current is under the rated value



- Electrical insulation experiment of frequency inverters has been conducted before leaving the factory, and users do not need to conduct the compression test again, or the internal components could be damaged.
- If the frequency inverter is required to undergo the insulation testing, just make sure that all the input and output terminals connected in a reliable way. For a single terminal, insulation testing is strictly prohibited and conduct the test with 500V tramegger
- Do not use tramegger to measure the control circuit. As the frequency inverter has internal static sensitive element, the direct touch is therefore prohibited.
- When conducting the insulation testing for the generator, remove the connection line between generator and the frequency inverter.

9.2 Inspection and displacement of the vulnerable components

During operation, some components of frequency inverter may wear or the performance is slowed down. In order to ensure the stable reliable operation of frequency inverter, the users shall carry out preventative maintenance for frequency inverter, and replace the components when necessary.

9.2.1 Filter capacitor

Possible cause of damage: Environmental temperature and the pulsating current are high, and electrolyte is aging.

Assessment criterion: When frequency inverter operate with load, uses check whether there occur fault such as over current, over voltage; whether liquid leaks out, whether the relief valve bulge; whether the determination of electrostatic capacitive and insulation resistance are abnormal.

The pulsating current of main loop would affect the performance of the aluminum electrolysis filter capacitor, and the degree of influence depends on the environment temperature and the using conditions. Replace electrolytic capacitors of frequency inverter every three to four years under normal conditions.

Filter capacitor shall be replaced immediately if any of the following occurs: electrolyte of the electrolyte capacitor leaks, relief valve emits out, and subject of the capacitor expands.

9.2.2 Cooling fan

Possible cause of damage: Bearing wear, leaf aging.

Assessment criterion: When the power of frequency inverter is cut out, check the fan blades and other parts to see whether there is any abnormality such as crack. With the power on, just check whether the fan operation situation is normal, and whether it has abnormal vibration and noise.

Service life of the entire cooling fan in frequency converter is about 15000 hours (i.e. frequency inverter use continuously for about two years), if the fan has unusual voice or vibration, it should be replaced immediately.

9.3 Storage

After purchase the frequency inverter, if the frequency inverter will be spared for a while or stored for a long time, users shall pay attention to the following items:

1) Storage environment should comply with the following table:

Environmental characteristics	Requirements	Remarks
Ambient temperature	-20 °C to 60 °C	Long-term storage temperature is no more than 60 °C, so as to avoid the degradation of capacitance characteristics. It shall avoid condensation and frozen environment caused by sudden change of temperature.
Relative humidity	5 to 95%	It can adopt measurement like plastic film sealing and desiccant.
Storage environment	Free from direct sunlight, no dust, no corrosive, no combustible gas, no oil, no steam, no gas, no drip, no vibration, and with little salt	

2) If the frequency inverter is not in use for a long time, the current shall be applied to restore filter capacitor characteristics every half year, and at the same time other features of the frequency converter shall also be checked. When the current is applied, it shall increase the voltage gradually through auto transformer, and the conduction time should be above half an hour.



- If the frequency inverter is not in use for a long time, the internal filter capacitance characteristics would decline.

9.4 Warranty

If the frequency inverter body has the following cases, the company will provide guarantee service:

- 1) If failures or damages occur in normal use within the warranty period (within 18 months from the date of purchase), our company will provide free maintenance. Our company will charge a reasonable cost of maintenance in case of more than 18 months above.
- 2) Even in the guarantee period, if any failure is caused by the following cases, our company will charge some of the maintenance cost:
 - Malfunction due to that the users do not operate according to the operation manual or beyond the standard;
 - Malfunction due to repair and modification without permission;
 - Malfunction caused by poor preservation;
 - Malfunction caused by improper use;
 - Damage to the machine due to fire, corrosive salt, gas corrosion, earthquake, storms, floods, thunder, abnormal voltage or other force majeure.
- 3) The company will provide lifelong paid maintenance services even the warranty period expire.

Chapter 10 Example Of Usage

10.1 Energy-saving transformation of escalators

Operating requirements: Activate operation when it senses people approaching and operate a frequency of 50Hz;

If there is no input of sensor signal in 10 seconds, it comes that:

Plan 1) automatically stop;

Plan 2) lower the frequency to 20Hz.

10.1.1 Scheme description

Scheme 1:

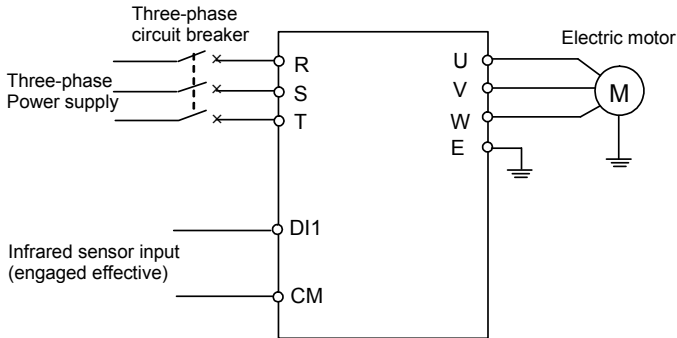
1. F0.1.16 = 0 (Factory Default)	Frequency setting channel
2. F0.2.25 = 2 (Factory Default)	Frequency digital setting
3. F0.2.29 = 50.00	Frequency settings
4. F0.3.33 = 1	Select the external terminal control of control commands
5. F0.3.35 = 0002	Three-line model 1
6. F5.1.06 = 1010	Timer 1's clock cycle: 1ms ; Stop- operate trigger-start; state reset of multifunctional terminal; Multi-cycle timing.
7. F5.1.09 = 10000	Timer 1: Cycle reaches 10000ms.
8. F5.1.16 = 0003	Timer 1 outputting signal 1: Cycle reaches 0.5s pulse.
9. F3.0.00 = 7	Multifunctional terminal D11 is defined as FWD operating terminal (to receive sensor signals)
10. FF.0.01 = 55	Virtual output of SDO1 signal - state of DI1
11. FF.0.09 = 55	Virtual input of SDI1 signal - timer 1 resets terminals
12. FF.0.02 = 44	Virtual output of SDO2 signal - timer 1's cycle reaches 0.5s pulse.
13. FF.0.10 = 19	Virtual input of SDI2 signal - three-line operates controlling terminal
14. FF.0.17 = 0010	Phase-reversing connection between SD02 and SDI2

Scheme 2:

1. F0.1.16 = 2	Multifunctional terminal selection of frequency settings
2. F0.2.25 = 2	Digital setting of frequency channel 1
3. F0.2.26 = 2	Digital setting of frequency channel 2
4. F0.2.29 = 50	Frequency setting of frequency channel 1
5. F0.2.32 = 20	Frequency setting of frequency channel 2
6. F0.3.33 = 1	External terminal controlling
7. F0.3.35 = 0002	Three-line model 1
8. F3.0.00 = 7	Multifunctional terminal D11 is defined as FWD operating terminal (to receive sensor signals)
9. F5.1.06 = 0000	Timer 1's clock cycle: 1ms ; Operate trigger-start of multifunction terminals; State reset of multifunctional terminal; Single-cycle timing.
10. F5.1.09 = 10000	Timer 1: Cycle reaches 10000ms.
11. F5.1.16 = 0004	Timer 1 outputting signal 1: Cycle reaches level output.
12. FF.0.01 = 55	Virtual output of SDO1 signal - state of DI1

13. FF.0.09= 55	Virtual input of SDI1 signal - timer 1 resets terminals
14. FF.0.02= 44	Virtual output of SDO2 - timer1's cycle reaches the output level signals.
15. FF.0.10= 12	Virtual input of SDI2 signal - change of frequency order
16. FF.0.03= 46	Virtual output of SDO3 signal - timer 2's cycle arrives.
17. FF.0.11= 19	Virtual input of SDI3 signal - three-line operating control
18. FF.0.04= 13	Virtual output of SDO4 - frequency inverter quicken separation
19. FF.0.12= 52	Virtual input of SDI4 signal - timer 1 triggers signal.
20. FF.017= 0100	Phase-reversing connection between SDO3 and SDI3

10.1.2 Wiring diagram



10.2 Make simple tension closed-loop control with offset PID

Use requirements: Frequency inverter adopts closed-loop torque controlling in leather rolling and meets the demand of production rolling. Users only need to make out a torque and a limited speed and then adjust torque output through tension feedback for a constant tension.

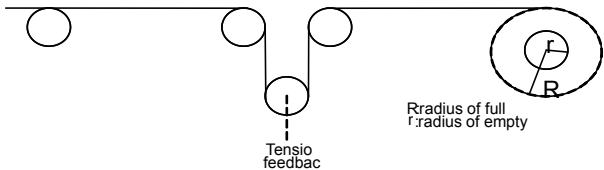
Site requirements:

Motor rolling: power: 5.5KW Rated torque: 36 N.m Pole number: 2

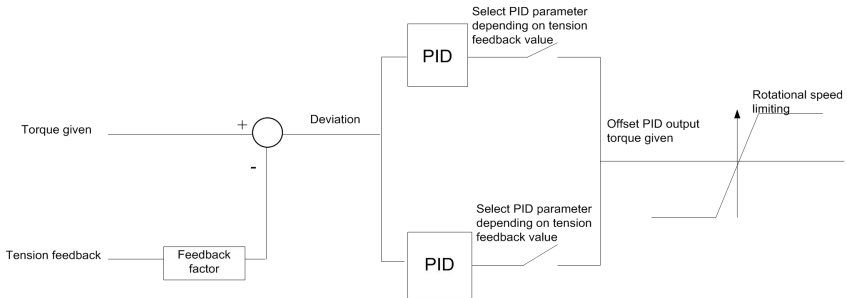
Tension sensor: Measuring range 0-40N Signal outputting: 0-10V

Winding diameter: Diameter of hollow winding 0.5m Diameter of full winding 1m

10.2.1 Diagram of constant tension control



10.2.2 Diagram of control structure

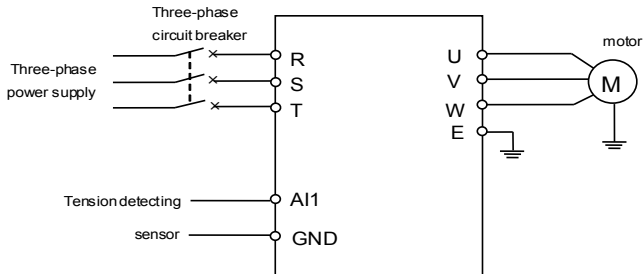


10.2.3 Configuration

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. F0.0.09= 0010 | Closed-loop vector controlling mode |
| 2. F8.3.39= 1 | Take care, torque model |
| 3. F8.3.40= 8 | Torque channel selects offset PID output |
| 4. F8.3.42= 1 | Time of torque ascending: 1s |
| 5. F8.3.43= 1 | Time of torque descending: 1s |
| 6. F8.3.45= 1500 | Positive rotated speed limited set on the basis of motor's actual rated rotated speed |
| 7. F8.3.46= 1500 | Reverse rotated speed limited set on the basis of motor's actual rated rotated speed |
| 8. F8.3.47= 0000 | Torque limited channel setup |
| 9. F8.3.48= -100 | Smallest torque limited: $-K \cdot R \cdot F / T \cdot 100\%$ R: biggest semidiameter F: tension value setting T: torque given T (rated torque of motor output) = $9550 \cdot P / N$, N: rotated speed given $100 \% < K < 250\%$ |
| 10. F8.3.50= 100 | Biggest torque limited= $K \cdot R \cdot F / T \cdot 100\%$ |
| 11. F9.0.00= 0101 | Input together of offset PID and frequency inverter Independent PID |
| 12. F9.0.01= 100 | Offset proportion: $R \cdot F / T$ (rated torque of motor output) % |
| 13. F9.0.02= 0010 | Offset PID outputs bipolar positive deviation |
| 14. F9.0.03= 20 | Proportional gain of PID in first part (relatively bigger than parameter value in second part) |
| 15. F9.0.04= 2 | Integral time of PID in first part (relatively smaller than parameter value in second part) |
| 16. F9.0.05= 0.2 | Differential coefficient of PID in first part |
| 17. F9.0.06= 5 | Differential inertia filtering time PID in first part |
| 18. F9.0.07= 1 | Offset PID output of Inertia filtering time |
| 19. F9.0.08= 0 | Offset PID internal figure setup |
| 20. F9.0.11= 62.5 | Offset PID internal figure given= $(R+r) \cdot F / 2T \cdot 100\%$ |
| 21. F9.0.12= 0 | Offset PID feedback selects analog quantity AI1 |
| 22. F9.0.13= 0 | Feedback input being 0V contrary to 0% feedback |
| 23. F9.0.14= 8.3 | Feedback input contrary to 100% feedback= $F_m \cdot (R+r) / 2T \cdot 10$, (F_m : full-scale tension value of tension sensor; tension sensor output signal: 0-10V. |
| 24. F9.0.15= $(R + r) / 2$ | Feedback multiplication factor transform feedback tension signal into torque signal depending on feedback factor |
| 25. F9.1.21= 0011 | Offset PID selects double PID parameter switch PID parameter according to feedback value |

26. F9.1.23= 0060	Feedback value of lower-limited switching value 60%
27. F9.1.24= 0080	Feedback value of top-limited switching value 80%
28. F9.1.29= 2	Proportional gain of PID in second part
29. F9.1.30= 18	Integral time of PID in second part
30. F9.1.31= 0.5	Differential coefficient of PID in second part
31. F9.1.33= 5	Regulator output of filtering time constant

10.2.4 Wiring diagram



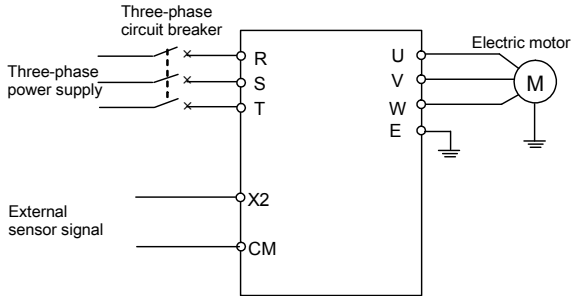
10.3 Application in mechanical factory

Use requirements: After 50 times' external sensor signal receiving, operate the frequency inverter with first step from 20Hz to 20s forwardly and second step from 30Hz to 40s reversely. Then make a stop and wait for the next operation.

10.3.1 Configuration

1. F0.3.33= 1	Controlling order to be the external terminal controlling
2. F0.3.35= 0002	Function model of external controlling terminal to be the three wire model 1
3. F1.0.03= 5	Time for accelerating: 5s
4. F1.0.04= 5	Time for slowing down: 5s
5. F3.0.00= 44	DI1 terminal id defined as timer 1's clock terminal
6. F5.2.20= 0100	Select timer 1 work model
7. F5.2.22= 50	Set number counting as 50
8. F6.0.00= 20	Set first velocity as 20Hz
9. F6.0.01= 30	Set second velocity as 30Hz
10. F6.1.15= 0011	Operation model selects the stop model of multi-velocity single cycle
11. F6.1.17= 0010	Set operating direction in second velocity as the reverse
12. F6.1.31= 20	Time running for first velocity: 20s
13. F6.1.32= 40	Time running for second velocity: 40s
14. FF.0.01= 40	Virtual output of SDO1 signal — timer 1's cycle arrives
15. FF.0.09= 7	Virtual input of SDI1 signal — positive shift FWD terminal
16. FF.0.02= 46	Virtual output of SDO2 signal — timer 2's cycle arrives.
17. FF.0.10= 19	Virtual input of SDI2 signal — three-line operating control
18. FF.0.17= 0010	Phase-reversing connection between SDO2 and SDI2

10.3.2 External circuit wiring diagram

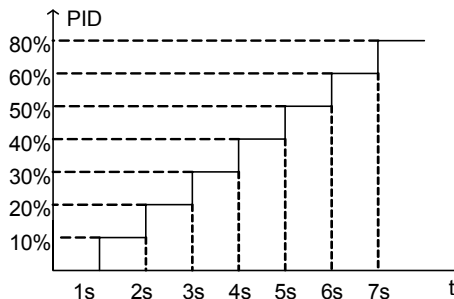


10.4 Multi-PID setup, multi-part PID setup, form a multi- step pidsetup (To reduce overstrike)

10.4.1 Parameter setup

1. F6.1.15= 0053	Multi-part PID operating input (keep the final value stop model)
2. F6.1.31= 1	Time for operating in part 1: 1s
3. F6.1.32= 1	Time for operating in part 2: 1s
4. F6.1.33= 1	Time for operating in part 3: 1s
5. F6.1.34= 1	Time for operating in part 4: 1s
6. F6.1.35= 1	Time for operating in part 5: 1s
7. F6.1.36= 1	Time for operating in part 6: 1s
8. F6.1.37= 5	Time for operating in part 7: 5s
9. F7.0.00= 0001	Process PID input without requirements
10. F7.0.13= 10	100% feedback corresponding simulation: 10V
11. F7.0.17= 15.85	Proportional gain: 15.85
12. F7.0.18= 14	INTEGRAL time: 14
13. F7.1.27= 10	Part 1 in process PID given with 10%
14. F7.1.28= 20	Part 2 in process PID given with 20%
15. F7.1.29= 30	Part 3 in process PID given with 30%
16. F7.1.30= 40	Part 4 in process PID given with 40%
17. F7.1.31= 50	Part 5 in process PID given with 50%
18. F7.1.32= 60	Part 6 in process PID given with 60%
19. F7.1.33= 80	Part 7 in process PID given with 70%

10.4.2 Diagram of step PID value given



Chapter 11 Description Of Communication Protocol

11.1 Protocol overview

Modbus protocol is a universal protocol used in the industrial control unit. Because this protocol can be conveniently applied, this protocol has been considered as the general industry standard and is widely applied to the integrated system of master controllers and slave units. By applying this protocol, units of various brands can be connected together and functioning as an industrial network.

Modbus defines three types of transmission modes: ASCII, RTU and TCP. DX500 Frequency inverter only supports RTU mode.

11.2 Interface and transmission method

DX500 utilizes RS485 (RS232, optional, which has to be converted by a level) as the physical interface for Modbus, and one host can control one or more (maximum 247 units) frequency inverters.

Terminal Identifier	Terminal Usage	Function
RS+	Data Transceiving Terminal(+)	When connected to PC/PLC via RS 485 communication interface, connect to (+) signal
RS-	Data Transceiving Terminal(-)	When connected to PC/PLC via RS 485 communication interface, connect to (-) signal

By applying the asynchronous serial half-duplex transmission method, only master unit or slave unit can transmit data at one particular moment, and the other unit can only receive data.

11.3 Data structure

1) 4 Optional Data Transmission Formats

- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, without parity bit (factory setting)
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, even parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, odd parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 2 stop bit, without parity bit

2) Baud rate

Seven optional baud rates: 1200bps, 2400 bps, 4800 bps, 9600 bps, 19200 bps, 38400bps, 79600 bps

3) Communication rules

Starting interval between data frames is longer than 3.5 byte transmission cycle (standard), but the minimum interval should not be shorter than 0.5 ms.

11.4 Parameter configuration for frequency inverters

FA.0.00 is a read-only parameter, and is used to display the status of the communication card connection and bus;

FA.0.01 = 00XX, unit digit is used to choose baud rate, and tens digit is used to choose data format;

FA.0.02 = X, choose the address of this station;

FA.0.03~FA.0.06, configure supporting communication parameters; refer to functional parameter table for detailed functions.



- X indicates that this digit can be any value in the allowed range.

11.5 Brief introduction of functions

The Modbus functional codes supported by DX500 are listed below:

Function	Code (Hexadecimal)	Description of Functions
Read coil status	0x01	Read coil status by digit. Each digit for the controlling character is mapped to coil 0~15 respectively.
Read discrete input status	0x02	Read discrete input status. Each digit for the status character is mapped to coil 0~15 respectively.
Read multiple hold registers	0x03	Read multiple hold registers. It can read all the application parameters, status parameters, controlling characters, status characters and setting values of DX500.
Read multiple input registers	0x04	Read multiple input registers. The address for analog input register starts from 0x1200.
Enforce single coil	0x05	Perform writing action for a single output digit. Each digit for the controlling character is mapped to coil 1~16 respectively.
Write to a single hold register	0x06	Perform writing action for a single hold register. All the parameters, controlling characters, status characters and setting values of DX500 are mapped to the hold register.
Query for the anomaly status	0x07	Query for the anomaly status information. In DX500, the failure information of the frequency inverter can be queried.
Failure diagnosis	0x08	Execute field diagnosis for the bus failure. Support the sub-codes, like querying (0x00), rebooting (0x01), monitoring (0x04) and zero-clearing(0x0A) etc.
Enforce multiple coils	0x0F	Perform writing action for multiple output digits respectively. Each digit for the controlling character is mapped to coil 1~16 respectively.
Write to multiple hold registers	0x10	Perform writing action for multiple hold registers. All the parameters, controlling characters, status characters and setting values of DX500 are also mapped to the hold register.
Read/write to multiple hold registers	0x17	This function equals to combining 0x03 and 0x10 into a new command.

11.6 Access address summary

DX500	Access Address	Functional Codes Supported (Hexadecimal)
Controlling digit Multi-purpose terminal output Relay output	Coil (0x1000-0x1100)	0x01- Read coil status 0x05- Enforce single coil 0x0F- Enforce multiple coils
Multi-purpose terminal input for status digit	Discrete input (0x1100-0x1200)	0x02- Read input status
Analog input	Input register (0x1200-0x1300)	0x04- Read input register
Application parameters Status parameters Controlling characters, Status characters Setting values Mapping status parameters Mapping application parameters	Hold registers (application parameter area, status parameter area, 0x1300-0x1400)	0x03- Read multiple registers 0x06- Write to a single register 0x10- Write to multiple registers 0x17- Read/write to multiple registers

For detailed address distribution, please refer to below section of Modbus detailed address-finding distribution.

11.7 Detailed modbus address-finding distribution

1) Coil Address Summary (0x1000-0x1100)

Relevant Modbus functional codes: 0x01 (read coil status), 0x05 (write to a single coil), 0x0F (write to multiple coils)

Register name	Function Description	Access Address
Controlling Digit – Digit 0	Reserved	0x1000
Controlling Digit – Digit 1	Operation Allowed 0: Operation banned 1: Operation allowed	0x1001
Controlling Digit – Digit 2	Starting allowed 0: Starting banned 1: Starting allowed	0x1002
Controlling Digit – Digit 3	Reserved	0x1003
Controlling Digit – Digit 4	Operation instruction 0: Stop 1: Operation	0x1004
Controlling Digit – Digit 5	Operation direction 0: Positive 1: Negative	0x1005
Controlling Digit – Digit 6	Emergency Stop 0: Invalid 1: Valid	0x1006
Controlling Digit – Digit 7	Free slide stop 0: Invalid 1: Valid	0x1007
Controlling Digit – Digit 8	Reserved	0x1008
Controlling Digit – Digit 9	Reserved	0x1009
Controlling Digit – Digit 10	Reserved	0x100A
Controlling Digit – Digit 11	Reserved	0x100B
Controlling Digit – Digit 12	Acceleration/deceleration banned 0: Allowed 1: Banned	0x100C
Controlling Digit – Digit 13	Zero-clearing for integrator input 0: Invalid 1: Valid	0x100D
Controlling Digit – Digit 14	Remote Control 0: Invalid 1: Valid	0x100E
Controlling Digit – Digit 15	Failure Reset 0- >1 Reset	0x100F
DO1	Multi-purpose output terminal 1	0x1020
DO2	Multi-purpose output terminal 2	0x1021
EDO1	Multi-purpose output terminal 3 (extendable card)	0x1030
RO1	Multi-purpose relay output 1	0x1040
ERO1	Multi-purpose relay output 2 (extendable card)	0x1050
Reserved		0x1051~ 0x1099

2) Discrete Input Address Summary (0x1100 ~ 0x1200)

Relevant Modbus functional codes: 0x02 (read input status)

Register name	Function Description	Access Address
Status Character – Digit 0	Ready	0x1100
Status Character – Digit 1	Operation allowed	0x1101
Status Character – Digit 2	Starting allowed	0x1102
Status Character – Digit 3	Reserved	0x1103
Status Character – Digit 4	Operation status	0x1104
Status Character – Digit 5	Direction	0x1105
Status Character – Digit 6	Zero speed	0x1106
Status Character – Digit 7	Acceleration	0x1107
Status Character – Digit 8	Deceleration	0x1108
Status Character – Digit 9	Arrival	0x1109
Status Character – Digit 10	Reserved	0x110A
Status Character – Digit 11	Reserved	0x110B
Status Character – Digit 12	Instruction source	0x110C
Status Character – Digit 13	Command source	0x110D
Status Character – Digit 14	Warning	0x110E
Status Character – Digit 15	Failure	0x110F
DI1	Multi-purpose input terminal 1	0x1120
DI2	Multi-purpose input terminal 2	0x1121
DI3	Multi-purpose input terminal 3	0x1122
DI4	Multi-purpose input terminal 4	0x1123
DI5	Multi-purpose input terminal 5	0x1124
DI6	Multi-purpose input terminal 6	0x1125
EDI1	Multi-purpose input terminal 7 (extendable card)	0x1130
EDI2	Multi-purpose input terminal 8 (extendable card)	0x1131
EDI3	Multi-purpose input terminal 9 (extendable card)	0x1132
Reserved		0x1133~0x1199

3) Input Register Address Summary (0x1200 ~ 0x1300)

Relevant Modbus functional codes: 0x04 (read input register)

Register name	Function Description	Value Range	Access Address
AI1	Analog input value 1	0 ~ 4080	0x1200
AI2	Analog input value 2	0 ~ 4080	0x1201
AI3	Analog input value 3 (extendable card)	0 ~ 4080	0x1202
Fin	Pulse input value (extendable card)	0 ~ 4080	0x1203
Reserved			0x1204~0x1299

4) Hold Register Address Summary

Relevant Modbus functional codes: 0x03 (read multiple registers), 0x06 (write to multiple registers), 0x10 (write to multiple registers), 0x17 (read/write to multiple registers).

① Application parameter address

The application parameter access address can be obtained from the parameter's identifier when ascertaining the access address, the method is to ignore the sub-class code in the identifier (following referred to as "**"); let's see an example, for parameter identifier: HH.*.DD (e.g.F2.0.33), it will obtain HHDD directly (hexadecimal format), and the access address for F2.0.33 is: 0xF233H. Below attached is the table for respective conversion of access addresses:

Parameter identifier	RAM Access Address ①	ROM Access Address
F0.#.00 ~ F0.#.55	0xF000~0xF055	0xE000~0xE055
..... *
F9.#.00 ~ F9.#.55	0xF900~0xF955	0xE900~0xE955
FA.#.00 ~ FA.#.55	0xFA00~0xFA55	0xEA00~0xEA55
..... *
FF.#.00 ~ FF.#.55	0xFF00~0xFF55	0xEF00~0xEF55
dE.#.00 ~ dE.#.55 (read-only)	0xDE00~0xDE55	0xBE00~0xBE55

②Status parameter address (read-only): The address conversion method for status parameter is similar to that for application parameter. However, there is no ROM access address.

Parameter Identifier	RAM Access Address
d0.#.00 ~ d0.#.55	0xD000~0xD055
d1.#.00 ~ d1.#.55	0xD100~0xD155

③ Bus Controlling Parameter Address (0x1300 ~ 0x1400)

Register Name	Value Range	Access Address
Controlling character (mapping coils 0-15) ②	0 ~ 0xFFFF	0x1300
Modbus setting value 1 (Relative Value) ③	-10000 ~ 10000	0x1301
Modbus setting value 2 (Absolute Value)	-30000 ~ 30000	0x1302
Mapping application parameters 1 ④	[F0.00 ~ FF.55]	0x1303
Mapping application parameters 2	[F0.00 ~ FF.55]	0x1304
Mapping application parameters 3	[F0.00 ~ FF.55]	0x1305
Mapping application parameters 4	[F0.00 ~ FF.55]	0x1306
Mapping application parameters 5	[F0.00 ~ FF.55]	0x1307
Mapping application parameters 6	[F0.00 ~ FF.55]	0x1308
Status Character (Mapping discrete range 0-15)	0 ~ 0xFFFF	0x1309
Mapping status parameters 1	[d0.00 ~ d1.49]	0x130A
Mapping status parameters 2	[d0.00 ~ d1.49]	0x130B

Register Name	Value Range	Access Address
Mapping status parameters 3	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x130C
Mapping status parameters 4	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x130D
Mapping status parameters 5	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x130E
Mapping status parameters 6	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x130F
Mapping status parameters 7	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x1310
Mapping status parameters 8	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x1311
Mapping status parameters 9	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x1312
Mapping status parameters 10	[d0.00 ~d1.49]	0x1313
Reserved	Undefined	0x1314 ~0x1400

Notes:

- If there is no need to Reserved the parameters permanently, it suffices to write the parameters to the RAM area. However, if the parameters have to be maintained permanently, it is required to write the parameter values into the ROM area. The service life of ROM area will be shortened if parameters are frequently written to the ROM area. If value F2.1.13 needs to be written and maintained permanently, the register address where it should be written to is 0xE213.
- When reading/writing controlling characters, it can be achieved via reading/writing to the coil mapped to each digit of controlling characters, and it can also be achieved via reading/writing to the hold register corresponding to the controlling characters. Both methods can achieve identical results. If it is needed to set the value for operation allowed, we can set the value of the digit 1 for controlling character (address 0x1001) as 1 Via functional code 05, we can also set the value of controlling character (address 0x1300) as 0x0002 via functional code 06. When reading the status characters, the method is similar to that for reading/writing controlling characters. It can be achieved via reading the discrete input mapped to each digit of status characters, and it can also be achieved via reading the hold register corresponding to the status characters. If we need to read the operation direction, we can read the status digit 5 (address 0x1105) via functional code 02, we can also read the status character (address 0x1309) via functional code 03.
- When we need to access several application parameters or monitoring parameters of discrete addresses, we can first map these parameters to bus control parameter area, and then we access to that area instead. As a matter of fact, access for mapped parameters is a type of pointer access, and the mapping parameters can be set in the FA.1 parameter group.

5)Anomaly Status Information: Relevant Modbus functional code 0x07 (Query)

The frequency inverter's failure warning status and code corresponding to each digit of the returned data

Returned data – digit 7: 0 — No failure on frequency inverter, 1 — Failure on frequency inverter

Returned data – digit 6: 0 — No warning on frequency inverter, 1 — Warning on frequency inverter

Returned data – digit 5~0: each code of failure information corresponds to the identifier code following Fu in the failure code of the frequency inverter.

Each code of warning information corresponds to the identifier code following aL. in the warning code of the frequency inverter.

If data 0x8C (10001100) is returned, it indicates that the failure code of the frequency inverter is Fu. 012; If data 0x64 (01100100) is returned, it indicates that warning code of the frequency inverter is aL.036.

6)Failure Diagnosis: Relevant Modbus functional code 0x08 (Diagnosis)

Sub-function code list

Sub-function code	Function	Query Data	Response Data
00	Return the identical query data	Random	Image query data
01	Re-start communication option (restore the "listen only" status for 04 sub-code)	FF00/0000	FF00/0000
04	Enforce slave unit into "Listen Only" status and the slave unit will not reply; The failed slave unit can be removed from the communication chain.	0000	No reply
0A	Clear all calculators and diagnosing registers	0000	Image query data
0B	Return the number of bus information items	0000	Total number of bus information items
0C	Return the number of bus communication failures (CRC error calculation)	0000	CRC error calculation
0D	Return the number of bus anomaly failures	0000	Number of anomaly data items
0E	Return the number of slave unit information items (corresponding with slave unit address or the broadcasting information)	0000	Number of valid data items

11.8 Examples

- 1) Start 1# Frequency inverter Operation.

Host request:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Coil Starting Address High Digit	Coil Starting Address Low Digit	Write Values High Digit	Write Values Low Digit	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	05	10	04	FF	00	C9	3B

Slave Unit Response: Frequency inverter will operate in positive direction, and return the identical data as requested by the host.

- 2) Set the operation frequency as 25.00Hz for frequency inverter, and correspondingly, it is 50.00% of the upper limit frequency 50.00 Hz.

Host request:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Register Starting Address High Digit	Register Starting Address Low Digit	Register Data High Digit	Register Data Low Digit	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	06	13	01	13	88	D1	D8

Slave Unit Response: Set the value for frequency inverter's frequency as 25.00Hz, and return the identical data as requested by the host.

- 3) Return the frequency inverter's current operational frequency and rotation speed, the positive rotating frequency of frequency inverter is 50.00Hz, and positive rotation speed of the electrical motor is 1500rpm.

Host request:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Register Starting Address High Digit	Register Starting Address Low Digit	Number of Registers High Digit	Number of Registers Low Digit	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	03	D0	00	00	02	FC	CB

Slave Unit Response:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Number of bytes read	The 1st register data high digit	The 1st register data low digit	The 2nd register data high digit	The 2nd register data low digit	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	03	04	13	88	05	DC	7C	54

- 4) Query the number of bus communication failures (CRC error calculation), return the number of bus communication failure as 35.

Host request:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Sub-function Code High Digit	Sub-function Code Low Digit	Query data High Digit	Query data Low Digit	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	08	00	0C	00	00	20	08

Slave Unit Response:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Sub-function Code High Digit	Sub-function Code Low Digit	Response Data High Digit	Response Data Low Digit	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	08	00	0C	00	23	61	D1

5) Query the model description for frequency inverter

Host request:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	11	C0	2C

Slave Unit Response:

Slave Unit Address	Function Code	Number of Bytes	Model Data	Operation Status	Extra Data	CRC Check Low Digit	CRC Check High Digit
01	11	10	00 00 01 05 60	FF	04 03 11 00 20 11 01 02 61 02	A5	5C

Model of frequency inverter: DX500-4T1100GQ/4T1320PQ, frequency inverter in operation, production batch of 2011-2-3, version number: 6201.

Chapter 12 EMC

12.1 CE

The product can be sold freely in the market of EEA (European Economic Area) with CE label, and to be ensured to meet other requirements as LVD and EMC.

12.2 Definition

EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) means the capacity of anti-interference for electric and electron equipments, and the product could not interfere other local equipments also. EMC rules are defined requirements of anti-interference for EU area.

- 1) 1st Environment: including power supply equipments of civil low voltage grid.
- 2) 2nd Environment: including power supply equipments of non-civil low voltage grid.
 - C1 Inverter: when rated power of electric transmission system is under 1000V, use in 1st environment.
 - C2 Inverter: when rated voltage of electric transmission system is under 1000V, it would be plug equipments or mobile equipments. When it uses in 1st environment, it should install and adjust by professional engineer.
 - C3 Inverter: when rated voltage of electric transmission system is under 1000V, it is suitable in 2nd environment, but not 1st environment.
 - C4 Inverter: when rated voltage of electric transmission system is not under 1000V or rated current is not lower than 400A, or it is suitable in complicated system of 2nd environment.

12.3 Obey standard order

12.3.1 Obey EMC order

V800 Series meet the requirements of standard EN61800-3: 2004 C2, which is suitable in 1st and 2nd environment.

12.3.2 Obey LVD order

V800 Series meet the requirements of standard EN 61800-2.

Installation of 1st environment:

- 1) Inverter chooses suited EMC filter.
- 2) Select suitable motor and wires.
- 3) Wiring according to 《Cable Wiring Requirements》.
- 4) Max output cable length is 100m.



Warning: If inverter is using in residence or civil area, it would cause electromagnetic interference. Except CE requirements, user should take some necessary action to avoid this interference.

12.4 Guidance of emc external accessories installation and selection

External EMC input filter between inverter and power supply is not only to restrain interference to inverter by ambient electromagnetic noise, and to avoid interference to ambient equipments by inverter. In order to meet standard of C2 level, it should add external suitable EMC filter on inverter input terminal.

12.4.1 Notice of emi input filter installation

Please obey rated values for using the filter. Because filter is type I electrical equipment, filter metal shell should contact well with installation cabinet metal with good Conductive continuity. Otherwise, it would cause the risk of electric shock and affect EMC efficiency badly. The earth of filter and inverter PE terminal must earth on same GND. If not, it will affect EMC efficiency badly. Please contact our technical support for EMI filter selection and installation.

12.4.2 DC Reactor

DC Reactor is mainly used in inverter and rectifying for increasing power factor and filtering interference of stripe, voltage, current, and decreasing inverter harmonic interference.

1. Performance Index of DC Reactor

- 1) Rated working voltage: DC 500V~DC540V;
- 2) Dielectric strength: iron core-winding 2500VAC/50Hz/5mA/60S, no flashover breakdown;
- 3) Insulation Resistance: iron core-winding 500VDC, insulation resistance $\geq 100\text{M}\Omega$;
- 4) Reactor noise is lower than 65dB (test at the point of 1m horizontal distance with reactor)

Temperature rise is less than 70K

2. Parameter Configuration of DC Reactor

Inverter Power (KW)	Reactor Model	Size L*W*H (mm)	Mounting Dimension (mm)	Terminal Aperture (mm)
1.1	DCL-001	96*72*97	50*52	4-Φ7
1.5	DCL-001	96*72*97	50*52	4-Φ7
2.2	DCL-001	96*72*97	50*52	4-Φ7
3.0	DCL-002	98*90*110	50*68	4-Φ7
4.0	DCL-002	98*90*110	50*68	4-Φ7
5.5	DCL-003	98*98*110	50*78	4-Φ7
7.5	DCL-004	98*105*110	50*83	4-Φ7
9.0	DCL-004	98*105*110	50*83	4-Φ7
11	DCL-005	120*105*163	75*72	4-Φ7
15	DCL-005	120*105*163	75*72	4-Φ7
18.5	DCL-006	120*105*163	80*72	4-Φ7
22	DCL-007	125*105*165	80*72	4-Φ7
30	DCL-008	142*125*190	50*87	4-Φ9
37	DCL-009	142*125*190	50*87	4-Φ9
45	DCL-010	142*125*190	50*87	4-Φ9
55	DCL-011	180*150*200	140*90	4-Φ10
75	DCL-011	180*150*200	140*90	4-Φ10
90	DCL-012	185*155*220	140*90	4-Φ10
110	DCL-013	180*175*220	140*110	4-Φ10
132	DCL-014	180*195*220	140*120	4-Φ10

160	DCL-015	205*198*240	160*130	4-Φ13
185	DCL-016	200*205*255	150*120	4-Φ10
200	DCL-017	200*205*255	150*120	4-Φ10
220	DCL-018	210*210*255	155*120	4-Φ10
250	DCL-019	240*225*265	175*130	4-Φ10
280	DCL-020	240*225*265	175*130	4-Φ10
315	DCL-021	240*225*285	175*130	4-Φ10
350	DCL-022	230*235*300	170*140	4-Φ13

12.4.3 Input reactor

AC input reactor is mounted at input terminal of inverter to restrain transmitting harmonic generated by inverter to power grid, reduce interference of inverter harmonic to other components, improve quality of power grid, improve power factors and restrain abnormal fluctuations of power grid voltage and surge current of power grid, stabilize waveform and reduce impact to inverter.

1. Performance index of AC input reactor

- Rated operational voltage: 380V/50Hz;
- Dielectric strength: iron core-winding 3000VAC/50Hz/5mA/60S, no flashover breakdown;
- Insulation resistance: iron core-winding 1000VDC, insulation resistance $\geq 100\text{M}\Omega$;
- Reactor noise is less than 70dB (test at the point of 1m horizontal distance with reactor);
- Temperature rise is less than 70K.

2. Parameter Configuration of AC Input Reactor

Inverter Power (KW)	Reactor Model	Size L*W*H (mm)	Mounting Dimension (mm)	Terminal Aperture (mm)
1.1	ACIN-001	120*72*143	65*60	4-Φ6
1.5	ACIN-001	120*72*143	65*60	4-Φ6
2.2	ACIN-002	120*72*143	65*50	4-Φ6
3.0	ACIN-003	120*75*145	65*55	4-Φ6
4.0	ACIN-004	150*95*170	70*62	4-Φ6
5.5	ACIN-004	150*95*170	70*62	4-Φ6
7.5	ACIN-005	150*90*170	70*62	4-Φ6
9.0	ACIN-006	150*90*170	70*62	4-Φ6
11	ACIN-006	150*90*170	70*62	4-Φ6
15	ACIN-007	150*90*170	70*62	4-Φ6
18.5	ACIN-008	166*115*185	80*72	4-Φ9
22	ACIN-009	168*115*188	80*75	4-Φ9
30	ACIN-010	185*145*153	95*78	4-Φ9
37	ACIN-011	185*145*153	95*78	4-Φ9
45	ACIN-012	210*165*162	105*90	4-Φ9
55	ACIN-013	275*165*190	230*90	4-Φ10
75	ACIN-014	275*165*220	230*90	4-Φ10
90	ACIN-015	275*170*220	230*100	4-Φ10
110	ACIN-016	305*185*220	250*110	4-Φ10
132	ACIN-017	320*190*220	260*110	4-Φ10
160	ACIN-018	335*200*220	270*120	4-Φ10
185	ACIN-019	335*200*230	270*120	4-Φ10
200	ACIN-019	335*200*230	270*120	4-Φ10
220	ACIN-020	350*205*230	280*120	4-Φ10
250	ACIN-021	350*210*265	290*120	4-Φ10

280	ACIN-022	350*210*265	290*120	4-Φ10
315	ACIN-023	320*220*285	270*130	4-Φ13
350	ACIN-024	350*235*305	290*130	4-Φ13
400	ACIN-024	350*235*305	290*130	4-Φ13
450	ACIN-025	365*235*325	300*135	4-Φ13
500	ACIN-026	365*240*340	300*135	4-Φ13
560	ACIN-027	380*260*390	310*135	4-Φ13
630	ACIN-028	380*260*390	310*135	4-Φ13
710	ACIN-029	400*265*390	320*135	4-Φ13
800	ACIN-030	440*275*430	370*135	4-Φ13

12.4.4 AC output reactor

AC output reactor is mounted at output terminal of inverter to restrain capacitive charging current of connecting cable between inverter and motor, voltage built-up rate of PWM wave of passivated inverter, improve power factor and quality of power grid as well as stabilize waveform.

1. Performance index of AC output reactor

- Rated operational voltage: 380V/50Hz;
- Dielectric strength: cored winding 3000VAC/50Hz/10mA/60S, no flashover breakdown;
- Insulation resistance: cored winding 1000VDC, insulation resistance $\geq 100\text{M}\Omega$;
- Reactor noise is less than 65dB (test at the point of 1m horizontal distance with reactor).

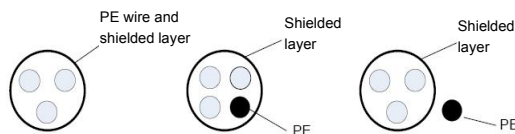
2. Parameter Configuration of AC Output Reactor

Inverter Power (KW)	Reactor Model	Size L*W*H (mm)	Mounting Dimension (mm)	Terminal Aperture (mm)
1.1	ACOUT-001	120*70*140	65*52	4-Φ6
1.5	ACOUT-002	120*70*140	65*52	4-Φ6
2.2	ACOUT-002	120*70*140	65*52	4-Φ6
3.0	ACOUT-003	120*70*140	65*52	4-Φ6
4.0	ACOUT-003	120*70*140	65*52	4-Φ6
5.5	ACOUT-004	148*80*166	70*62	4-Φ6
7.5	ACOUT-005	148*80*166	70*62	4-Φ6
9.0	ACOUT-006	150*82*172	70*62	4-Φ6
11	ACOUT-006	150*82*172	70*62	4-Φ6
15	ACOUT-007	150*82*172	70*62	4-Φ6
18.5	ACOUT-008	165*130*128	80*72	4-Φ9
22	ACOUT-009	165*130*128	80*72	4-Φ9
30	ACOUT-010	180*135*140	80*72	4-Φ9
37	ACOUT-011	180*135*140	80*72	4-Φ9
45	ACOUT-012	180*140*140	80*72	4-Φ9
55	ACOUT-013	230*150*170	195*80	4-Φ10
75	ACOUT-014	230*150*200	195*80	4-Φ10
90	ACOUT-015	230*155*200	200*90	4-Φ10
110	ACOUT-016	250*155*200	210*90	4-Φ10
132	ACOUT-017	260*175*200	220*110	4-Φ10
160	ACOUT-018	260*175*220	220*110	4-Φ10
185	ACOUT-019	265*175*220	220*110	4-Φ10
200	ACOUT-019	265*175*220	220*110	4-Φ10
220	ACOUT-020	275*185*220	230*110	4-Φ10
250	ACOUT-021	320*190*240	270*110	4-Φ10

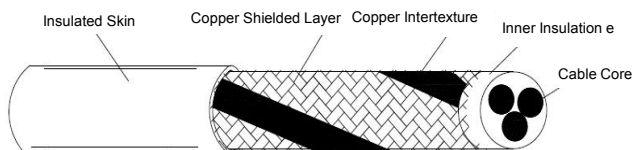
280	ACOUT-021	320*190*240	270*110	4-Φ10
315	ACOUT-022	305*190*265	260*110	4-Φ13
350	ACOUT-023	335*205*285	280*110	4-Φ13
400	ACOUT-024	335*205*285	280*110	4-Φ13
450	ACOUT-025	335*205*305	280*110	4-Φ13
500	ACOUT-026	340*215*320	280*110	4-Φ13
560	ACOUT-027	365*235*340	310*120	4-Φ13
630	ACOUT-028	365*235*340	310*120	4-Φ13
710	ACOUT-029	365*235*390	310*120	4-Φ13
800	ACOUT-030	380*245*390	320*120	4-Φ13

12.5 Shielded cable

In order to meet EMC requirements of CE, it must use shielded cable with shielded layer. Shielded cable has 3 phase conductive shielded cable and 4 phase conductive shielded cable. If conductive performance of shielded layer cannot meet requirement, it would add one separate PE wire or use 4 phase conductive shielded cable with one PE wire.



In order to restrain shooting and conducting of radio frequency effectively, shielded layer of shielded cable makes up of coaxial copper intertexture. For increasing shielding efficiency and conductive performance, intertexture density of shielded layer should be more than 90%.



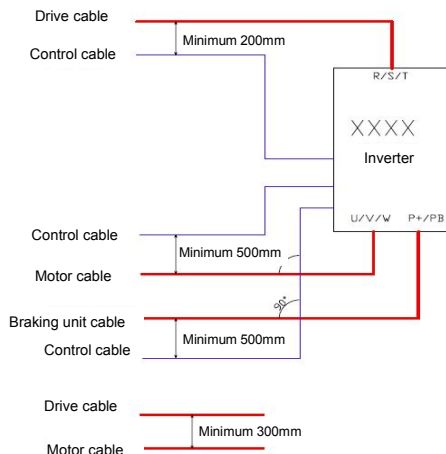
12.6 Cable wiring requirements

- 1) Wiring of motor should be far from other cable wirings, and cable of several inverter motors can be wiring side by side.
- 2) Wiring of motor cable, input drive cable and control cable would be in different wire casing. In order to avoid electromagnetic interference of inverter output voltage with fast changing, it should avoid long distance wiring side by side of motor cable and other cables.
- 3) When control cable must cross drive cable, it should ensure the angle of two cables with 90 degree. Do not cross other cables with inverter.
- 4) The drive input, output and weak signal cable (e.g. control cable) of inverter should not wire parallel. With condition available, it is better to wire vertically.

5) Please keep good connection of cable wire casings and fine grounding. Aluminum wire casing could improve equipotential voltage.

6) Filter, inverter, and motor should be in good connection with system (mechanical equipments) with painting protection of installed parts and sufficient contact with conductive metal.

Wiring distance as below fig:



- In somewhere CE conformed or EMC radiation must be reduced, cable entry should keep high frequency ground in 360 degree to restrain electro magnetic interference. In addition, cable shield layer should connect with PE wire to meet safety regulation.
- In floating or high ground ($>30\Omega$) power system, EMI filter cannot be installed.

12.7 Leakage current response requirements

1) The output of inverter is high-speed pulse voltage, therefore it will generate high frequency leakage current. To prevent electro shock and fire evoked by leakage current, please install leakage circuit breaker for inverter.

2) The leakage current produced by inverter is relatively large, instant leakage current of large power inverter may be tens of milliamperes, so inductive current of leakage circuit breaker should be larger than 100mA.

3) High frequency pulse interference might cause leakage circuit breaker malfunction under interference, please choose leakage circuit breaker with a high frequency filter.

4) If to install several inverters, each inverter should have a leakage circuit breaker.

5) Factors that affect leakage current, as follows:

- ◆ Inverter capacity
- ◆ Carrier frequency
- ◆ Type and length of motor cable
- ◆ EMI filter

6) When leakage current of inverter cause leakage circuit breaker work:

- ◆ Improve sensitivity of the current value of leakage circuit breaker
- ◆ Replace a new leakage circuit breaker with high frequency inhibition function
- ◆ Reduce carrier frequency
- ◆ Shorten length of output cable
- ◆ Install a leakage suppression equipment

12.8 Common EMC interference problem and solution

Frequency inverter is strong anti-interference equipment, when there is problem in wiring and ground connection, still maybe will comes out interference. When it happens, we have below solutions:

Interference Type	Solution
Leakage protection switch trip	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Motor case connect the PE of frequency inverter; ◆ Frequency inverter PE connect the power system PE; ◆ Add Safety capacitance box on input power wire; ◆ Add magnetic loops on input power wire;
Running Drive leads Interference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Motor case connect the PE of frequency inverter; ; ◆ Frequency inverter PE connect the power system PE; ◆ Add Safety capacitance box and magnetic loops on input power wire; ◆ Add Capacitor or magnetic loops on the interferenced port ; ◆ Share the ground wire between the equipments;
Communication Interference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Motor case connect the PE of frequency inverter; ; ◆ Frequency inverter PE connect the power system PE; ◆ Add Safety capacitance box and magnetic loops on input power wire; ◆ Add matched resistor On communication wire and load end; ◆ Add communication common GND on communication wire; ◆ communication wire use shielded wire, shields connect public Communication;
I/O Interference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Add capacitor filter on low-speed DI, maximum 0.1uF; ◆ Add capacitor filter on AI, maximum 0.22uF; ◆ Analog signal use shielded wire, shields connect PE of frequency inverter.

Remark: If you have any other EMC interference questions, please contact the manufacturer.

Chapter 13 Optional Components

13.1 Introduction to I/O Expansion Cards

□ Model : IOV-A102

Suitable for DX500 series, with the following expansion configurations:

Table 13-1 Describes the terminals of the I/O expansion card IOV-A102

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Digital input	DI1~DI4	The terminal and CM end are effectively closed, and the input frequency is less than or equal to 300Hz
High speed digital output	DO	Optocoupler isolation, NPN type OC output; Output frequency: $\leq 50\text{KHz}$; Pressure resistance: maximum 0~24V; Filling capacity: 0~50mA
Analog input	AI1	Input voltage: 0 ~ 10V
	AI2	Input current: 0 ~ 20mA; Input resistance: 250 Ω
Analog output	AO	Output: 0~10V(10mA load capacity) or 0~20mA
Auxiliary power supply	+10V	Output current: 10mA, used with external potentiometer
Auxiliary power supply	+24V	Output current: 100mA, 24V power supply
Programmable relay output	TA	Normally open contact: 240V AC 2A, Normally closed contact: 240V AC 1A,
	TB	
	TC	
Communication interface	RS+	RS485 Physical port for communication
	RS-	
Common port	GND	AI1, AI2, AO, +10V Common port
	CM	Digital input/Digital output /24V public port

□ Model: IOV-A103

Suitable for DX500 series, extended configuration is as follows:

Table 13-2 Describes the terminals of the I/O expansion card IOV-A103

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Digital input	DI1~DI4	The terminal and CM end are effectively closed; Input frequency $\leq 300\text{Hz}$
	DI5	In addition to the function of DI~DI4, it can also be used as a high-speed pulse input terminal; Maximum input frequency: $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
Analog input	AI1	Input voltage: $0 \sim 10\text{V}$; Input impedance: $\geq 100\text{K} \Omega$
	AI2	Input current: $0 \sim 20\text{mA}$; Input resistance: 250Ω
Auxiliary power supply	+12V	Provide +12V/ Max 200mA current to the outside
Single-ended input	A	NPN type encoder A-phase output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	B	NPN type encoder B-phase output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	Z	NPN type encoder Z-phase output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
Programmable relay output	TA	Normally open contact: $240\text{V AC } 2\text{A}$; Normally closed contact: $240\text{V AC } 1\text{A}$
	TB	
	TC	
Common port	GND	AI1, AI2 Common port
	CM	Digital input /+12V public port

□ Model : IOV-D112

Suitable for DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models, the expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-3 Describes the terminals of the I/O expansion card IOV-D112

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Output voltage	24V	Maximum output current 50mA
	GND	
Common port	PLC	Input voltage 15~24VDC
Digital input terminal	DI7	
	DI8	
	DI9	

□ Model : IOV-A111,PN: 050M008065701

DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ and follow models, standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-4 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-A111

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Relay programmable output	TA	Contact capacity: AC 250V/1A
	TB	
	TC	
Digital input	DI1	Input impedance : $R=4.7K\Omega$; Maximum input frequency: 200Hz
	DI2	
	DI3	
Digital output	DO3	Maximum input frequency : 100KHz ; Maximum operating voltage: 24V; Maximum working current: 150mA
Auxiliary power supply	+24V	Maximum 100mA current
Common port	CM	DO3、DI1、DI2、DI3 Common port
Auxiliary card connection port	CON1	Communication line length : $\leq 300\text{mm}$

□ Model: IOV-A112,PN: 050M008065601

DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ and follow models, standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-5 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-A112

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Slave address dialer	SW2	Hardware slave address set range 1-98; If the dipper sets the slave address to 0, it indicates that the node address of the DP slave is read from the internal EEPROM, and the setting range is 1-126. When the slave address dipper sets the slave address to 99, the DP slave configuration parameter is powered on to restore factory Settings
	SW2	
Profibus plug connection	CON1	Bus communication cable Profibus RS-485A cable is recommended; Characteristic impedance: $135\Omega \sim 165\Omega$; Capacitance: $\leq 30\text{pf/m}$ Loop resistance: $\leq 110\Omega/\text{km}$; Wire diameter: $>0.64\text{mm}$; Conductor cross-sectional area: $>0.34\text{mm}^2$
Main card connection port	CON3	Communication line length: $\leq 300\text{mm}$

□ Model: IOV-D104,PN: 050M008003000

Suitable for DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models, the standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-6 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-D104

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Communication interface	RS+,RS-	RS485 communication physical interface; See FA parameters
Auxiliary power supply	+10V,-10V	Provide a $\pm 10V$ / Max 10mA power supply to the outside
Analog input	AI3	Analog voltage -10V~10V input; Input impedance $\geq 100M\ \Omega$; See F4 parameters for details.
Digital input	DI7,DI8	Effective with CM end closure; Input frequency $\leq 1KHz$; See F3 parameters for details
	DI9	High speed programmable pulse input, effective with CM end closure; Frequency $\leq 100KHz$; See F3 parameters for details
Digital output	DO3	High speed programmable OC output, output frequency $\leq 100KHz$; See F3 parameters for details
Programmable relay output	TA1	TA1-TB1 normally closed contact; TA1-TC1 normally open contact; Contact capacity: AC 250V/1A
	TB1	
	TC1	
Common port	GND	$\pm 10V$, AI3's Common port
	CM	DO3, DI7, DI8, DI9's Common port

□ Model: IOV-D105,PN: 050M008002000

Suitable for DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models, the standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-7 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-D105

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Communication interface	RS+,RS-	RS485 Physical port for communication
Auxiliary power supply	+10, -10V	External supply of $\pm 10V$ / maximum 10mA current
Common port	GND	$\pm 10V$ power supply and A13 common port
Analog input	A13	Analog voltage input (-10V~10V); Input impedance $\geq 100K\ \Omega$

□ Model: IOV-D109,PN: 050M008063101

Suitable for DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models, the standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-8 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-D109

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature							
Communication interface	RS+,RS-	RS485 Physical port for communication							
Shielded ground for communication cables	+10, -10V	External supply of $\pm 10V$ / maximum 10mA current							
Common port	GND	$\pm 10V$ power supply and A13 common port							
Baud rate selection	Knob position	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	Baud rate (kbps)	10	20	50	125	250	500	800	1M

□ Model: IOV-D114,PN: 050M008061202

Applicable to DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ to DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ, the standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-9 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-D114

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Communication interface	RS+,RS-	RS485 communication physical interface; See FA parameters
Digital input	DI1~DI5	The terminal and CM end are effectively closed, and the input frequency is $\leq 300Hz$
Digital output	DO	Optocoupler isolation, NPN type OC output; Output frequency $\leq 1kHz$; Withstand voltage: maximum 0~24V; Filling capacity: 0~50mA
Analog input	AI1	Input voltage: 0 ~ 10V; Input impedance: $\geq 100K \Omega$
	AI2	Input current: 0 ~ 20mA; Input resistance: 250 Ω
Analog output	AO	Output: 0~10V(10mA load capacity) or 0~20mA
Auxiliary power supply	+10V	Use of external potentiometer; Output current: 10mA
	+24V	24V power supply; Output current: 100mA
Programmable relay output	TA	Contact capacity: Normally open contact: 240V AC 2A, Normally closed contact: 240V AC 1A,
	TB	
	TC	
Common port	GND	AI1, AI2, AO, +10V's Common port
	CM	Digital input/Digital output /24V public port

□ Model: IOV-E108,PN: 050M008063001

Suitable for DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models, the standard communication I/O expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-10 Describes the terminals of the communication adapter IOV-E108

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Profibus differential signal	DP-A	Receive/transmit data -N(signal)
	DP-B+	Receive/transmit data -P(signal)
	PGND	Shielded ground for communication cables
Standard Profibus bus connector	1	Shielding layer
	3	Receive/transmit data -P(Signal B)
	4	Control -P
	5	5V power supply ground
	6	5V power supply
	8	Receive/transmit data -N(Signal B)
Auxiliary power supply	+12V	Provide +12V/ Max 200mA current to the outside
Common port	GD	Power reference ground
Differential input	A+	Encoder A offset (+12V20%) input, Maximum frequency \leq 100kHz
	A-	
	B+	Encoder B offset (+12V20%) input, Maximum frequency \leq 100kHz
	B-	
	Z+	Encoder Z offset (+12V20%) input, Maximum frequency \leq 100kHz
	Z-	

13.2 PG expansion card introduction

DX500 series inverters adopt closed-loop vector control mode; when user is engaged in such mode, it's necessary to select PG card fittings. PG card can receive encoder signals of single-ended open-collector output, push-pull output and differential output.

Precautions for use of PG expansion card:

- 1) Signal lines and power lines of PG expansion card shall be laid separately; no parallel routing.
- 2) In order to avoid interference to encoder signals, please employ shielded cable as signal line of PG card.
- 3) The shielded layer of encoder shielded cable shall be grounding (e.g. E terminal of inverter), in addition, it's necessary to adopt single-ended grounding mode to avoid interference to signals.

13.2.1 Standard Type PG Expansion Card

- Model: PGV-C000, PN: 050M009012002

Applicable to DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models, the expansion configuration of standard type expansion card is as follows:

Table 13-11: Introduction to terminals of standard type PG expansion card

Terminal Type	Terminal Name	Function
Auxiliary Power Supply	+12V	Provide +12V/load capacity $\leq 200\text{mA}$ for external devices
Common Terminal	GD	Power supply reference ground
Differential Input	A+	Encoder A-phase differential input (+12V $\pm 20\%$), max. frequency $\leq 100\text{ KHz}$
	A-	
	B+	Encoder B-phase differential input (+12V $\pm 20\%$), max. frequency $\leq 100\text{ KHz}$
	B-	
	Z+	Encoder C-phase differential input (+12V $\pm 20\%$), max. frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	Z-	

- Model: PGV-C001, PN: 050M009062201

Applicable to DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models. The standard expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-12 Terminal introduction of PG expansion card

Terminal Type	Terminal Name	Function
Auxiliary power supply	+ 5V	Provide + 5 V externally; load capacity $\leq 500\text{mA}$
Common terminal	GD	5V power supply common terminal
Differential input	AO+, AO-	Encoder A-phase differential (+5Vz $\pm 20\%$) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	BO+, BO-	Encoder B-phase differential (+5Vz $\pm 20\%$) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	ZO+, ZO-	Encoder Z-phase differential (+5Vz $\pm 20\%$) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
Differential output	AI+, AI-	Encoder A-phase differential (+5Vz $\pm 20\%$) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	BI+, BI-	Encoder B-phase differential (+5Vz $\pm 20\%$) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	ZI+, ZI-	Encoder Z-phase differential (+5Vz $\pm 20\%$) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$

□ Model: PGV-C005, PN: 050M009063601

Applicable to DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models. The standard expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-13 Terminal introduction of PG expansion card

Terminal Type	Terminal name	Function
Auxiliary power supply	+ 5V	Provides +5 V maximum 500mA current externally
Common terminal	GD	5V power supply common terminal
Collector output	AO	Encoder A-phase open-collector output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$, output current $\leq 100\text{mA}$
	BO	Encoder B-phase open-collector output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$, output current $\leq 100\text{mA}$
	ZO	Encoder Z-phase open-collector output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$, output current $\leq 100\text{mA}$
Differential input	AI+, AI-	Encoder A-phase differential (+5V \pm 20%) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	BI+, BI-	Encoder B-phase differential (+5V \pm 20%) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$
	ZI+, ZI-	Encoder Z-phase differential (+5V \pm 20%) output, maximum frequency $\leq 100\text{KHz}$

□ Model: APV-A310, PN: 050M010063701

Applicable to: DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ, standard expansion card expansion configuration is as follows:

Table 13-14 Terminal Introduction of PG Expansion Card

Terminal type	Terminal name	Feature
Digital input	DI1~DI8	The CM end of the terminal box is successfully connected, and the input frequency is less than 1kHz
	DO1~DO5	Programmable open drain output
	+24V	+24V power supply, maximum load capacity: 200mA
	CM	Power reference point
	RS1+	Frequency converter 485 interface, baud rate 19200, no validity
	RS1-	
	RS2+	Frequency converter 485 interface, baud rate 19200, no validity
	RS2-	

13.3 Tension control expansion card

13.3.1 Basic product information

Standard I Type (Model APV-F301) is applicable to: DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ and above models.

Standard II Type (Model APV-B300) is applicable to:

DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ~DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ

13.3.2 Product introduction

Tension control expansion card is a expansion card that is compatible with V series inverters, and is applicable to wire drawing machine industry and products related to winding/unwinding control.

The expansion card can calculate the high stable tension control parameters to meet the application requirement in the field on the basis of rolling diameter. As for winding and unwinding operations of wire drawing machine, the tension control on PID adjustment in speed mode can be achieved by means of external speed setting and real-time signals of tension oscillating bar for winding and unwinding, to quickly enable tension oscillating bar at optional position at a time to reach equilibrium position, and to keep stable winding and unwinding performance in high speed operation.

12.3.3 Product function

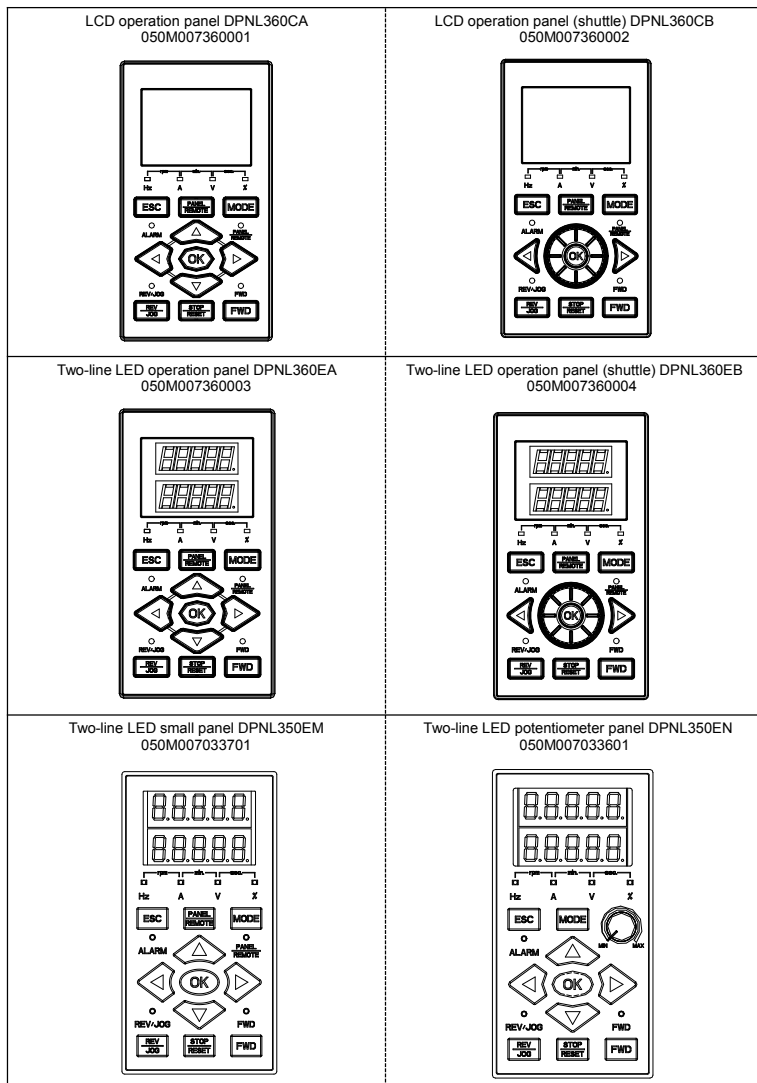
Rolling diameter calculation	Rolling diameter thickness integral, rolling diameter line speed calculation and rolling diameter frequency ratio calculation, etc.
Constant tension at zero speed	Output 0-100 % adjustable torque at zero speed
Breakage detection	Conduct rapid detection on breakage via feedback input
Tension compensation	Static friction compensation, sliding friction compensation, system inertia compensation and material inertia compensation
Motor switch	Realize roll change function via motor switch
Process PID	Two kinds of PID parameters can be transited smoothly based on rolling diameter to guarantee steady-state wave motions at full reel and empty reel conditions.
Metering function	The function can be realized by line speed integral.

12.3.4 Technical data

Starting torque	Greater than 180%
Smooth starting	Over modulation is less than 10%
Steady-state wave motion	Less than 5%

13.4 Brief introduction to operation panel

13.4.1 Outside view of operation panel



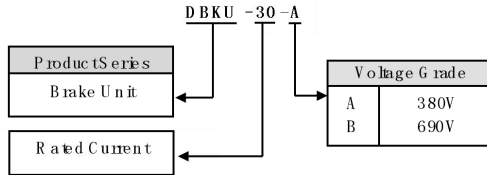
13.4.2 Button function

Button function and operation mode of LCD panel refer to Chapter 5.

13.5 Brake Components

Working principle: When the inverter drives the motor to decelerate and reverse, the internal DC bus voltage of the inverter will increase due to the feedback of the motor energy. In order to prevent the overvoltage protection of the inverter from terminating the operation, before the DC bus voltage reaches the protection point, the brake unit automatically switches on the energy-consuming circuit, and releases the energy in the form of thermal energy through the braking resistor, thereby suppressing the continuous rise of the voltage.

13.5.1 Type Description of Brake Units



13.5.2 Guide of brake resistance selection

Users are able to select resistance value and power according to actual needs, (but selected resistance value can't be lower than recommended value in below table, while selected resistance power can be bigger). Selection of brake resistance depends on motor generation power in system, and in concern with system inertia, deceleration time, energy of potential energy load etc. The bigger system inertia, shorter deceleration time and more frequent braking time, then to choose bigger power of brake resistance and lower resistance value.

1. Resistance value selection

While braking, almost all motor regeneration energy consumes at braking resistance.

The formula: $U \cdot I / R = P_b$

U---- braking voltage under stable system braking state (it varies from different systems, it takes 700V for common AC 380V system)

P_b ----power of braking

2. Power of brake resistance selection

The power of brake resistance and power of braking keep consistent in theory, but should take 70% derating into account. The formula: $0.7 \cdot P_r = P_b \cdot D$

P_r ---- power of brake resistance

D---- braking frequency (time proportion of regeneration process accounts for the whole process), generally it is 10%. Please refer to table below:

Type	Lift	Winding & unwinding	Centrifuge	Accidental braking load
Proportion	20%~30%	20%~30%	50%~60%	5%

Brake resistance selection table

Model	Adaptive motor (KW)	Power of brake resistance (KW)	Brake resistance value (Ω)	Brake torque (100%)	Brake unit
Three phase AC 380V					
DX500-4T0011GQ/4T0015PQ	1.1	0.3	≥ 400	100	Standard
DX500-4T0015GQ/4T0022PQ	1.5	0.5	≥ 300	100	Standard
DX500-4T0022GQ/4T0030PQ	2.2	0.65	≥ 200	100	Standard
DX500-4T0030GQ/4T0040PQ	3.0	0.75	≥ 150	100	Standard
DX500-4T0040GQ/4T0055PQ	4.0	1.0	≥ 125	100	Standard
DX500-4T0055GQ/4T0075PQ	5.5	1.5	≥ 85	100	Standard
DX500-4T0075GQ/4T0090PQ	7.5	2.0	≥ 65	100	Standard
DX500-4T0090GQ/4T0110PQ	9.0	2.5	≥ 60	100	Standard
DX500-4T0110GQ/4T0150PQ	11	2.5	≥ 50	100	Standard
DX500-4T0150GQ/4T0185PQ	15	3.6	≥ 35	100	Standard
DX500-4T0185GQ/4T0220PQ	18.5	4.5	≥ 30	100	Standard
DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0300PQ	22	5.5	≥ 25	100	Standard

DX500-4T0220GQ/4T0030PQ and above if you need braking function, please refer to the brake unit manual

13.5.3 Appearance of brake unit

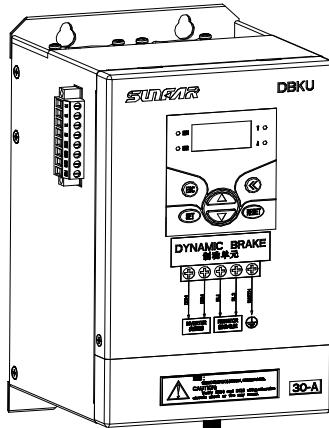


Figure13-1 Appearance diagram

13.5.4 Installation dimension of brake unit

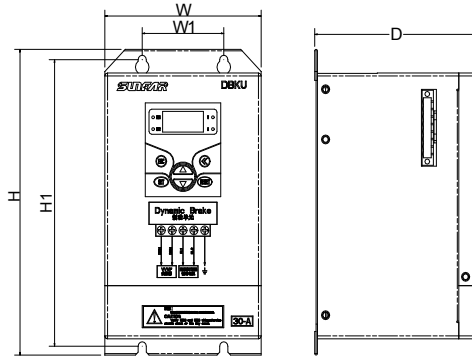


Figure 13-2 Installation dimension drawing

The installation dimensions of the brake unit are shown in the table below:

Brake unit model (three-phase 380V)	W1	W	H1	H	D	Screw specification
DBKU-30-A	60	115	194	207	120	M4
DBKU-50-A						
DBKU-110-A	—	—	—	—	—	—
DBKU-160-A	—	—	—	—	—	—

13.5.5 Reference Wiring Diagram of Single Brake Unit and Inverter

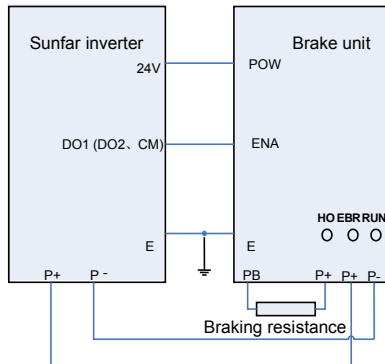


Figure 13-3 Wiring diagram

When the braking enabling (disabling) function of the brake unit is used, the function of the effective control terminal (DO1 or DO2 control port corresponding to Simphoenix inverters) of the inverter connected to ENA must be set to be effective during deceleration before operation of the inverter. When this function is not required, please connect ENA to the 24V common terminal CM.

13.5.6 Wiring Precautions

1) When the inverter is connected to the brake unit, reverse connection of P+ and P- will burn the brake unit and damage the inverter. Please check carefully before the inverter is powered on;

2) When the main circuit is installed and wired, it is necessary to cut off the connection with the inverter or disconnect the power supply of the inverter, and wait for 5-10 minutes. Operation cannot be conducted before the inverter or brake unit power indicator light goes off. In principle, the control loop wiring is not allowed to be carried out under live conditions;

3) The connection wires of the control loop should be as far away as possible from the connection wires of the main power circuit to prevent malfunction due to interference noise. If the control circuit connection wire must pass through the main circuit connection wire, it should be made to pass vertically. If the distance is long, the twisted pair or shielded wire should be used.

For more brake unit descriptions, please refer to the brake unit manual, which can be downloaded from our website at <http://www.simphoenix.com.cn>.

For more extension parts, please refer to our company's product catalog.



Warranty Card

Maintenance Company: _____ User: _____

Model No.: _____ Purchase Date: _____

Invoice No.: _____ Purchased From: _____

Add: Building A, Huichao Industrial Park, Gushu 2nd Rd., Xixiang, Bao'an District, Shenzhen, China.

Post Code: 401336

Tel: 0086-0755-26607756

Service: 0086-0755-26910928

Fax: 0086-0755-26919882

Note:

1. Please keep this card properly, please contact service center with this card and invoice when need maintenance.
2. The warranty period is 18 months.

Shenzhen Simphoenix Electric Technology Co.,Ltd

Cut along the dotted line



Certificate of Approval

This product is approved to delivery
according to the standard

Inspector: _____



Shenzhen Simphoenix Electric Technology Co.,Ltd